Amazon API Gateway: Developer Guide
Copyright © 2017 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Amazon's trademarks and trade dress may not be used in connection with any product or service that is not Amazon's, in any manner that is likely to cause confusion among customers, or in any manner that disparages or discredits Amazon. All other trademarks not owned by Amazon are the property of their respective owners, who may or may not be affiliated with, connected to, or sponsored by Amazon.
# Table of Contents

- What Is Amazon API Gateway? ................................................................. 1
- Gateway to AWS Cloud and Beyond .................................................. 1
- Part of AWS Serverless Infrastructure ............................................... 2
- Developer Experiences ......................................................................... 2
- Create and Manage an API Gateway API .......................................... 2
- Calling an API Gateway API ............................................................... 3
- Benefits of API Gateway ................................................................. 3
- API Gateway Concepts ........................................................................ 3
- Getting Started .................................................................................... 6
- Get Ready to Build API Gateway API ............................................. 6
- Sign up for an AWS Account ............................................................ 6
- Create IAM Users, Groups, Roles, and Policies in Your AWS Account .................................................................................. 7
- Create IAM Policies to Configure API Gateway Resources and to Call a Deployed API ................................................................. 7
- Next Step ............................................................................................. 9
- Build an API from an Example .......................................................... 9
- Next .................................................................................................. 16
- See Also ........................................................................................... 17
- Build an API with Lambda Integration .............................................. 17
- Build an API with Lambda Proxy Integration ..................................... 18
- Build an API with Lambda Custom Integration ................................. 27
- Build an API with HTTP Integrations .............................................. 36
- Build an API with HTTP Proxy Integration ........................................ 37
- Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration .................................... 42
- Build an API with Private Integration ............................................. 72
- Build an API with AWS Integration .................................................. 73
- Prerequisites ...................................................................................... 74
- Step 1: Create the Resource ............................................................ 74
- Step 2: Create the GET Method ....................................................... 75
- Step 3: Create the AWS Service Proxy Execution Role ...................... 75
- Step 4: Specify Method Settings and Test the Method ....................... 76
- Step 5: Deploy the API ..................................................................... 77
- Step 6: Test the API .......................................................................... 77
- Step 7: Clean Up ............................................................................... 78
- Creating an API .................................................................................. 79
- Choose an Endpoint Type to Set up an API ....................................... 79
- Initialize API Setup ............................................................................ 80
- Set up an API Using the API Gateway Console .................................. 80
- Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using AWS CLI Commands .............. 81
- Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using the AWS SDK for Node.js .......... 85
- Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using the API Gateway REST API ....... 92
- Set up an Edge-Optimized API by Importing Swagger Definitions ........ 99
- Set up a Regional API ....................................................................... 101
- Set up API Methods .......................................................................... 104
- Set up Method Request ..................................................................... 105
- Set up Method Response ................................................................... 111
- Set up Method Using the Console ...................................................... 113
- Set up API Integrations ..................................................................... 116
- Set up Integration Request ............................................................. 117
- Set up Integration Response ........................................................... 123
- Set up Lambda Integrations ............................................................. 124
- Set up HTTP Integrations .................................................................. 140
- Set up Private Integrations .............................................................. 144
- Set up Mock Integrations .................................................................. 150
- Set up Gateway Responses ............................................................ 153

---

Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide
Gateway Responses in API Gateway .................................................................................. 154
Gateway Response Types ................................................................................................. 154
Set up a Gateway Response Using the API Gateway Console ........................................ 157
Set up a Gateway Response Using the API Gateway REST API ....................................... 159
Set up Gateway Response Customization in Swagger ....................................................... 159
Set up Data Mappings ........................................................................................................ 160
Set up Request and Response Data Mappings Using the Console ..................................... 160
Create Models and Mapping Templates ........................................................................... 162
Request and Response Data Mapping Reference ................................................................ 185
Mapping Template Reference ............................................................................................ 189
Support Binary Payloads .................................................................................................... 196
Content Type Conversions in API Gateway .................................................................... 197
Enable Binary Support Using the API Gateway Console .................................................... 199
Enable Binary Support Using API Gateway REST API .................................................... 202
Import and Export Content Encodings ............................................................................ 206
Examples of Binary Support ............................................................................................. 206
Enable Payload Compression ............................................................................................. 213
Enable Compression for an API ....................................................................................... 213
Call a Method with a Compressed Payload ...................................................................... 215
Receive a Response with a Compressed Payload ............................................................. 216
Enable Request Validation ................................................................................................ 217
Overview of Basic Request Validation in API Gateway .................................................... 217
Set up Basic Request Validation in API Gateway ............................................................. 218
Test Basic Request Validation in API Gateway ............................................................... 222
Swagger Definitions of a Sample API with Basic Request Validation ........................... 225
Update and Maintain an API .............................................................................................. 228
Update an API Endpoint Type .......................................................................................... 228
Maintain an API Using the Console .................................................................................. 231
Import an API ..................................................................................................................... 232
Import an Edge-Optimized API ....................................................................................... 233
Import a Regional API ...................................................................................................... 234
Import a Swagger File to Update an Existing API Definition ............................................. 235
Set the Swagger basePath Property .................................................................................. 236
Errors and Warnings during Import .................................................................................. 238
Controlling Access to an API ............................................................................................. 239
Use IAM Permissions ........................................................................................................ 239
API Gateway Permissions Model for Creating and Managing an API ............................... 239
API Gateway Permissions Model for Invoking an API ...................................................... 240
Control Access for Managing an API ............................................................................... 241
Control Access for Invoking an API .................................................................................. 243
IAM Policy Examples for Managing API Gateway APIs .................................................. 246
IAM Policy Examples for API Execution Permissions ...................................................... 250
Create and Attach a Policy to an IAM User ...................................................................... 251
Enable CORS for a Resource ............................................................................................ 252
Prerequisites ..................................................................................................................... 253
Enable CORS Using the Console ....................................................................................... 253
Enable CORS Using Swagger Definition ........................................................................... 255
Use Custom Authorizers .................................................................................................. 257
Types of API Gateway Custom Authorizers .................................................................... 258
Create a Custom Authorizer Lambda Function .................................................................... 258
Input to a Custom Authorizer ............................................................................................ 261
Output from an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer .............................................. 263
Configure Custom Authorizer ......................................................................................... 264
Call an API with Custom Authorizers ............................................................................. 266
Use Amazon Cognito User Pools ..................................................................................... 269
Obtain Permissions to Create User Pool Authorizers ......................................................... 270
Create an Amazon Cognito User Pool ............................................................................... 271
Integrate an API with a User Pool ................................................................. 272
Call an API Integrated with a User Pool ....................................................... 276
Use Client-Side SSL Certificates ................................................................. 276
Generate a Client Certificate Using the API Gateway Console ................... 277
Configure an API to Use SSL Certificates ................................................... 277
Test Invoke ............................................................................................ 278
Configure Backend to Authenticate API ................................................... 280
Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration .... 280
Use API Gateway Usage Plans ................................................................. 296
What Is a Usage Plan? ............................................................................... 296
Exposé API Key Source ........................................................................... 297
How to Configure a Usage Plan? ............................................................... 298
Set Up API Keys Using the API Gateway Console ....................................... 298
Create, Configure, and Test Usage Plans with the API Gateway Console .... 301
Set Up API Keys Using the API Gateway REST API ................................... 305
Create, Configure, and Test Usage Plans Using the API Gateway REST API ... 305
API Gateway API Key File Format ............................................................ 308
Documenting an API ............................................................................... 309
Representation of API Documentation in API Gateway ................................ 309
Documentation Parts ............................................................................... 309
Documentation Versions .......................................................................... 316
Document an API Using the API Gateway Console .................................... 317
Document the API Entity .......................................................................... 317
Document a RESOURCE Entity ................................................................. 320
Document a METHOD Entity ...................................................................... 320
Document a QUERY_PARAMETER Entity ................................................... 321
Document a PATH_PARAMETER Entity ....................................................... 322
Document a REQUEST_HEADER Entity ..................................................... 322
Document a REQUEST_BODY Entity ......................................................... 323
Document a RESPONSE Entity .................................................................. 323
Document a RESPONSE_HEADER Entity ................................................... 323
Document a RESPONSE_BODY Entity ....................................................... 324
Document a MODEL Entity ....................................................................... 324
Document an AUTHORIZER Entity ............................................................ 325
Document an API Using the API Gateway REST API ............................... 325
Document the API Entity .......................................................................... 326
Document a RESOURCE Entity ................................................................. 327
Document a METHOD Entity ...................................................................... 329
Document a QUERY_PARAMETER Entity ................................................... 332
Document a PATH_PARAMETER Entity ....................................................... 333
Document a REQUEST_BODY Entity ......................................................... 333
Document a REQUEST_HEADER Entity ..................................................... 334
Document a RESPONSE Entity .................................................................. 335
Document a RESPONSE_HEADER Entity ................................................... 336
Document an AUTHORIZER Entity ............................................................ 337
Document a MODEL Entity ....................................................................... 338
Update Documentation Parts .................................................................... 340
List Documentation Parts ........................................................................ 340
Publish API Documentation ...................................................................... 340
Create a Documentation Snapshot and Associate it with an API Stage ....... 341
Create a Documentation Snapshot ............................................................ 341
Update a Documentation Snapshot ........................................................... 342
Get a Documentation Snapshot .................................................................. 342
Associate a Documentation Snapshot with an API Stage ......................... 342
Download a Documentation Snapshot Associated with a Stage ............... 343
Import API Documentation ....................................................................... 346
Importing Documentation Parts Using the API Gateway REST API .......... 346
What Is Amazon API Gateway?

Amazon API Gateway is an AWS service that enables developers to create, publish, maintain, monitor, and secure APIs at any scale. You can create APIs that access AWS or other web services, as well as data stored in the AWS Cloud.

Topics

• Gateway to AWS Cloud and Beyond (p. 1)
• Developer Experiences (p. 2)
• Benefits of API Gateway (p. 3)
• Amazon API Gateway Concepts (p. 3)

Gateway to AWS Cloud and Beyond

API Gateway can be considered a backplane in the cloud to connect AWS services and other public or private websites. It provides consistent RESTful application programming interfaces (APIs) for mobile and web applications to access AWS services.

The following diagram shows API Gateway architecture.

In practical terms, API Gateway lets you create, configure, and host a RESTful API to enable applications to access the AWS Cloud. For example, an application can call an API in API Gateway to upload a user's annual income and expense data to Amazon S3 or Amazon DynamoDB, process the data in AWS Lambda to compute tax owed, and file a tax return via the IRS website.

As shown in the diagram, an app (or client) gains programmatic access to AWS services, or a website on the internet, through one or more APIs, which are hosted in API Gateway. The app is at the API's
The integrated AWS services and websites are located at the API's backend. In API Gateway, the frontend is encapsulated by method requests and method responses, and the backend is encapsulated by integration requests and integration responses.

With Amazon API Gateway, you can build an API to provide your users with an integrated and consistent developer experience to build AWS cloud-based applications.

**Part of AWS Serverless Infrastructure**

Together with AWS Lambda, API Gateway forms the app-facing part of the AWS serverless infrastructure. For an app to call publicly available AWS services, you can use Lambda to interact with the required services and expose the Lambda functions through API methods in API Gateway. AWS Lambda runs the code on a highly available computing infrastructure. It performs the necessary execution and administration of the computing resources. To enable the serverless applications, API Gateway supports streamlined proxy integrations (p. 120) with AWS Lambda and HTTP endpoints.

**Developer Experiences**

There are two kinds of developers who use API Gateway: an app developer and an API developer. The app developer builds a functioning application to call AWS services through API Gateway. The API developer creates and deploys an API to enable the required functionality in API Gateway. The API developer must be an IAM user in the AWS account that owns the API. The app developer does not need to have an AWS account, provided that the API does not require IAM permissions or supports authorization of users from third-party identity providers supported by Amazon Cognito identity federation. Such identity providers include Amazon, Amazon Cognito user pool, Facebook, and Google.

**Create and Manage an API Gateway API**

An API developer works with the API Gateway service component, named apigateway, to create, configure, and deploy an API. Each API includes a set of resources and methods. A resource is a logical entity that an app can access through a resource path.

For example, /incomes is the path of the resource representing the income of the app user. A resource can have one or more operations that are defined by appropriate HTTP verbs such as GET, POST, PUT, PATCH, and DELETE. A combination of a resource path and an operation identifies a method of the API. For example, the POST /incomes method adds an income earned by the caller, and the GET /expenses method queries the reported expenses incurred by the caller.

A method corresponds to a REST API request that is submitted by the user of your API and the response returned to the user. The app does not need to know where the requested data is stored and fetched from. The API interfaces with the backend using the integration request or integration response.

For example, with DynamoDB as the backend, the API developer sets up the integration request to forward the incoming method request to the chosen backend. The setup includes specifications of an appropriate DynamoDB action, required IAM role and policies, and required input data transformation. The backend returns the result to API Gateway as an integration response. To route the integration response to an appropriate method response (of a given HTTP status code) to the client, you can configure the integration response to map required response parameters from integration to method. You then translate the output data format of the backend to that of the frontend, if necessary. API Gateway enables you to define a schema or model for the payload to facilitate setting up the body mapping template.

As an API developer, you can create and manage an API by using the API Gateway console, described in Getting Started with Amazon API Gateway (p. 6), or by calling the API Gateway REST API (p. 558). There are several ways to call this API. They include using the AWS Command-Line Interface (CLI), or by using an AWS SDK. You can also use a REST API client, such as Postman, to make raw API calls. In
addition, you can enable API creation with AWS CloudFormation templates or API Gateway Extensions to Swagger (p. 464). For a list of regions where API Gateway is available, as well as the associated control service endpoints, see Regions and Endpoints.

Calling an API Gateway API

An app developer works with the API Gateway service component, named execute-api, to invoke an API that was created or deployed in API Gateway. The underlying programming entities are exposed by the created API. There are several ways to call such an API. You can use the API Gateway console to test invoking the API. You can use a REST API client, such as CURL or Postman, or an SDK generated by API Gateway for the API to invoke the API.

Be aware of the differences between the apigateway and execute-api API Gateway service components. Reference the appropriate service component name when you select one while, for example, setting IAM permission policies for building or calling an API.

Benefits of API Gateway

API Gateway helps you deliver robust, secure, and scalable mobile and web application backends. API Gateway allows you to securely connect mobile and web applications to business logic hosted on AWS Lambda, APIs hosted on Amazon EC2, or other publicly addressable web services hosted inside or outside of AWS. With API Gateway, you can create and operate APIs for backend services. For example, you don't need to develop and maintain infrastructure to handle authorization and access control, traffic management, monitoring and analytics, version management, and software development kit (SDK) generation.

API Gateway is designed for web and mobile developers who want to provide secure, reliable access to backend APIs for access from mobile apps, web apps, and server apps that are built internally or by third-party ecosystem partners. The business logic behind the APIs can be provided by a publicly accessible endpoint that API Gateway proxies call, or it can be entirely run as a Lambda function.

Amazon API Gateway Concepts

**API Gateway**

API Gateway is an AWS service that supports the following:

1. Creating, deploying, and managing a RESTful application programming interface (API) to expose backend HTTP endpoints, AWS Lambda functions, or other AWS services.
2. Invoking exposed API methods through the frontend HTTP endpoints.

**API Gateway API**

A collection of resources and methods that are integrated with backend HTTP endpoints, Lambda functions, or other AWS services. The collection can be deployed in one or more stages. API methods are invoked through frontend HTTP endpoints that you can associate with a registered custom domain name. Permissions to invoke a method are granted using IAM roles and policies or API Gateway custom authorizers. An API can present a certificate to be authenticated by the backend. Typically, API resources are organized in a resource tree according to the application logic. Each API resource can expose one or more API methods that must have unique HTTP verbs supported by API Gateway.

**API developer or API owner**

An AWS account that owns an API Gateway deployment (for example, a service provider that also supports programmatic access.)
App developer or client developer

An app creator who may or may not have an AWS account and interacts with the API deployed by the API developer. An app developer can be represented by an API key.

API endpoints

Host names APIs in API Gateway, which are deployed to a specific region and of the \( (rest-api-id).execute-api.(region).amazonaws.com \) format. The following types of API endpoints are supported:

- **Edge-optimized API endpoint**: The default host name of an API Gateway API that is deployed to the specified region while using a CloudFront distribution to facilitate client access typically from across AWS regions. API requests are routed to the nearest CloudFront Point of Presence (POP) which typically improves connection time for geographically diverse clients. An API is edge-optimized if you do not explicitly specify its endpoint type when creating the API.

- **Regional API endpoint**: The host name of an API that is deployed to the specified region and intended to serve clients, such as EC2 instances, in the same AWS region. API requests are targeted directly to the region-specific API Gateway without going through any CloudFront distribution. For in-region requests, a regional endpoint bypasses the unnecessary round trip to a CloudFront distribution. In addition, you can apply latency-based routing on regional endpoints to deploy an API to multiple regions using the same regional API endpoint configuration, set the same custom domain name for each deployed API, and configure latency-based DNS records in Route 53 to route client requests to a region of the lowest latency.

App user, end user, or client

An app user or end user is an entity that uses a client to access an API in Amazon API Gateway. The client can be a mobile app, a web app or a desktop app, using the API Gateway REST API, the AWS CLI or SDK. An app user can be represented by an Amazon Cognito identity or a bearer token.

API key

An alphanumeric string that is generated by API Gateway on behalf of an API owner. The string can also be imported from an external source such as a CSV file. The string is used to identify an app developer of the API. An API owner can use API keys to permit or deny access of specific APIs based on the apps in use.

API deployment and stage

An API deployment is a point-in-time snapshot of the API Gateway API resources and methods. For a deployment to be accessible for a client to invoke, the deployment must be associated with one or more stages. A stage is a logical reference to a lifecycle status of your API (for example, 'dev', 'prod', 'beta', 'v2'). The identifier of an API stage consists of an API ID and stage name.

Method request

The public interface of an API method in API Gateway that defines the parameters and body that an app developer must send in the requests to access the backend through the API.

Integration request

An API Gateway internal interface that defines how API Gateway maps the parameters and body of a method request into the formats required by the backend.

Integration response

An API Gateway internal interface that defines how API Gateway maps data. The integration response includes the status codes, headers, and payload that are received from the backend into the formats defined for an app developer.

Method response

The public interface of an API that defines the status codes, headers, and body models that an app developer should expect from API Gateway.
Proxy integration

A simplified API Gateway integration configuration. You can set up a proxy integration as an HTTP proxy integration type or a Lambda proxy integration type. For the HTTP proxy integration, API Gateway passes the entire request and response between the frontend and an HTTP backend. For the Lambda proxy integration, API Gateway sends the entire request as an input to a backend Lambda function. API Gateway then transforms the Lambda function output to a frontend HTTP response. The proxy integration is most commonly used with a proxy resource, which is represented by a greedy path variable (e.g., `{proxy+}`) combined with a catch-all ANY method.

Mapping template

Scripts in Velocity Template Language (VTL) to transform a request body from the frontend data format to the backend data format, or to transform a response body from the backend data format to the frontend data format. Mapping templates are specified in the integration request or integration response. They can reference data made available at run time as context and stage variables. An identity transformation is referred to as a passthrough. In a passthrough, a payload is passed as-is from the client to the backend for a request. For a response, the payload is passed from the backend to the client.

Model

Data schema specifying the data structure of a request or response payload. It is required for generating a strongly typed SDK of an API. It is also used to validate payload. A model is convenient for generating a sample mapping template to initiate creation of a production mapping template. Although useful, a model is not required for creating a mapping template.

Usage plan

A usage plan provides selected API clients with access to one or more deployed APIs. You can use a usage plan to configure throttling and quota limits, which are enforced on individual client API keys.
Getting Started with Amazon API Gateway

With Amazon API Gateway, you can provide your clients with a consistent and scalable programming interface to access three types of endpoints in the backend: invoking AWS Lambda functions, calling other AWS services, and accessing an HTTP website or webpage. To do this, you create an API Gateway API to integrate each API method with a backend endpoint. Each backend endpoint is associated with an integration type. For details about the API integration types in API Gateway, see Choose an API Gateway API Integration Type (p. 119).

To get started using Amazon API Gateway, we present the following hands-on walkthroughs for creating, deploying, and testing simple APIs integrated with some commonly used backends. The example APIs used in the walkthroughs demonstrate what is involved to implement each of the supported integration types.

Topics
- Get Ready to Build an API Gateway API (p. 6)
- Build an API Gateway API from an Example (p. 9)
- Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration (p. 17)
- Build an API Gateway API with HTTP Integrations (p. 36)
- Build an API with API Gateway Private Integration (p. 72)
- Build an API Gateway API with AWS Integration (p. 73)

Before you start, use the following procedures to set up your development environment.

Get Ready to Build an API Gateway API

Topics
- Sign up for an AWS Account (p. 6)
- Create IAM Users, Groups, Roles, and Policies in Your AWS Account (p. 7)
- Create IAM Policies to Configure API Gateway Resources and to Call a Deployed API (p. 7)
- Next Step (p. 9)

Before using Amazon API Gateway for the first time, you must have an AWS account.

Sign up for an AWS Account

If you do not have an AWS account, use the following procedure to create one.

To sign up for AWS

2. Follow the online instructions.

To create, configure, and deploy an API in API Gateway, you must have an appropriate AWS Identity and Access Management policy provisioned. The policy must have access permissions for manipulating the API Gateway resources and link relations. In addition, you can set IAM permissions to allow your API clients to call your API in API Gateway. To do so, create IAM roles and policies and, optionally, users or groups in your AWS account, and set the IAM roles and policies on a specified IAM user or group.

Create IAM Users, Groups, Roles, and Policies in Your AWS Account

For better security practices, you should create a new AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user or use an existing one in your AWS account. You then access API Gateway with that IAM user's credentials, instead of using your AWS root account.

To manage access for a user, create an IAM user and grant the user API Gateway access permissions. To create a new IAM user, see Creating an IAM User.

To manage access for a group of users, create an IAM group, grant the group API Gateway access permissions, and then add one or more IAM users to the group. To create an IAM group, see Creating IAM Groups.

To delegate access to specific users, apps, or services, create an IAM role, add the specified users or groups to the role, and grant the users or groups API Gateway access permissions. To create an IAM role, see Creating IAM Roles.

When setting up your API, specify the ARN of an IAM role to control access the API's methods. This ARN must be ready when creating an API.

Create IAM Policies to Configure API Gateway Resources and to Call a Deployed API

In AWS, access permissions are stated as IAM policies. AWS provides a set of pre-configured IAM policies, known as AWS managed policies, for individual AWS services. Individual IAM users can create customized IAM policies, known as customer managed policies.

You can create an IAM policy, role, user, or group in the IAM console or by using the AWS CLI or an AWS SDK. Once created, IAM policies are referenced by their ARNs. The ARN of a policy that is managed by AWS is of the arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/PolicyName format. The ARN of a customer managed policy is of the arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/PolicyName format.

For example, the following is the AWS managed policy, named AmazonAPIGatewayAdministrator (arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonAPIGatewayAdministrator). It grants full access to create, configure, and deploy an API in API Gateway:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "apigateway:*"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:apigateway:*::/*"
        }
    ]
}
```
To grant the permissions to a user, attach the policy to the user or a group containing the user. For more information, see Attaching Managed Policies.

Attaching the preceding policy to an IAM user allows ("Effect": "Allow") the user to act with any API Gateway actions ("Action": ["apigateway:*"]) on any API Gateway resources (arn:aws:apigateway:*::/*) that are associated with the user's AWS account.

To restrict the IAM user to read and create documentation of created APIs, you can replace the Action property value from "Action": ["apigateway:*"] to "Action": ["apigateway:GET", "apigateway:POST"] and replace the Resource property value from ["apigateway:*"] to ["arn:aws:apigateway::123456789012:/restapis/*/documentation/*"]). For more information, see Control Access to an API with IAM Permissions (p. 239).

To control how an API is invoked, the following AWS managed IAM policy of AmazonAPIGatewayInvokeFullAccess (arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonAPIGatewayInvokeFullAccess) provides full access to invoke any part of an API in API Gateway:

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "execute-api:Invoke"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:execute-api:*:*:*"
    }
  ]
}
```

To learn how to restrict IAM users to call a specified set of API parts, see Control Access to an API with IAM Permissions (p. 239).

To grant the stated permissions to a user, attach the policy to the user or a group containing the user. To attach a policy, see Attaching Managed Policies.

In this documentation, we use managed policies whenever possible. To create and use customer managed IAM policies, see Working with Customer Managed Policies.

**Note**
To complete the preceding steps, you must have permissions to create the IAM policy and attach it to the IAM user.

When API Gateway is integrated with AWS Lambda or another AWS service, such as Amazon Simple Storage Service or Amazon Kinesis, you must also enable API Gateway as a trusted entity to invoke an AWS service in the backend. To do so, create an IAM role and attach a service-specific access policy to the role. This is demonstrated in the following example for invoking a Lambda function:

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "lambda:InvokeFunction",
      "Resource": "*
    }
  ]
}
```
Next, add the following trust policy to allow API Gateway to call the backend Lambda function on behalf of the attached user who is assigned the IAM role.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
```

Without specifying this trust relationship, API Gateway is denied the right to call the backend on behalf of the user, even when the user has been granted permissions to access the backend directly.

When an API Gateway API is set up with IAM roles and policies to control client access, the client must sign API requests with Signature Version 4. Alternatively, you can use the AWS CLI or one of the AWS SDKs to handle request signing for you. For more information, see Invoking an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 437).

**Next Step**

Having signed up for an AWS account and created the required IAM roles and policies, you are now ready to start using API Gateway. To create your first simple API by using an example in the API Gateway console, see Build an API Gateway API from an Example (p. 9).

**Build an API Gateway API from an Example**

To help you get started with basic workflow to build and test an API Gateway API, you can use the Amazon API Gateway console to create and test a simple API with the HTTP integration for a PetStore website. The API definition is preconfigured as a Swagger 2.0 file. After loading the API definition into API Gateway, you can use the API Gateway console to examine the API's basic structure or simply deploy and test the API.

The example API supports the following methods for a client to access the HTTP backend website of http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore.

- **GET /**: for read access of the API's root resource that is not integrated with any backend endpoint. API Gateway responds with an overview of the PetStore website. This is an example of the **mock** integration type.
- **GET /pets**: for read access to the API's /pets resource that is integrated with the like-named backend /pets resource. The backend returns a page of available pets in the PetStore. This is an example of the **HTTP** integration type. The URL of the integration endpoint is http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets.
- **POST /pets**: for write access to the API's /pets resource that is integrated with the backend /petstore/pets resource. Upon receiving a correct request, the backend adds the specified pet to the PetStore and return the result to the caller. The integration is also **HTTP**.
• GET /pets/{petId}: for read access to a pet as identified by a petId value as specified as a path variable of the incoming request URL. This method also has the HTTP integration type. The backend returns the specified pet found in the PetStore. The URL of the backend HTTP endpoint is http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/n, where n is an integer as the identifier of the queried pet.

The API supports CORS access via the OPTIONS methods of the MOCK integration type. API Gateway returns the required headers supporting CORS access.

To build and test the example API

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Do one of the following:
   a. If this is the first API in your account, choose Get Started from the API Gateway console welcome page.
      If prompted with hints, choose OK to close them and continue.
   b. If this is not your first API, choose Create API from the API Gateway APIs home page:

3. Under Create new API, choose Examples API and then choose Import to create the example API. For your first API, the API Gateway console starts with this option as default.

You can scroll down the Swagger definition for details of this example API before choosing Import.
4. The newly created API is shown as follows:

The **Resources** pane shows the structure of the created API as a tree of nodes. API methods defined on each resource are edges of the tree. When a resource is selected, all of its methods are listed in the **Methods** pane on the right. Displayed under each method is a brief summary of the method, including its endpoint URL, authorization type, and API Key requirement.

5. To view the details of a method, to modify its set-up, or to test the method invocation, choose the method name from either the method list or the resource tree. Here, we choose the **POST /pets** method as an illustration:

   ![Method Execution Diagram]

   The resulting **Method Execution** pane presents a logical view of the chosen (POST /pets) method's structure and behaviors: **Method Request** and **Method Response** are the API's interface with the
API's frontend (a client), whereas **Integration Request** and **Integration Response** are the API's interface with the backend (http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/pets). A client uses the API to access a backend feature through the **Method Request**. API Gateway translates the client request, if necessary, into the form acceptable to the backend in **Integration Request** before forwarding the incoming request to the backend. The transformed request is known as the integration request. Similarly, the backend returns the response to API Gateway in **Integration Response**. API Gateway then routes it to **Method Response** before sending it to the client. Again, if necessary, API Gateway can map the backend response data to a form expected by the client.

For the **POST** method on an API resource, the method request payload can be passed through to the integration request without modification, if the method request's payload is of the same format as the integration request's payload.

The **GET /** method request uses the **MOCK** integration type and is not tied to any real backend endpoint. The corresponding **Integration Response** is set up to return a static HTML page. When the method is called, the API Gateway simply accepts the request and immediately returns the configured integration response to the client by way of **Method Response**. You can use the mock integration to test an API without requiring a backend endpoint. You can also use it to serve a local response, generated from a response body-mapping template.

As an API developer, you control the behaviors of your API's frontend interactions by configuring the method request and a method response. You control the behaviors of your API's backend interactions by setting up the integration request and integration response. These involve data mappings between a method and its corresponding integration. We cover the method setup in **Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration** (p. 42). For now, we focus on testing the API to provide an end-to-end user experience.

6. Choose **Test** shown on **Client** (as shown in the previous image) to start testing. For example, to test the **POST /pets** method, enter the following `{"type": "dog","price": 249.99}` payload into the **Request Body** before choosing the **Test** button.
Method Execution /pets - POST - Method Test

Make a test call to your method with the provided input

Path

No path parameters exist for this resource. You can define path parameters by using the syntax **{myPathParam}** in a resource path.

Query Strings

No query string parameters exist for this method. You can add them via Method Request.

Headers

No header parameters exist for this method. You can add them via Method Request.

Stage Variables

No stage variables exist for this method.

Client Certificate

No client certificates have been generated.

Request Body

```json
{"type": "dog","price": 249.99}
```
The input specifies the attributes of the pet that we want to add to the list of pets on the PetStore website.

7. The results display as follows:

Request: /pets
Status: 200
Latency: 566 ms
Response Body

```json
{
  "pet": {
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  "message": "success"
}
```

Response Headers

```
{"Access-Control-Allow-Origin": ","X-Amzn-Trace-Id": "Root=1-59287e14-bd5f1d97c873367bc8739eae","Content-Type": "application/json"}
```

Logs

```
Execution log for request test-request
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Starting execution for request: test-invoke-request
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Method request path: {}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Method request query string: {}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Method request headers: {}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Method request body before transformations: {"type": "dog","price": 249.99}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Endpoint request headers: {x-amzn-api-gateway-id=4wkh9knj3, Accept=application/json, User-Agent=AmazonAPIGateway_4wkh9knj3, X-Amzn-Trace-Id=Root=1-59287e14-bd5f1d97c873367bc8739eae, Content-Type=application/json}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Endpoint request body after transformations: {"type": "dog","price": 249.09}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Endpoint response body before transformations: {
  "pet": {
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  "message": "success"
}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Endpoint response headers: {Connection=keep-alive, Content-Length=81, Date=Fri, 26 May 2017 19:12:20 GMT, Content-Type=application/json; charset=utf-8, X- Powered-By-Express}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Method response body after transformations: {"pet": {"type": "dog","price": 249.99},
  "message": "success"
}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Method response headers: {Access-Control-Allow-Origin=, X-Amzn-Trace-Id=Root=1-59287e14-bd5f1d97c873367bc8739eae, Content-Type=application/json}
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Successfully completed execution
Fri May 26 19:12:20 UTC 2017 : Method completed with status: 200
```

The Logs entry of the output shows the state changes from the method request to the integration request, and from the integration response to the method response. This can be useful for troubleshooting any mapping errors that cause the request to fail. In this example, no mapping is
applied: the method request payload is passed through the integration request to the backend and, similarly, the backend response is passed through the integration response to the method response.

To test the API using a client other than the API Gateway test-involve-request feature, you must first deploy the API to a stage.

8. To deploy the sample API, select the PetStore API, and then choose Deploy API from the Actions menu.

In Deploy API, for Deployment stage, choose [New Stage] because this is the first deployment of the API. Type a name (e.g., test) in Stage name and, optionally, type descriptions in Stage description and Deployment description. Choose Deploy.
Choose a stage where your API will be deployed. For example, a test version of your API could be deployed to a stage named beta.

In the resulting **Stage Editor** pane, **Invoke URL** displays the URL to invoke the API's GET / method request.

9. On **Stage Editor**, follow the **Invoke URL** link to submit the GET / method request in a browser. A successful response return the result, generated from the mapping template in the integration response.

10. In the **Stages** navigation pane, expand the **test** stage, select GET on /pets/{petId}, and then copy the **Invoke URL** value of https://api-id.execute-api.region.amazonaws.com/test/pets/{petId}. {petId} stands for a path variable. Paste the **Invoke URL** value (obtained in the previous step) into the address bar of a browser, replacing {petId} by, for example, 1, and press Enter to submit the request. A 200 OK response should return with the following JSON payload:

```json
{
  "id": 1,
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
}
```

Invoking the API method as shown is possible because its **Authorization** type is set to NONE. If the AWS_IAM authorization were used, you would sign the request using the Signature Version 4 protocols. For an example of such a request, see Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42).

**Next**

Through the example API, we became familiar with the basic workflow for creating an API in API Gateway. The process is summarized as follows:
1. Create an API as a RestApi resource in your AWS account.
2. Add a Resource resource to the Resources hierarchy of the newly created API.
3. Create a Method resource for the Resource. The API method represents a programming interface between a client and API Gateway.
4. Set up the integration of the method with a backend endpoint. The integration represents an interface between the API Gateway and a backend endpoint.

When a user accesses the backend service through the API, the client submits an HTTP request to API Gateway. This submission puts the request through the Method Request and then Integration Request before reaching the backend. The backend then returns a response to API Gateway. The response then passes from Integration Response to Method Response before the client receives the response. The MOCK integrations demonstrated in this example API are perhaps the simplest cases of pre-processing and post-processing of requests or responses by API Gateway. We cover other cases elsewhere in this guide.

Next, we move on to learning how to build and test a more nimble and powerful API with proxy integrations (p. 125).

See Also

Use API Gateway Custom Authorizers (p. 257), Deploying an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 350)

Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration

To build an API with Lambda integrations, you can use either the Lambda proxy integration or the Lambda custom integration. In general, you should use the Lambda proxy integration for a nimble and streamlined API set up while providing versatile and powerful features. The custom integration may be a better value proposition if it is necessary for API Gateway to pre-process incoming request data before it reaches to the backend Lambda function. However, it is a legacy technology. Setting up a Lambda custom integration is more involved than setting up the Lambda proxy integration and the existing setup is likely to be inoperable when the backend Lambda function requires changes in its input or output.

With the Lambda proxy integration, the input to the integrated Lambda function can be expressed as any combination of request headers, path variables, query string parameters, and body. In addition, the Lambda function can use the API configuration settings to influence its execution logic. For an API developer, setting up a Lambda integration is simple. Other than choosing a particular Lambda function in a given region, you have little else to do. API Gateway configures the integration request and integration response for you. Once set up, the integrated API method can evolve with the backend without modifying the existing settings. This is possible because the backend Lambda function developer parses the incoming request data and responds to the client when anything goes wrong.

With the Lambda custom integration, you must ensure that the input to the Lambda function is supplied as the integration request payload. This implies that you, as an API developer, must map any input data the client supplied as request parameters into the proper integration request body. You may also need to translate the client-supplied request body into a format recognized by the Lambda function.

Topics
- Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 18)
- Build an API Gateway API with Custom Lambda Integration (p. 27)
Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Proxy Integration

In this section, we show how to create and test an API with the Lambda integration using the API Gateway console. We demonstrate how a Lambda backend parses the raw request and implements app logic that depends on the incoming request data. For more information on API Gateway proxy integration, see Set up a Proxy Integration with a Proxy Resource (p. 120).

First, we create the following Node.js function, named GetStartedLambdaProxyIntegration, using the AWS Lambda console, as the backend. We then create an API with the Lambda proxy integration by using the GetStartedLambdaProxyIntegration function through a proxy resource by using the API Gateway console. Finally, we demonstrate how to test the API.

Topics
- Create Lambda Functions for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 18)
- Create a Backend for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 22)
- Create an API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 24)
- Test an API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 25)

Create Lambda Functions for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration

We create a Lambda function that returns a greeting to the caller as a JSON object of the following format:

```json
{
   "greeting": "Good {time}, {name} of {city}. [ Happy {day}]"
}
```

In this example, `{time}` can be morning, afternoon, or day; `{name}` can be you or a user-specified user name; `{city}` can be World or a user-supplied city name; and `{day}` can be null, empty, or one of the week days. If `{day}` is null or empty, the `Happy {day}` portion is not displayed. The Lambda function is very flexible and the client can specify the input in any combination of request headers, path variables, query string parameters, and body.

To show what API Gateway passes through to the backend, we include the `event` object to the Lambda function in its output as well. Finally, we create a `response` object to illustrate the basic output format required of the Lambda proxy integration.

A Lambda function can be written in Node.js, Python, Java, and C#. In this tutorial, we show snippets in Node.js and Java. You can extend the Node.js implementation to the Python function or extend the Java implementation to the C# function. There are instructions for doing so in the following topics.

Topics
- Node.js Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 19)
- Python Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 20)
- C# Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 20)
- Java Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 20)
Node.js Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration

The following Lambda function in Node.js is a "Hello, World!" application. The function shows how to parse the input `event` parameter that contains a request made by a client to an API Gateway proxy resource. This resource is integrated with the function using the Lambda proxy integration. The function also demonstrates how to format the output of the Lambda function for API Gateway to return the results as an HTTP response. For more information about the input and output formats that this type of Lambda function must follow, see Input Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 130) and Output Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 132).

```javascript
'use strict';

console.log('Loading hello world function');

exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
    let name = 'you';
    let city = 'World';
    let time = 'day';
    let day = '1';
    let responseCode = 200;
    console.log("request: " + JSON.stringify(event));

    // This is a simple illustration of app-specific logic to return the response.
    // Although only 'event.queryStringParameters' are used here, other request data,
    // such as 'event.headers', 'event.pathParameters', 'event.body',
    // 'event.stageVariables',
    // and 'event.requestContext' can be used to determine what response to return.
    //
    // if (event.queryStringParameters !== null && event.queryStringParameters !== undefined)
    // {
    //     if (event.queryStringParameters.name !== undefined &&
    //         event.queryStringParameters.name !== null &&
    //         event.queryStringParameters.name !== "") {
    //         console.log("Received name: " + event.queryStringParameters.name);
    //         name = event.queryStringParameters.name;
    //     }
    // }

    if (event.pathParameters !== null && event.pathParameters !== undefined) {
        if (event.pathParameters.proxy !== undefined &&
            event.pathParameters.proxy !== null &&
            event.pathParameters.proxy !== "") {
            console.log("Received proxy: " + event.pathParameters.proxy);
            city = event.pathParameters.proxy;
        }
    }

    if (event.headers !== null && event.headers !== undefined) {
        if (event.headers['day'] !== undefined && event.headers['day'] !== null &&
            event.headers['day'] !== "") {
            console.log("Received day: " + event.headers.day);
            day = event.headers.day;
        }
    }

    if (event.body !== null && event.body !== undefined) {
        let body = JSON.parse(event.body)
        if (body.time)
            time = body.time;
    }

    let greeting = 'Good ' + time + ', ' + name + ' of ' + city + '!' ;
    if (day) greeting += 'Happy ' + day + '!' ;

    var responseBody = {
        'message': greeting
    }
    var response = {
        'statusCode': responseCode,
        'body': JSON.stringify(responseBody)
    }
    callback(null, response);
};
```
message: greeting,
        input: event
    );

    // The output from a Lambda proxy integration must be
    // of the following JSON object. The 'headers' property
    // is for custom response headers in addition to standard
    // ones. The 'body' property must be a JSON string. For
    // base64-encoded payload, you must also set the 'isBase64Encoded'
    // property to 'true'.
    var response = {
        statusCode: responseCode,
        headers: {
            "x-custom-header" : "my custom header value"
        },
        body: JSON.stringify(responseBody)
    };
    console.log("response: " + JSON.stringify(response))
    callback(null, response);

For the API Gateway proxy integrations, the input parameter of event contains an API request
marshalled as a JSON object by API Gateway. This input can include the request's HTTP method
(httpMethod), path (path and pathParameters), query parameters (queryStringParameters),
headers (headers), and applicable payload (body). The input can also include the context
(requestContext) and stage variables (stageVariables).

This example Lambda function parses the event parameter to retrieve the query string parameter of
name, the proxy path parameter, the day header value, and the time property of the payload.

The function then returns a greeting to the named user in the message property of the responseBody
object. To show the details of the incoming request as marshalled by API Gateway, the function also
returns the incoming event object as the input property of the response body.

Finally, upon exiting, the function returns a JSON object, containing the required statusCode and any
applicable headers and body, for API Gateway to return it as an HTTP response to the client.

**Python Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration**

Follow the discussion in Authoring Lambda Functions in Python to create the Python Lambda function
handler, while extending the programming flow shown in the preceding Node.js Lambda function.

**C# Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration**

Follow the discussion in Authoring Lambda Functions in C# to create the C# Lambda function handler,
while extending the programming flow shown in the following Java Lambda function.

**Java Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration**

The following Lambda function in Java is a "Hello, World!" application, similar to its Node.js
counterpart (p. 19). The function shows how to parse the input event that is passed through as an
InputStream object and that contains a request made by a client to an API Gateway proxy resource.
This resource is integrated with the function using the Lambda proxy integration. It also shows how to
parse the context object to get the LambdaLogger. The example also demonstrates how to format
the output of the Lambda function for API Gateway in Java to return the results in an OutputStream
object as an HTTP response. For more information about the Lambda proxy integration input and output
formats, see Input Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 130) and Output Format of a
Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 132).

```java
package examples;
```
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.io.InputStreamReader;
import java.io.OutputStreamWriter;
import java.io.BufferedReader;
import java.io.Writer;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestStreamHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
import org.json.simple.JSONObject;
import org.json.simple.JSONArray;
import org.json.simple.parser.ParseException;
import org.json.simple.parser.JSONParser;

public class ProxyWithStream implements RequestStreamHandler {
    JSONParser parser = new JSONParser();

    public void handleRequest(InputStream inputStream, OutputStream outputStream, Context context) throws IOException {
        LambdaLogger logger = context.getLogger();
        logger.log("Loading Java Lambda handler of ProxyWithStream");

        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(new InputStreamReader(inputStream));
        JSONObject responseJson = new JSONObject();
        String name = "you";
        String city = "World";
        String time = "day";
        String day = null;
        String responseCode = "200";
        try {
            JSONObject event = (JSONObject)parser.parse(reader);
            if (event.get("queryStringParameters") != null) {
                JSONObject qps = (JSONObject)event.get("queryStringParameters");
                if (qps.get("name") != null) {
                    name = (String)qps.get("name");
                }
            }
            if (event.get("pathParameters") != null) {
                JSONObject pps = (JSONObject)event.get("pathParameters");
                if (pps.get("proxy") != null) {
                    city = (String)pps.get("proxy");
                }
            }
            if (event.get("headers") != null) {
                JSONObject hps = (JSONObject)event.get("headers");
                if (hps.get("day") != null) {
                    day = (String)hps.get("day");
                }
            }
            if (event.get("body") != null) {
                JSONObject body = (JSONObject)parser.parse((String)event.get("body"));
                if (body.get("time") != null) {

            }
For proxy integrations in API Gateway, the input stream contains an API request serialized as a JSON string by API Gateway. The input data can include the request’s HTTP method (httpMethod), path (path and pathParameters), query parameters (queryStringParameters), headers (headers), applicable payload (body), the context (requestContext), and stage variables (stageVariables).

This example Lambda function parses the inputStream parameter to retrieve the query string parameter of name, the proxy path parameter, the day header value and the time property of the payload. For logging, it retrieves the LambdaLogger object from the incoming context object.

The function then returns a greeting to the named user in the message property of the responseBody object. To show the details of the incoming request as marshalled by API Gateway, the function also returns the input data (event) in the response body.

Finally, upon exiting, the function returns a JSON string, containing the required statusCode and any applicable headers and body, for API Gateway to return it as an HTTP response to the client.

To create this function in the Lambda console, you must create a deployment package before uploading the package into Lambda. For more information, see creating a deployment package in the AWS Lambda Developer Guide.

Create a Backend for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration

The following procedure describes how to create the Lambda function in API Gateway using the Lambda console.

Create a Lambda function for an API with a proxy resource in the Lambda console

2. From the upper-right corner, choose an available region for the Lambda function.
3. From the main navigation pane, choose **Functions**.
4. Choose one of the following procedures to create a Lambda function in Node.js or Java. You can adapt the instructions for other languages and platforms.

   a. To create the Node.js Lambda function, choose **Create a Lambda function** or **Get Started Now** to create your first Lambda function in a region, and then do the following.

      i. On the **Select blueprint** page, choose **Author from scratch**.
      ii. On the **Configure triggers** page, choose **Next**.
      iii. On the **Configure function** page, do the following:

         - Type a function name in the **Name** input field.
         - Type a brief function description in the **Description** input field.
         - From the **Runtime** drop-down list, choose **Node.js 4.3**.
      iv. Under **Lambda function code**, do the following:

         - Choose **Edit code inline** from the **Code entry type** drop-down list.
         - Type or copy your Node.js code into the inline code editor.
      v. Under **Lambda function handler and role**, do the following:

         - Leave **index.handler** as-is for **Handler**.
         - Choose an existing or create a new IAM role for the function execution.
      vi. Keep the default values for **Advanced settings**.
      vii. Choose **Next**.
      viii. In the **Review** pane, choose **Create function**.

   For this tutorial, use **GetStartedLambdaProxyIntegration** (p. 19) as the function name and choose the standard **Simple Microservice permissions** policy templates to create the required Lambda execution role.

   b. To create a Java Lambda function, choose **Create a Lambda function** or **Get Started Now** to create your first Lambda function in a region, and then do the following.

      i. On the **Select blueprint** page, choose **Author from scratch**.
      ii. On the **Configure triggers** page, choose **Next**.
      iii. On the **Configure function** page, do the following:

         - Type a function name in the **Name** input field.
         - Type a brief function description in the **Description** input field.
         - From the **Runtime** drop-down list, choose **Java 8**.
      iv. Under **Lambda function code**, do the following:

         - Choose a **Code entry type** for uploading a deployment package from a local drive or Amazon S3.
         - Choose **Upload next to Function package**.
         - Navigate to the deployment package location and select the package.
      v. Under **Lambda function handler and role**, do the following:
- Type your function handler of the `package_name.function_name:method_name` format in **Handler**.

- Choose an existing or create a new IAM role for the function execution.

vi. Keep the default values for **Advanced settings**.

vii. Choose **Next**.

viii. In the **Review** pane, choose **Create function**.

For this tutorial, use `examples` as the Java package name, use `ProxyWithStreams` (p. 20) as the Java class name, use `handleRequest` as the Java function name, and use `examples.ProxyWithStreams::handleRequest` as the Lambda function handler name. Choose the standard **Simple Microservice permissions** policy templates to create the required Lambda execution role.

**Note**

Note the region where you created the Lambda function. You need it when creating the API for the function.

**Create an API with Lambda Proxy Integration**

Now create an API with a proxy resource for a Lambda function by using the API Gateway console.

**Build an API with a proxy resource for a Lambda function**


2. To create an API, choose **Create new API** (for creating the first API) or **Create API** (for creating any subsequent API). Next, do the following:
   a. Choose **New API**.
   b. Type a name in **API Name**.
   c. Optionally, add a brief description in **Description**.
   d. Choose **Create API**.

   For this tutorial, use `LambdaSimpleProxy` as the API name.

3. To create a child resource, choose a parent resource item under the **Resources** tree and then choose **Create Resource** from the **Actions** drop-down menu. Then, do the following in the **New Child Resource** pane.
   a. Select the **Configure as proxy resource** option to create a proxy resource. Otherwise, leave it de-selected.
   b. Type a name in the **Resource Name** input text field.
   c. Type a new name or use the default name in the **Resource Path** input text field.
   d. Choose **Create Resource**.
   e. Select **Enable API Gateway CORS**, if required.

   For this tutorial, use the root resource (`/`) as the parent resource. Select **Configure as proxy resource**. For **Resource Name**, use the default, `proxy`. For **Resource Path**, use `/{proxy+}`. De-select **Enable API Gateway CORS**.

4. To set up the **ANY** method for integration with the Lambda back end, do the following:
a. Choose the resource just created and then choose **Create Method** from the **Actions** drop-down menu.

b. Choose **ANY** from the HTTP method drop-down list and then choose the check mark icon to save the choice.

c. Choose **Lambda Function Proxy** for **Integration type**.

d. Choose a region from **Lambda Region**.

e. Type the name of your Lambda function in **Lambda Function**.

f. Choose **Save**.

g. Choose **OK** when prompted with **Add Permission to Lambda Function**.

For this tutorial, use the previously created **GetStartedLambdaProxyIntegration (p. 19)** for the **Lambda Function**.

For the proxy resource API that Lambda just created, API Gateway forwards the raw request from the client to the backend for the Lambda function to process. The request includes the request method, its path, query string and headers parameters, any payload, plus context and stage variables. The next procedure describes how to test this.

**Test an API with Lambda Proxy Integration**

The following procedure describes how to test the proxy integration.

**Call the GetStartedLambdaProxyIntegration (p. 19) Lambda function through the proxy resource**

- To use a browser to call a GET method on a specific resource of the API, do the following.

  a. If you have not done so, choose **Deploy API** from the **Actions** drop-down menu for the API you created. Follow the instructions to deploy the API to a specific stage. Note the **Invoke URL** that displays on the resulting **Stage Editor** page. This is the base URL of the API.

  b. To submit a GET request on a specific resource, append the resource path, including possible query string expressions to the **Invoke URL** value obtained in the previous step, copy the complete URL into the address bar of a browser, and choose Enter.

For this tutorial, deploy the API to a test stage and note of the API's base URL; for example, `https://wt6mne2s9k.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test`.

There are several ways you can test a deployed API. For GET requests using only URL path variables or a query string parameter, you can type the API resource URL in a browser. For other methods, you must use more advanced REST API testing utilities, such as **POSTMAN** or **cURL**.

**To test the deployed API using cURL**

1. Open a terminal window on your local computer connected to the internet.
2. To test POST `/Seattle?time=evening`:

   Copy the following cURL command and paste it into the terminal window.

   ```bash
   curl -v -X POST \\
   'https://r275xc9bmd.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/Seattle?time=evening' \\
   -H 'content-type: application/json' \\
   -H 'day: Thursday' \\
   -H 'x-amz-docs-region: us-west-2'
   ```
You should get a successful response with the following payload:

```
{
   "message": "Good day, John of Seattle. Happy Friday!",
   "input": {
      "resource": "/{proxy+}",
      "path": "/Seattle",
      "httpMethod": "POST",
      "headers": {
         "day": "Friday"
      },
      "queryStringParameters": {
         "time": "morning"
      },
      "pathParameters": {
         "proxy": "Seattle"
      },
      "stageVariables": null,
      "requestContext": {
         "path": "/{proxy+}",
         "accountId": "123456789012",
         "resourceId": "nl9h80",
         "stage": "test-invoke-stage",
         "requestId": "test-invoke-request",
         "identity": {
            "cognitoIdentityPoolId": null,
            "accountId": "123456789012",
            "cognitoIdentityId": null,
            "caller": "AIDXXX...XXVJZG",
            "apiKey": "test-invoke-api-key",
            "sourceIp": "test-invoke-source-ip",
            "accessKey": "ASIXXX...XXDQ5A",
            "cognitoAuthenticationType": null,
            "cognitoAuthenticationProvider": null,
            "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/kdeding",
            "userAgent": "Apache-HttpClient/4.5.x (Java/1.8.0_131)",
            "user": "AIDXXX...XXVJZG"
         },
         "resourcePath": "/{proxy+}",
         "httpMethod": "POST",
         "apiId": "r275xc9bmd"
      },
      "body": "{ "callerName": "John" }",
      "isBase64Encoded": false
   }
}
```

If you change POST to PUT in the preceding method request, you get the same response.

3. To test GET /Boston?time=morning:

Copy the following cURL command and paste it into the terminal window.

```
curl -X GET \n   'https://r275xc9bmd.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/Seattle?time=evening' \n   -H 'content-type: application/json' \n   -H 'day: Thursday' \n   -H 'x-amz-docs-region: us-west-2'
```
You get a 200 OK Request response similar to the result from the preceding POST request, with the exception that the GET request does not have any payload. So the body parameter will be null.

**Note**  
The requestContext is a map of key-value pairs and corresponds to the $context (p. 189) variable. Its outcome is API-dependent. API Gateway may add new keys to the map. For more information, see Input Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 130).

### Build an API Gateway API with Custom Lambda Integration

**Note**  
The Lambda custom integration, formerly known as the Lambda integration, is a legacy technology. We recommend that you use the Lambda proxy integration for any new API. For more information, see the section called “Build an API with Lambda Proxy Integration” (p. 18).

In this walkthrough, we use the API Gateway console to build an API that enables a client to call Lambda functions through the Lambda custom integration. For more information about AWS Lambda and Lambda functions, see the AWS Lambda Developer Guide.

To facilitate learning, we chose a simple Lambda function with minimal API setup to walk you through the steps of building an API Gateway API with the Lambda custom integration. When necessary, we describe some of the logic. For a more detailed example of the Lambda custom integration, see Create an API Gateway API for AWS Lambda Functions (p. 484).

Before creating the API, set up the Lambda backend by creating a Lambda function in AWS Lambda, described next.

**Topics**
- Create a Lambda Function for the Lambda Custom Integration (p. 27)
- Create an API with the Lambda Custom Integration (p. 31)
- Test Invoking the API Method (p. 33)
- Deploy the API (p. 34)
- Test the API in a Deployment Stage (p. 35)
- Clean Up (p. 36)

### Create a Lambda Function for the Lambda Custom Integration

**Note**  
Creating Lambda functions may result in charges to your AWS account.

In this step, you create a "Hello, World!"-like Lambda function for the Lambda custom integration. Throughout this walkthrough, the function is called GetStartedLambdaIntegration. It is similar to GetStartedLambdaProxyIntegration (p. 19), which is the function we created for the Lambda proxy integration.

The Node.js implementation of this GetStartedLambdaIntegration Lambda function is as follows:

```javascript
'use strict';
```
var days = ['Sunday', 'Monday', 'Tuesday', 'Wednesday', 'Thursday', 'Friday', 'Saturday'];

var times = ['morning', 'afternoon', 'evening', 'night', 'day'];

console.log('Loading function);

exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
  // Parse the input for the name, city, time and day property values
  let name = event.name === undefined ? 'you' : event.name;
  let city = event.city === undefined ? 'World' : event.city;
  let time = times.indexOf(event.time)<0 ? 'day' : event.time;
  let day = days.indexOf(event.day)<0 ? null : event.day;
  // Generate a greeting
  let greeting = 'Good ' + time + ', ' + name + ' of ' + city + '. '
  if (day) greeting += 'Happy ' + day + '!';
  // Log the greeting to CloudWatch
  console.log('Hello: ', greeting);
  // Return a greeting to the caller
  callback(null, {
    "greeting": greeting
  });
};

For the Lambda custom integration, API Gateway passes the input to the Lambda function from the client as the integration request body. The event object of the Lambda function handler is the input.

Our Lambda function is simple. It parses the input event object for the name, city, time, and day properties. It then returns a greeting, as a JSON object of {"message":greeting}, to the caller. The message is in the "Good [morning|afternoon|day], [name] in [city]World. Happy day!" pattern. It is assumed that the input to the Lambda function is of the following JSON object:

```
{
  "city": "...",
  "time": "...",
  "day": "...",
  "name" : "...
```

For more information, see the AWS Lambda Developer Guide.

In addition, the function logs its execution to Amazon CloudWatch by calling console.log(...). This is helpful for tracing calls when debugging the function. To allow the GetStartedLambdaIntegration function to log the call, set an IAM role with appropriate policies for the Lambda function to create the CloudWatch streams and add log entries to the streams. The Lambda console guides you through to create the required IAM roles and policies.

If you set up the API without using the API Gateway console, such as when importing an API from Swagger, you must explicitly create, if necessary, and set up an invocation role and policy for API Gateway to invoke the Lambda functions. For more information on how to set up Lambda invocation and execution roles for an API Gateway API, see Control Access to an API with IAM Permissions (p. 239).

Compared to GetStartedLambdaProxyIntegration (p. 19), the Lambda function for the Lambda proxy integration, the GetStartedLambdaIntegration Lambda function for the Lambda custom integration only takes input from the API Gateway API integration request body. The function can return an output of any JSON object, a string, a number, a Boolean, or even a binary blob. The Lambda function for the Lambda proxy integration, in contrast, can take the input from any request data, but must return an output of a particular JSON object. The GetStartedLambdaIntegration function for the Lambda custom integration can have the API request parameters as input, provided that API Gateway maps the
required API request parameters to the integration request body before forwarding the client request to
the backend. For this to happen, the API developer must create a mapping template and configure it on
the API method when creating the API.

Now, create the GetStartedLambdaIntegration Lambda function.

**To create the GetStartedLambdaIntegration Lambda function for Lambda custom integration**

1. Open the AWS Lambda console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/lambda/.
2. Do one of the following:
   - If the welcome page appears, choose Get Started Now and then choose Create a function.
   - If the Lambda > Functions list page appears, choose Create a function.
3. From Select blueprint, choose Author from scratch.
4. In the Configure triggers pane, choose Next.
5. In the Configure function pane, do the following:
   a. Under Basic information:
      - For Name, type GetStartedLambdaIntegration as the Lambda function name.
      - For Description, type Backend for the Getting Started walkthrough with Lambda custom integration. This is optional and you can leave it blank.
      - For Runtime, choose Node.js 6.10.
   b. Under Lambda function code:
      - Choose Edit code inline, if it is not already shown, under Content entry type.
      - Copy the Lambda function code listed in the beginning of this section and paste it in the inline code editor.
      - Leave the default choices for all other fields in this section.
   c. Under Lambda function handler and role:
      - Leave the default of index.handler for Handler.
      - For Role, choose Create new role from template(s).
      - For Role name, type a name for your role (for example, GetStartedLambdaIntegrationRole).
      - For Policy templates, choose Simple Microservice permissions.
      - **Tip**
        To use an existing IAM role, choose Choose an existing role for Role and then select an entry from the drop-down list of existing roles. Alternatively, to create a custom role, choose Create a Custom Role and follow the instructions.
   d. For Tags, leave them blank.
   e. For Advanced settings leave the defaults.
   f. Choose Next.
   g. Choose Create function. Note of the AWS Region where you created this function. You need it later.
6. To test the newly created function, as a best practice, choose Actions and select Configure test event.
   a. For Input test event, replace any default code statements with the following, and then choose Save and test.

```{  

b. Choose Test to invoke the function. The **Execution result: succeeded** section is shown. Expand Detail and you see the following output.

```
{
  "greeting": "Good morning, Jonny of Seattle. Happy Wednesday!"
}
```

The output is also written to CloudWatch Logs.

As a side exercise, you can use the IAM console to view the IAM role (GetStartedLambdaIntegrationRole) that was created as part of the Lambda function creation. Attached to this IAM role are two inline policies. One stipulates the most basic permissions for Lambda execution. It permits calling the CloudWatch CreateLogGroup for any CloudWatch resources of your account in the region where the Lambda function is created. This policy also allows creating the CloudWatch streams and logging events for the HelloWorldForLambdaIntegration Lambda function.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "logs:CreateLogGroup",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:logs:region:account-id:*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "logs:CreateLogStream",
        "logs:PutLogEvents"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:logs:region:account-id:log-group:/aws/lambda/
GetStartedLambdaIntegration:*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

The other policy document applies to invoking another AWS service that is not used in this example. You can skip it for now.

Associated with the IAM role is a trusted entity, which is lambda.amazonaws.com. Here is the trust relationship:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```
"Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
}
]
}

The combination of this trust relationship and the inline policy makes it possible for the Lambda function to invoke a `console.log()` function to log events to CloudWatch Logs.

If you did not use the AWS Management Console to create the Lambda function, you need to follow these examples to create the required IAM role and policies and then manually attach the role to your function.

Create an API with the Lambda Custom Integration

With the Lambda function (GetStartedLambdaIntegration) created and tested, you are ready to expose the function through an API Gateway API. For illustration purposes, we expose the Lambda function with a generic HTTP method. We use the request body, a URL path variable, a query string, and a header to receive required input data from the client. We turn on the API Gateway request validator for the API to ensure that all of the required data is properly defined and specified. We configure a mapping template for API Gateway to transform the client-supplied request data into the valid format as required by the backend Lambda function.

The API is named GetStartedLambdaIntegrationAPI.

To create an API with Lambda custom integration with a Lambda function

1. Launch the API Gateway console.
2. Choose Create new API.
   a. Type GetStartedLambdaIntegrationAPI for API name.
   b. Type a description of the API for Description or leave it blank.
   c. Choose Create API.
3. Choose the root resource (/) under Resources. From the Actions menu, choose Create Resource.
   a. Type city for Resource Name.
   b. Replace Resource Path with {city}. This is an example of the templated path variable used to take input from the client. Later, we show how to map this path variable into the LAM function input using a mapping template.
   c. Select the Enable API Gateway Cors option.
   d. Choose Create Resource.
4. With the newly created /{city} resource highlighted, choose Create Method from Actions.
   a. Choose ANY from the HTTP method drop-down menu. The ANY HTTP verb is a placeholder for a valid HTTP method that a client submits at run time. This example shows that ANY method can be used for Lambda custom integration as well as for Lambda proxy integration.
   b. To save the setting, choose the check mark.
5. In Method Execution, for the ANY /{city} method, do the following:
   a. Choose Lambda Function for Integration type.
   b. Leave the Use Lambda Proxy integration box clear to use custom Lambda custom integration.
   c. Choose the region where you created the Lambda function; for example, us-west-2.
   d. Type the name of your Lambda function in Lambda Function; for example, GetStartedLambdaIntegration.
e. Choose Save.
f. Choose OK in Add Permission to Lambda Function to have API Gateway set up the required access permissions for the API to invoke the integrated Lambda function.

6. In Method Execution, choose Method Request and configure as follows:

- A query string parameter (time)
- To set up a header parameter (day)
- To define a payload property (callerName)

At run time, the client can use these request parameters and the request body to provide time of the day, the day of the week, and the name of the caller. You already configured the /{city} path variable.

a. Under Settings choose the pencil icon to choose Validate body, query string parameters, and headers from the Request Validator drop-down menu. This lets API Gateway perform basic request validation before forwarding the request to the Lambda function.

b. Expand the URL Query String Parameters section. Choose Add query string. Type time for Name. Select the Required option and choose the check-mark icon to save the setting. Leave Caching cleared to avoid an unnecessary charge for this exercise.

c. Expand the HTTP Request Headers section. Choose Add header. Type day for Name. Select the Required option and choose the check-mark icon to save the setting. Leave Caching cleared to avoid an unnecessary charge for this exercise.

d. To define the method request payload, do the following:

i. To define a model, choose Models under the API from the API Gateway primary navigation pane, and then choose Create.

ii. Type GetStartedLambdaIntegrationUserInput for Model name.

iii. Type application/json for Content type.

iv. Type a description for Model description or leave it blank.

v. Copy the following schema definition to the Model schema editor:

```json
{
   "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
   "title": "GetStartedLambdaIntegrationInputModel",
   "type": "object",
   "properties": {
      "callerName": { "type": "string" }
   }
}
```

vi. Choose Save to finish defining the input model.

vii. Go back to Method Request and expand Request body. Choose Add model. Type application/json for Content type. Choose GetStartedLambdaIntegrationInput for Model name. Choose the check-mark icon to save the setting.

7. In Method Execution for the ANY /{city} method, choose Integration Request to set up a body-mapping template. This maps the previously configured method request parameter of nameQuery or nameHeader to the JSON payload, as required by the backend Lambda function.

a. Expand the Body Mapping Templates section. Choose Add mapping template. Type application/json for Content-Type. Choose the check-mark icon to save the setting.

b. Type the following mapping template in the VTL script editor. Choose Save to finish the setup.

8. Choose Integration Request to set up a mapping template to transform the client-supplied request data to the input format of the integrated Lambda function:
a. Expand the **Body mapping templates** section.

b. Check the recommended **When there are no templates defined for Request body passthrough**.

c. Choose **Add mapping template**.

d. Type `application/json` for **Content-type**.

e. Choose the check-mark icon to save the setting.

f. Choose `GetStartedLambaIntegrationUserInput` from **Generate template** to generate an initial mapping template. This option is available because you defined a model schema, without which you would need to write the mapping template from scratch.

g. Modify the mapping script in the mapping template editor as follows:

```plaintext
#set($inputRoot = $input.path('/'))
{
  "city": "$input.params('city')",
  "time": "$input.params('time')",
  "day": "$input.params('day')",
  "name": "$inputRoot.callerName"
}
```

### Test Invoking the API Method

The API Gateway console provides a testing facility for you to test invoking the API before it is deployed. You use the Test feature of the console to test the API by submitting the following request:

```plaintext
POST /Seattle?time=morning
day:Wednesday
{
  "callerName": "John"
}
```

In this test request, you set ANY to POST, set `{city}` to Seattle, assign Wednesday as the day header value, and assign "John" as the `callerName` value.

**To test invoking the ANY /{city} method**

1. In **Method Execution**, choose **Test**.
2. Choose **POST** from the **Method** drop-down list.
3. Type **Seattle** for the `{city}` path variable.
4. Type **morning** for the day query string parameter.
5. Type `{ "callerName":"John" }` for **Request Body**.
6. Choose **Test**.
7. Verify that the returned response payload is as follows:

```plaintext
{  
  "greeting": "Good morning, John of Seattle. Happy Wednesday!"
}
```

8. You can also view the logs to examine how API Gateway processes the request and response.
The logs show the incoming request before the mapping and the integration request after the mapping. When a test fails, the logs are useful for evaluating whether the original input is correct or the mapping template works correctly.

**Deploy the API**

The test invocation is a simulation and has limitations. For example, it bypasses any authorization mechanism enacted on the API. To test the API execution in real time, you must deploy the API first. To deploy an API, you create a stage to create a snapshot of the API at that time. The stage name also defines the base path after the API's default host name. The API's root resource is appended after the stage name. When you modify the API, you must redeploy it to a new or existing stage before the changes take effect.
To deploy the API to a stage

1. Choose the API from the APIs pane or choose a resource or method from the Resources pane. Choose Deploy API from the Actions drop-down menu.
2. For Deployment stage, choose New Stage.
3. For Stage name, type a name; for example, test.
   
   Note
   The input must be UTF-8 encoded (i.e., unlocalized) text.
4. For Stage description, type a description or leave it blank.
5. For Deployment description, type a description or leave it blank.
6. Choose Deploy. After the API is successfully deployed, you see the API’s base URL (the default host name plus the stage name) displayed as Invoke URL at the top of the Stage Editor. The general pattern of this base URL is https://api-id.region.amazonaws.com/stageName. For example, the base URL of the API (beags1mnid) created in the us-west-2 region and deployed to the test stage is https://beags1mnid.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test.

Test the API in a Deployment Stage

There are several ways you can test a deployed API. For GET requests using only URL path variables or query string parameters, you can type the API resource URL in a browser. For other methods, you must use more advanced REST API testing utilities, such as POSTMAN or cURL.

To test the API using cURL

1. Open a terminal window on your local computer connected to the internet.
2. To test POST /Seattle?time=evening:
   
   Copy the following cURL command and paste it into the terminal window.

   ```
curl -v -X POST \\
'https://beags1mnid.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/Seattle?time=evening' \
-H 'content-type: application/json' \
-H 'day: Thursday' \
-H 'x-amz-docs-region: us-west-2' \
-d '{
  "callerName": "John"
}'
```

   You should get a successful response with the following payload:

   ```json
   {"greeting":"Good evening, John of Seattle. Happy Thursday!"}
   ``

   If you change POST to PUT in this method request, you get the same response.
3. To test GET /Boston?time=morning:
   
   Copy the following cURL command and paste it into the terminal window.

   ```
curl -X GET \\
'https://beags1mnid.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/Boston?time=morning' \
-H 'content-type: application/json' \
-H 'day: Thursday' \
-H 'x-amz-docs-region: us-west-2' \
-d '{
  "callerName": "John"
}'
```
You get a 400 Bad Request response with the following error message:

```json
{"message": "Invalid request body"}
```

This is because the GET request that you submitted cannot take a payload and fails the request validation.

**Clean Up**

If you no longer need the Lambda functions you created for this walkthrough, you can delete them now. You can also delete the accompanying IAM resources.

**Warning**

If you plan to complete the other walkthroughs in this series, do not delete the Lambda execution role or the Lambda invocation role. If you delete a Lambda function that your APIs rely on, those APIs will no longer work. Deleting a Lambda function cannot be undone. If you want to use the Lambda function again, you must re-create the function.

If you delete an IAM resource that a Lambda function relies on, that Lambda function will no longer work, and any APIs that rely on that function will no longer work. Deleting an IAM resource cannot be undone. If you want to use the IAM resource again, you must re-create the resource.

**To delete the Lambda functions**

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Lambda console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/lambda/.
2. From the list of functions, choose **GetHelloWorld**, choose **Actions**, and then choose **Delete function**. When prompted, choose **Delete** again.
3. From the list of functions, choose **GetHelloWithName**, choose **Actions**, and then choose **Delete function**. When prompted, choose **Delete** again.

**To delete the associated IAM resources**

1. Open the IAM console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/.
2. From **Details**, choose **Roles**.
3. From the list of roles, choose **APIGatewayLambdaExecRole**, choose **Role Actions**, and then choose **Delete Role**. When prompted, choose **Yes, Delete**.
4. From **Details**, choose **Policies**.
5. From the list of policies, choose **APIGatewayLambdaExecPolicy**, choose **Policy Actions**, and then choose **Delete**. When prompted, choose **Delete**.

You have now reached the end of this walkthrough.

**Build an API Gateway API with HTTP Integrations**

To build an API with HTTP integrations, you can use either the HTTP proxy integration or the HTTP custom integration. We recommend that you use the HTTP proxy integration, whenever possible, for the streamlined API set up while providing versatile and powerful features. The HTTP custom integration
can be compelling if it is necessary to transform client request data for the backend or transform the backend response data for the client.

Topics
- Build an API with HTTP Proxy Integration (p. 37)
- Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42)

Build an API with HTTP Proxy Integration

The HTTP proxy integration of API Gateway is a simple, powerful, and versatile mechanism to build an API that allows a web application to access multiple resources or features of the integrated HTTP endpoint, for example the entire website, with a streamlined setup of a single API method. In HTTP proxy integration, API Gateway passes the client-submitted method request to the backend. The request data that is passed through includes the request headers, query string parameters, URL path variables, and payload. The backend HTTP endpoint or the web server parses the incoming request data to determine the response that it returns. In a sense, the HTTP proxy integration makes the client and backend interact directly without any intervention from API Gateway after the API method is set up.

With the all-encompassing proxy resource \{proxy+\}, and the catch-all ANY verb for the HTTP method, you can use an HTTP proxy integration to create an API of a single API method. The method exposes the entire set of the publicly accessible HTTP resources and operations of a website. When the backend web server opens more resources for public access, the client can use these new resources with the same API setup. To enable this, the website developer must communicate clearly to the client developer what the new resources are and what operations are applicable for each of them.

As a quick introduction, the following tutorial demonstrates the HTTP proxy integration. In the tutorial, we create an API using the API Gateway console to integrate with the PetStore website through a generic proxy resource \(\{proxy+\}\), and create the HTTP method placeholder of ANY.

Topics
- Create an API with HTTP Proxy Integration Using the API Gateway Console (p. 37)
- Test an API with HTTP Proxy Integration (p. 39)

Create an API with HTTP Proxy Integration Using the API Gateway Console

The following procedure walks you through the steps to create and test an API with a proxy resource for an HTTP backend using the API Gateway console. The HTTP backend is the PetStore website (http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/) from Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42), in which screenshots are used as visual aids to illustrate the API Gateway UI elements. If you are new to using the API Gateway console to create an API, you may want to follow that section first.

To build an API with HTTP proxy integration with the PetStore website through a proxy resource

2. To create an API, choose Create new API (for creating the first API) or Create API (for creating any subsequent API). Next, do the following:
   a. Choose New API.
   b. Type a name in API Name.
c. Optionally, add a brief description in **Description**.

d. Choose **Create API**.

For this tutorial, use `ProxyResourceForPetStore` for the API name.

3. To create a child resource, choose a parent resource item under the **Resources** tree and then choose **Create Resource** from the **Actions** drop-down menu. Then, do the following in the **New Child Resource** pane.

   a. Select the **Configure as proxy resource** option to create a proxy resource. Otherwise, leave it deselected.

   b. Type a name in the **Resource Name** text field.

   c. Type a new name or use the default name in the **Resource Path** text field.

   d. Choose **Create Resource**.

   e. Select **Enable API Gateway CORS**, if required.

For this tutorial, select **Configure as proxy resource**. For **Resource Name**, use the default, `proxy`. For **Resource Path**, use `/{proxy+}`. Select **Enable API Gateway CORS**.

4. To set up the ANY method for integration with the HTTP backend, do the following:

   a. Choose the resource just created and then choose **Create Method** from the **Actions** drop-down menu.

   b. Choose **ANY** from the HTTP method drop-down list and then choose the check mark icon to save the choice.

   c. Choose **HTTP Proxy** for **Integration type**.

   d. Type an HTTP backend resource URL in **Endpoint URL**.

   e. Use default settings for other fields.

   f. Choose **Save** to finish configuring the ANY method.

For this tutorial, use `http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/{proxy}` for the **Endpoint URL**.
In the API just created, the API's proxy resource path of \{proxy+\} becomes the placeholder of any of the backend endpoints under http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/. For example, it can be petstore, petstore/pets, and petstore/pets/{petId}. The ANY method serves as a placeholder for any of the supported HTTP verbs at run time.

Test an API with HTTP Proxy Integration

Whether a particular client request succeeds depends on the following:

- If the backend has made the corresponding backend endpoint available and, if so, has granted the required access permissions.
- If the client supplies the correct input.

For example, the PetStore API used here does not expose the /petstore resource. As such, you get a 404 Resource Not Found response containing the error message of Cannot GET /petstore.

In addition, the client must be able to handle the output format of the backend in order to parse the result correctly. API Gateway does not mediate to facilitate interactions between the client and backend.

To test an API integrated with the PetStore website using HTTP proxy integration through the proxy resource

1. To use the API Gateway console to test invoking the API, do the following.
   a. Choose ANY on a proxy resource in the Resources tree.
   b. Choose Test in the Method Execution pane.
   c. From the Method drop-down list, choose an HTTP verb supported by the backend.
   d. Under Path, type a specific path for the proxy resource supporting the chosen operation.
   e. If required, type a supported query expression for the chosen operation under the Query Strings heading.
   f. If required, type one or more supported header expressions for the chosen operation under the Headers heading.
   g. If configured, set the required stage variable values for the chosen operation under the Stage Variables heading.
h. If prompted and required, choose an API Gateway-generated client certificate under the Client Certificate heading to the operation to be authenticated by the back end.

i. If prompted, type an appropriate request body in the text editor under the Request Body heading.

j. Choose Test to test invoking the method.

For this tutorial, use GET for Method in place of ANY, use petstore/pets for Path in place of the proxy resource path ((proxy)), and type=fish for Query Strings.
Method Execution /{proxy+} - ANY - Method Test

Make a test call to your method with the provided input

Method
- GET

Path
- {proxy}
  - petstore/pets

Query Strings
- {proxy}
  - type=fish

Headers
- {proxy}
  - Use a colon (:) to separate header name and value, and new lines to declare multiple headers. 
    eg. Accept:application/json.

Stage Variables

No stage variables exist for this method.

Client Certificate

No client certificates have been generated.

Request Body

Request Body is not supported for GET methods.
Because the backend website supports the GET /petstore/pets?type=fish request, it returns a successful response similar to the following:

```json
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "type": "fish",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "type": "fish",
    "price": 124.99
  },
  {
    "id": 3,
    "type": "fish",
    "price": 0.99
  }
]
```

If you try to call GET /petstore, you get a 404 response with an error message of Cannot GET /petstore. This is because the backend does not support the specified operation. If you call GET /petstore/pets/1, you get a 200 OK response with the following payload, because the request is supported by the PetStore website.

```json
{
  "id": 1,
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
}
```

2. To use a browser to call a GET method on a specific resource of the API, do the following.

   a. If you have not done so, choose Deploy API from the Actions drop-down menu for the API you created. Follow the instructions to deploy the API to a specific stage. Note the Invoke URL that displays on the resulting Stage Editor page. This is the base URL of the API.

   b. To submit a GET request on a specific resource, append the resource path, including possible query string expressions to the Invoke URL value obtained in the previous step, copy the complete URL into the address bar of a browser, and choose Enter.

For this tutorial, deploy the API to a test stage and append petstore/pets?type=fish to the API's Invoke URL. This produces a URL of https://4zgjyi12c1.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/petstore/pets?type=fish.

The result should be the same as returned when you use TestInvoke from the API Gateway console.

## Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration

In this tutorial, you create an API from ground up using the Amazon API Gateway console. You can think of the console as an API design studio and use it to scope the API features, to experiment with its behaviors, to build the API, and to deploy your API in stages.

### Topics

- Create the API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 43)
Create the API with HTTP Custom Integration

This section walks you through the steps to create resources, expose methods on a resource, configure a method to achieve the desired API behaviors, and to test and deploy the API.

1. From Create new API, select New API, type a name in API Name, optionally add a description in Description, and then choose Create API.

As a result, an empty API is created. The Resources tree shows the root resource (/) without any methods. In this exercise, we will build the API with the HTTP custom integration of the PetStore website (http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com.) For illustration purposes, we will create a /pets resource as a child of the root and expose a GET method on this resource for a client to retrieve a list of available Pets items from the PetStore website.

2. To create the /pets resource, select the root, choose Actions and then choose Create Resource.
Type Pets in **Resource Name**, leave the **Resource Path** value as given, and choose **Create Resource**.

3. To expose a GET method on the /pets resource, choose **Actions** and then **Create Method**.
Choose **GET** from the list under the **/pets** resource node and choose the check mark icon to finish creating the method.

**Note**
Other options for an API method include:

- **POST**, primarily used to create child resources.
- **PUT**, primarily used to update existing resources (and, although not recommended, can be used to create child resources).
- **DELETE**, used to delete resources.
- **PATCH**, used to update resources.
- **HEAD**, primarily used in testing scenarios. It is the same as GET but does not return the resource representation.
- **OPTIONS**, which can be used by callers to get information about available communication options for the target service.

The method created is not yet integrated with the backend. The next step sets this up.
4. In the method's Setup pane, select HTTP for Integration type, select GET from the HTTP method drop-down list, type `http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets` as the Endpoint URL value, leave all other settings as default, and then choose Save.

**Note**
For the integration request's HTTP method, you must choose one supported by the backend. For HTTP or Mock integration, it makes sense that the method request and the integration request use the same HTTP verb. For other integration types the method request will likely use an HTTP verb different from the integration request. For example, to call a Lambda function, the integration request must use POST to invoke the function, whereas the method request may use any HTTP verb depending on the logic of the Lambda function.

When the method setup finishes, you are presented with the Method Execution pane, where you can further configure the method request to add query string or custom header parameters. You can also update the integration request to map input data from the method request to the format required by the back end.

The PetStore website allows you to retrieve a list of Pet items by the pet type (e.g., "Dog" or "Cat") on a given page. It uses the type and page query string parameters to accept such input. As such, we must add the query string parameters to the method request and map them into the corresponding query strings of the integration request.

5. In the GET method's Method Execution pane, choose Method Request, select AWS_IAM for Authorization, expand the URL Query String Parameters section, and choose Add query string to create two query string parameters named type and page. Choose the check mark icon to save the newly added query string parameters.
The client can now supply a pet type and a page number as query string parameters when submitting a request. These input parameters must be mapped into the integration's query string parameters to forward the input values to our PetStore website in the backend. Because the method uses AWS_IAM, you must sign the request to invoke the method.

6. From the method's Integration Request page, expand the URL Query String Parameters section. By default, the method request query string parameters are mapped to the like-named integration request query string parameters. This default mapping works for our demo API. We will leave them as given. To map a different method request parameter to the corresponding integration request parameter, choose the pencil icon for the parameter to edit the mapping expression, shown in the Mapped from column. To map a method request parameter to a different integration request parameter, first choose the delete icon to remove the existing integration request parameter, choose Add query string to specify a new name and the desired method request parameter mapping expression.
This completes building the simple demo API. It's time to test the API.

7. To test the API using the API Gateway console, choose Test on the Method Execution pane for the GET /pets method. In the Method Test pane, enter Dog and 2 for the type and page query strings, respectively, and then choose Test.
Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration

The result is shown as follows. (You may need to scroll down to see the test result.)
8. To deploy the API, select the API and then choose **Deploy API** from the **Actions** drop-down menu.
In the **Deploy API** dialog, choose a stage (or [New Stage] for the API's first deployment); enter a name (e.g., "test", "prod", "dev", etc.) in the **Stage name** input field; optionally, provide a description in **Stage description** and/or **Deployment description**; and then choose **Deploy**.

Once deployed, you can obtain the invocation URLs (**Invoke URL**) of the API's endpoints.

If the GET method supported open access, (i.e., if the method's authorization type were set to **NONE**) you could double-click the **Invoke URL** link to invoke the method in your default browser. If
needed, you could also append necessary query string parameters to the invocation URL. With the AWS_IAM authorization type described here, you must sign the request with an access key ID and the corresponding secret key of an IAM user of your AWS account. To do this, you must use a client that supports the Signature Version 4 (SigV4) protocols. An example of such a client is an app that uses one of the AWS SDKs or the Postman application or cURL commands. To call a POST, PUT, or PATCH method that take a payload, you also need to use such a client to handle the payload.

To invoke this API method in the Postman, append the query string parameters to the stage-specific method invocation URL (as shown in the previous image) to create the complete method request URL:


Specify this URL in the address bar of the browser. Choose GET as the HTTP verb. Select AWS Signature for the Type option under the Authorization tab, and then specify the following required properties before sending the request:

- For AccessKey, type the caller's AWS access key, as provisioned from AWS IAM.
- For SecretKey, type the caller's AWS secret key, as provisioned from AWS IAM when the access key was first created.
- For AWS Region, type the API-hosting AWS Region, as specified in the invocation URL.
- For Service Name, type execute-api, for the API Gateway execution service.

If you use an SDK to create a client, you can call the methods exposed by the SDK to sign the request. For implementation details, see the AWS SDK of your choosing.

**Note**

When changes are made to your API, you must redeploy the API to make the new or updated features available before invoking the request URL again.

### Map Request Parameters for an API Gateway API

In this walkthrough, we describe how to map method request parameters to the corresponding integration request parameters for an API Gateway API. We create an example API with the HTTP custom integration and use it to demonstrate how to use API Gateway to map a method request parameter to the corresponding integration request parameter. We then access the following publicly accessible HTTP endpoint:

http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets

If you copy the above URL, paste it into the address bar of a web browser, and press Enter or Return, you get the following JSON-formatted response body:

```json
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 124.99
  },
  {
    "id": 3,
```
The preceding endpoint can take two query parameters: `type` and `page`. For example, change the URL to the following:

```
```

You receive the following JSON-formatted response payload, displaying page 2 of only the cats:

```
[
  {
    "id": 4,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 999.99
  },
  {
    "id": 5,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  {
    "id": 6,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 49.97
  }
]
```

This endpoint also supports the use of an item ID, as expressed by a URL path parameter. For example, browse to the following:

```
http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/1
```

The following JSON-formatted information about the item with an ID of 1 is displayed:

```
{
  "id": 1,
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
}
```

In addition to supporting GET operations, this endpoint takes POST requests with a payload. For example, use Postman to send a POST method request to the following:

```
http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets
```

Include the header `Content-type: application/json` and the following request body:

```
{
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
}
```

You receive the following JSON object in the response body:
We now expose these and other features by building an API Gateway API with the HTTP custom integration of this PetStore website. The tasks include the following:

- Enable the API to accept two method request query parameters of `petType` and `petsPage`, map them to the `type` and `page` query parameters of the integration request, respectively, and pass the request to the HTTP endpoint.
- Support a path parameter of `{petId}` on the API's method request URL to specify an item ID, map it to the `{id}` path parameter in the integration request URL, and send the request to the HTTP endpoint.
- Enable the method request to accept the JSON payload of the format defined by the backend website, and pass the payload without modification through the integration request to the backend HTTP endpoint.

**Topics**

- Prerequisites (p. 54)
- Step 1: Create Resources (p. 54)
- Step 2: Create and Test the Methods (p. 55)
- Step 3: Deploy the API (p. 58)
- Step 4: Test the API (p. 58)
- Next Steps (p. 60)

**Note**

Pay attention to the casing used in the steps of this walkthrough. Typing a lowercase letter instead of an uppercase letter (or vice versa) can cause errors later in the walkthrough.

**Prerequisites**

Before you begin this walkthrough, you should do the following:

1. Complete the steps in Get Ready to Build an API Gateway API (p. 6), including assigning API Gateway access permission to the IAM user.
2. At a minimum, follow the steps in Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42) to create a new API named `MyDemoAPI` in the API Gateway console.

**Step 1: Create Resources**

In this step, you create three resources that enable the API to interact with the HTTP endpoint.

**To create the first resource**

1. In the **Resources** pane, select the resource root, as represented by a single forward slash (`/`), and then choose **Create Resource** from the **Actions** drop-down menu.
2. For **Resource Name**, type `petstorewalkthrough`.
3. For **Resource Path**, accept the default of `/petstorewalkthrough`, and then choose **Create Resource**.

**To create the second resource**

1. In the **Resources** pane, choose `/petstorewalkthrough`, and then choose **Create Resource**.
2. For **Resource Name**, type `pets`.
3. For **Resource Path**, accept the default of `/petstorewalkthrough/pets`, and then choose **Create Resource**.

**To create the third resource**

1. In the **Resources** pane, choose `/petstorewalkthrough/pets`, and then choose **Create Resource**.
2. For **Resource Name**, type `petId`. This maps to the item ID in the HTTP endpoint.
3. For **Resource Path**, overwrite `petid` with `{petId}`. Use curly braces (`{ }`) around `petId` so that `/petstorewalkthrough/pets/{petId}` is displayed, and then choose **Create Resource**.

This maps to `/petstore/pets/my-item-id` in the HTTP endpoint.

**Step 2: Create and Test the Methods**

In this step, you integrate the methods with the backend HTTP endpoints, map the GET method request parameters to the corresponding integration request parameters, and then test the methods.

**To set up and test the first GET method**

This procedure demonstrates the following:

- Create and integrate the method request of GET /petstorewalkthrough/pets with the integration request of GET http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets.
- Map the method request query parameters of `petType` and `petsPage` to the integration request query string parameters of `type` and `page`, respectively.

1. In the **Resources** pane, choose `/petstorewalkthrough/pets`, choose **Create Method** from the **Actions** menu, and then choose **GET** under `/pets` from the drop-down list of the method names.
2. In the `/petstorewalkthrough/pets - GET - Setup` pane, choose **HTTP** for **Integration type** and choose **GET** for **HTTP method**.
4. Choose **Save**.
5. In the **Method Execution** pane, choose **Method Request**, and then choose the arrow next to **URL Query String Parameters**.
6. Choose **Add query string**.
7. For **Name**, type `petType`.

This specifies the `petType` query parameter in the API's method request.
8. Choose the check mark icon to finish creating the method request URL query string parameter.
9. Choose **Add query string** again.
10. For **Name**, type `petsPage`. 
This specifies the petsPage query parameter in the API's method request.

11. Choose the check mark icon to finish creating the method request URL query string parameter.

12. Choose Method Execution, choose Integration Request, and then choose the arrow next to URL Query String Parameters.

13. Delete the petType entry mapped from method.request.querystring.petType and the petsPage entry mapped from method.request.querystring.petsPage. You perform this step because the endpoint requires query string parameters named type and page for the request URL, instead of the default values.


15. For Name, type type. This creates the required query string parameter for the integration request URL.

16. For Mapped from, type method.request.querystring.petType.

This maps the method request's petType query parameter to the integration request's type query parameter.

17. Choose the check mark icon to finish creating the integration request URL query string parameter.

18. Choose Add query string again.

19. For Name, type page. This creates the required query string parameter for the integration request URL.

20. For Mapped from, type method.request.querystring.petsPage.

This maps the method request's petsPage query parameter to the integration request's page query parameter.

21. Choose the check mark icon to finish creating the integration request URL query string parameter.

22. Choose Method Execution. In the Client box, choose TEST. In the Query Strings area, for petType, type cat. For petsPage, type 2.

23. Choose Test. If successful, Response Body displays the following:

```json
[
  {
    "id": 4,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 999.99
  },
  {
    "id": 5,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  {
    "id": 6,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 49.97
  }
]
```

**To set up and test the second GET method**

This procedure demonstrates the following:

- Create and integrate the method request of GET /petstorewalkthrough/pets/{petId} with the integration request of GET http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}.
• Map the method request path parameters of \texttt{petId} to the integration request path parameters of \texttt{id}.

1. In the \textbf{Resources} list, choose \texttt{/petstorewalkthrough/pets/{petId}}, choose \textbf{Create Method} from the \textbf{Actions} drop-down menu, and then choose \texttt{GET} as the HTTP verb for the method.
2. In the \textbf{Setup} pane, choose \texttt{HTTP} for \textbf{Integration type} and choose \texttt{GET} for \textbf{HTTP method}.
3. For \textbf{Endpoint URL}, type \texttt{http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}}.
4. Choose \textbf{Save}.
5. In the \textbf{Method Execution} pane, choose \textbf{Integration Request}, and then choose the arrow next to \textbf{URL Path Parameters}.
6. Choose \textbf{Add path}.
7. For \textbf{Name}, type \texttt{id}.
8. For \textbf{Mapped from}, type \texttt{method.request.path.petId}.

   This maps the method request's path parameter of \texttt{petId} to the integration request's path parameter of \texttt{id}.

9. Choose the check mark icon to finish creating the URL path parameter.
10. Choose \textbf{Method Execution}, and in the \textbf{Client} box, choose \textbf{TEST}. In the \textbf{Path} area, for \texttt{petId}, type \texttt{1}.
11. Choose \textbf{Test}. If successful, \textbf{Response Body} displays the following:

   
   \begin{verbatim}
   {
     "id": 1,
     "type": "dog",
     "price": 249.99
   }
   \end{verbatim}

\textbf{To set up and test the POST method}

This procedure demonstrates the following:

• Create and integrate the method request of \texttt{POST /petstorewalkthrough/pets} with the integration request of \texttt{POST http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets}.

• Pass the method request JSON payload through to the integration request payload, without modification.

1. In the \textbf{Resources} pane, choose \texttt{/petstorewalkthrough/pets}, choose \textbf{Create Method} from the \textbf{Actions} drop-down menu, and then choose \texttt{POST} as the HTTP verb for the method.
2. In the \textbf{Setup} pane, choose \texttt{HTTP} for \textbf{Integration type} and choose \texttt{POST} for \textbf{HTTP method}.
3. For \textbf{Endpoint URL}, type \texttt{http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets}.
4. Choose \textbf{Save}.
5. In the \textbf{Method Execution} pane, in the \textbf{Client} box, choose \textbf{TEST}. Expand \textbf{Request Body}, and then type the following:

   
   \begin{verbatim}
   {"type": "dog",
    "price": 249.99
   }
   \end{verbatim}
6. Choose Test. If successful, **Response Body** displays the following:

```json
{
  "pet": {  
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  "message": "success"
}
```

**Step 3: Deploy the API**

In this step, you deploy the API so that you can begin calling it outside of the API Gateway console.

**To deploy the API**

1. In the **Resources** pane, choose **Deploy API**.
2. For **Deployment stage**, choose **test**.

   **Note**
   The input must be UTF-8 encoded (i.e., unlocalized) text.

3. For **Deployment description**, type Calling HTTP endpoint walkthrough.
4. Choose **Deploy**.

**Step 4: Test the API**

In this step, you go outside of the API Gateway console and use your API to access the HTTP endpoint.

1. In the **Stage Editor** pane, next to **Invoke URL**, copy the URL to the clipboard. It should look something like this:

   ```
   https://my-api-id.execute-api.region-id.amazonaws.com/test
   ```

2. Paste this URL in the address box of a new browser tab.
3. Append `/petstorewalkthrough/pets` so that it looks like this:

   ```
   https://my-api-id.execute-api.region-id.amazonaws.com/test/petstorewalkthrough/pets
   ```

Browse to the URL. The following information should be displayed:

```json
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 124.99
  },
  {
    "id": 3,
    "type": "fish",
    "price": 0.99
  }
]```
4. After petstorewalkthrough/pets, type `?petType=cat&petsPage=2` so that it looks like this:

```text
```

5. Browse to the URL. The following information should be displayed:

```json
[
  {
    "id": 4,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 999.99
  },
  {
    "id": 5,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  {
    "id": 6,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 49.97
  }
]
```

6. After petstorewalkthrough/pets, replace `?petType=cat&petsPage=2` with `/1` so that it looks like this:

```text
https://my-api-id.execute-api.region-id.amazonaws.com/test/petstorewalkthrough/pets/1
```

7. Browse to the URL. The following information should be displayed:

```json
{
  "id": 1,
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
}
```

8. Using a web debugging proxy tool or the cURL command-line tool, send a POST method request to the URL from the previous procedure. Append `/petstorewalkthrough/pets` so that it looks like this:

```text
https://my-api-id.execute-api.region-id.amazonaws.com/test/petstorewalkthrough/pets
```

Append the following header:

```text
Content-Type: application/json
```

Add the following code to the request body:

```json
{
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
}
```

For example, if you use the cURL command-line tool, run a command similar to the following:

The following information should be returned in the response body:

```
{
  "pet": {
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  "message": "success"
}
```

You have reached the end of this walkthrough.

**Next Steps**

The next walkthrough shows how to use models and mappings in API Gateway to transform the output of an API call from one data format to another. See Map Response Payload (p. 60).

**Map Response Payload**

In this walkthrough, we show how to use models and mapping templates in API Gateway to transform the output of an API call from one data schema to another. This walkthrough builds on the instructions and concepts in the Getting Started with Amazon API Gateway (p. 6) and the Map Request Parameters for an API Gateway API (p. 52). If you have not yet completed those walkthroughs, we suggest you do them first.

This walkthrough uses API Gateway to get example data from a publicly accessible HTTP endpoint and from an AWS Lambda function you create. Both the HTTP endpoint and the Lambda function return the same example data:

```
[{
  "id": 1,
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
}, {
  "id": 2,
  "type": "cat",
  "price": 124.99
}, {
  "id": 3,
  "type": "fish",
  "price": 0.99
}]
```

You will use models and mapping templates to transform this data to one or more output formats. In API Gateway, a model defines the format, also known as the schema or shape, of some data. In API Gateway, a mapping template is used to transform some data from one format to another. For more information, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162).

The first model and mapping template is used to rename id to number, type to class, and price to salesPrice, as follows:
The second model and mapping template is used to combine id and type into description, and to rename price to askingPrice, as follows:

```json
[
    { "id": 1, "class": "dog", "price": 249.99 },
    { "id": 2, "class": "cat", "price": 124.99 },
    { "id": 3, "class": "fish", "price": 0.99 }
]
```

The third model and mapping template is used to combine id, type, and price into a set of listings, as follows:

```json
{
    "listings": [
        "Item 1 is a dog. The asking price is 249.99.",
        "Item 2 is a cat. The asking price is 124.99.",
        "Item 3 is a fish. The asking price is 0.99."
    ]
}
```

**Topics**

- Step 1: Create Models (p. 62)
- Step 2: Create Resources (p. 63)
- Step 3: Create GET Methods (p. 64)
- Step 4: Create a Lambda Function (p. 65)
- Step 5: Set up and Test the Methods (p. 66)
- Step 6: Deploy the API (p. 69)
- Step 7: Test the API (p. 69)
- Step 8: Clean Up (p. 71)
• Next Steps (p. 71)

Step 1: Create Models

In this step, you create four models. The first three models represent the data output formats for use with the HTTP endpoint and the Lambda function. The last model represents the data input schema for use with the Lambda function.

To create the first output model

2. If MyDemoAPI is displayed, choose Models.
3. Choose Create.
4. For Model name, type PetsModelNoFlatten.
5. For Content type, type application/json.
6. For Model description, type Changes id to number, type to class, and price to salesPrice.
7. For Model schema, type the following JSON Schema-compatible definition:

   ```json
   {
     "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
     "title": "PetsModelNoFlatten",
     "type": "array",
     "items": {
       "type": "object",
       "properties": {
         "number": { "type": "integer" },
         "class": { "type": "string" },
         "salesPrice": { "type": "number" }
       }
     }
   }
   ```

8. Choose Create model.

To create the second output model

1. Choose Create.
2. For Model name, type PetsModelFlattenSome.
3. For Content type, type application/json.
4. For Model description, type Combines id and type into description, and changes price to askingPrice.
5. For Model schema, type the following:

   ```json
   {
     "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
     "title": "PetsModelFlattenSome",
     "type": "array",
     "items": {
       "type": "object",
       "properties": {
         "description": { "type": "string" },
         "askingPrice": { "type": "number" }
       }
     }
   }
   ```
Choose Create model.

To create the third output model
1. Choose Create.
2. For Model name, type PetsModelFlattenAll.
3. For Content type, type application/json.
4. For Model description, type Combines id, type, and price into a set of listings.
5. For Model schema, type the following:

```json
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "PetsModelFlattenAll",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "listings": {
      "type": "array",
      "items": {
        "type": "string"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Choose Create model.

To create the input model
1. Choose Create.
2. For Model name, type PetsLambdaModel.
3. For Content type, type application/json.
4. For Model description, type GetPetsInfo model.
5. For Model schema, type the following:

```json
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "PetsLambdaModel",
  "type": "array",
  "items": {
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
      "id": { "type": "integer" },
      "type": { "type": "string" },
      "price": { "type": "number" }
    }
  }
}
```

Choose Create model.

Step 2: Create Resources

In this step, you create four resources. The first three resources enable you to get the example data from the HTTP endpoint in the three output formats. The last resource enables you to get the example data
from the Lambda function in the output schema that combines `id` and `type` into `description` and renames `price` to `askingPrice`.

**To create the first resource**
1. In the links list, choose Resources.
2. In the Resources pane, choose `/petstorewalkthrough`, and then choose Create Resource.
3. For Resource Name, type `NoFlatten`.
4. For Resource Path, accept the default of `/petstorewalkthrough/noflatten`, and then choose Create Resource.

**To create the second resource**
1. In the Resources pane, choose `/petstorewalkthrough` again, and then choose Create Resource.
2. For Resource Name, type `FlattenSome`.
3. For Resource Path, accept the default of `/petstorewalkthrough/flattensome`, and then choose Create Resource.

**To create the third resource**
1. In the Resources pane, choose `/petstorewalkthrough` again, and then choose Create Resource.
2. For Resource Name, type `FlattenAll`.
3. For Resource Path, accept the default of `/petstorewalkthrough/flattenall`, and then choose Create Resource.

**To create the fourth resource**
1. In the Resources pane, choose `/petstorewalkthrough` again, and then choose Create Resource.
2. For Resource Name, type `LambdaFlattenSome`.
3. For Resource Path, accept the default of `/petstorewalkthrough/lambdaflattensome`, and then choose Create Resource.

**Step 3: Create GET Methods**

In this step, you create a GET method for each of the resources you created in the previous step.

**To create the first GET method**
1. In the Resources list, choose `/petstorewalkthrough/flattenall`, and then choose Create Method.
2. From the drop-down list, choose GET, and then choose the check mark icon to save your choice.

**To create the second GET method**
1. In the Resources list, choose `/petstorewalkthrough/lambdaflattensome`, and then choose Create Method.
2. From the drop-down list, choose GET, and then choose the check mark to save your choice.
3. In the Setup pane, choose Lambda Function for the Integration type, choose the region where you have created the GetPetsInfo Lambda function (p. 65) from the Lambda Region drop-down
list, choose `GetPetsInfo` for **Lambda Function**, and choose **Save**. Choose **OK** when prompted to add permission to the Lambda function.

**To create the third GET method**
1. In the **Resources** list, choose `/petstorewalkthrough/flattensome`, and then choose **Create Method**.
2. From the drop-down list, choose **GET**, and then choose the check mark icon to save your choice.
3. In the Setup pane, choose **HTTP** for the **Integration type** and **GET** for **HTTP method**, type `http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets` in **Endpoint URL**, and then choose **Save**.

**To create the fourth GET method**
1. In the **Resources** list, choose `/petstorewalkthrough/noflatten`, and then choose **Actions**, **Create Method**.
2. From the drop-down list, choose **GET**, and then choose the check mark icon to save your choice.
3. In the Setup pane, choose **HTTP** for the **Integration type** and **GET** for **HTTP method**, type `http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets` in **Endpoint URL**, and then choose **Save**.

**Step 4: Create a Lambda Function**

In this step, you create a Lambda function that returns the sample data.

**To create the Lambda function**
2. Do one of the following:
   - If a welcome page appears, choose **Get Started Now**.
   - If the **Lambda: Function list** page appears, choose **Create a Lambda function**.
3. For **Name**, type `GetPetsInfo`.
4. For **Description**, type `Gets information about pets`.
5. For **Code template**, choose **None**.
6. Type the following code:

   ```javascript
   console.log('Loading event');
   exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
     callback(null,
     [{"id": 1, "type": "dog", "price": 249.99},
     {"id": 2, "type": "cat", "price": 124.99},
     {"id": 3, "type": "fish", "price": 0.99}]); // SUCCESS with message
   }
   ```

   **Tip**
   In the preceding code, written in Node.js, `console.log` writes information to an Amazon CloudWatch log. `event` contains the input to the Lambda function. `context` contains calling context. `callback` returns the result (for Node.js 4.3 and later). For more information about how to write Lambda function code, see the "Programming Model" section in [AWS Lambda: How it Works](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/lambda/latest/dg/) and the sample walkthroughs in the [AWS Lambda Developer Guide](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/lambda/latest/dg/).
7. For **Handler name**, leave the default of `index.handler`.
8. For **Role**, choose the Lambda execution role, `APIGatewayLambdaExecRole`, you created in the **Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration** (p. 17).
9. Choose **Create Lambda function**.
10. In the list of functions, choose **GetPetsInfo** to show the function's details.
11. Make a note of the AWS region where you created this function. You need it later.
12. In the pop-up list, choose **Edit or test function**.
13. For **Sample event**, replace any code that appears with the following:

```json
{
}
```

**Tip**
The empty curly braces mean that there are no input values for this Lambda function. This function simply returns the JSON object containing the pets information, so those key-value pairs are not required here.

14. Choose **Invoke**. **Execution result** shows `[{"id":1,"type":"dog","price":249.99},
{"id":2,"type":"cat","price":124.99},{"id":3,"type":"fish","price":0.99}]`, which is also written to the CloudWatch Logs log files.
15. Choose **Go to function list**.

### Step 5: Set up and Test the Methods

In this step, you configure the method responses, integration requests, and integration responses to specify the input and output data schemas (or models) for the GET methods associated with the HTTP endpoint and the Lambda function. You also learn to test calling these methods using the API Gateway console.

**To set up the integration for the first GET method and then test it**

1. From the API's **Resources** tree, choose **GET** under the `/petstorewalkthrough/flattenall` node.
2. In the **Method Execution** pane, choose **Method Response**, and then choose the arrow next to **200**.
3. In the **Response Models for 200** area, for `application/json`, choose the pencil icon to start setting up the model for the method output. For **Models**, choose `PetsModelFlattenAll`, and then choose the check mark icon to save the setting.
4. Choose **Method Execution**, choose **Integration Response**, and then choose the arrow next to **200**.
5. Expand the **Body Mapping Templates** section, choose `application/json` under **Content-Type**.
6. For **Generate template from model**, choose `PetsModelFlattenAll` to display a mapping template after the `PetsModelFlattenAll` model as a starting point.
7. Modify the mapping template code as follows:

```java
#set($inputRoot = $input.path(''))
{
   "listings" : [
   #foreach($elem in $inputRoot)
      "Item number $elem.id is a $elem.type. The asking price is $elem.price."#if($foreach.hasNext),#end
   #end
   ]
}
```
8. Choose Save.

9. Choose Method Execution, and in the Client box, choose TEST, and then choose Test. If successful, Response Body displays the following:

```json
{
  "listings": [
    "Item number 1 is a dog. The asking price is 249.99.",
    "Item number 2 is a cat. The asking price is 124.99.",
    "Item number 3 is a fish. The asking price is 0.99."
  ]
}
```

To set up integration for the second GET method and then test it

1. From the API's Resources tree, choose GET under the /petstorewalkthrough/lambdaflattensome node.
2. In Method Execution, choose Method Response. And then choose the arrow next to 200 to expand the section.
3. In the Response Models for 200 area, choose the pencil icon on the row for the content type of application/json. Choose PetsModelFlattenSome for Models, and then choose the check mark icon to save the choice.
4. Go back to Method Execution. Choose Integration Response, and then choose the arrow next to 200.
5. In the Body Mapping Templates section, choose application/json under Content-Type.
6. For Generate template, choose PetsModelFlattenSome to display the mapping script template for the output of this method.
7. Modify the code as follows, and then choose Save:

```plaintext
#set($inputRoot = $input.path(''))
[
  #foreach($elem in $inputRoot)
  {
    "description" : "Item $elem.id is a $elem.type.",
    "askingPrice" : $elem.price
  }#if($foreach.hasNext),#end
  #end
]
```

8. Choose Method Execution, and in the Client box, choose TEST, and then choose Test. If successful, Response Body displays the following:

```json
[
  {
    "description" : "Item 1 is a dog.",
    "askingPrice" : 249.99
  },
  {
    "description" : "Item 2 is a cat.",
    "askingPrice" : 124.99
  },
  {
    "description" : "Item 3 is a fish.",
    "askingPrice" : 0.99
  }
]
To set up integration for the third GET method and then test it

1. From the API's Resources tree, choose GET under the /petstorewalkthrough/flattensome node.
2. In the Method Execution pane, choose Method Response.
3. Choose the arrow next to 200.
4. In the Response Models for 200 area, for application/json, choose the pencil icon. For Models, choose PetsModelFlattenSome, and then choose the check-mark icon to save the choice.
5. Go back to Method Execution and choose Integration Response.
6. Choose the arrow next to 200 to expand the section.
7. Expand the Body Mapping Templates area. Choose application/json for Content-Type. For Generate template, choose PetsModelFlattenSome to display a mapping script template for the output of this method.
8. Modify the code as follows:

```javascript
#set($inputRoot = $input.path(''))
[
  #foreach($elem in $inputRoot)
    {
      "description": "Item $elem.id is a $elem.type.",
      "askingPrice": $elem.price
    }#if($foreach.hasNext),#end
  #end
]
```

9. Choose Save.
10. Go back to Method Execution and choose TEST in the Client box. And then choose Test. If successful, Response Body displays the following:

```javascript
[
  {
    "description": "Item 1 is a dog.",
    "askingPrice": 249.99
  },
  {
    "description": "Item 2 is a cat.",
    "askingPrice": 124.99
  },
  {
    "description": "Item 3 is a fish.",
    "askingPrice": 0.99
  }
]
```

To set up integration for the fourth GET method and then test it

1. From the API's Resources tree, choose GET under the /petstorewalkthrough/noflatten node.
2. In the Method Execution pane, choose Method Response, and then expand the 200 section.
3. In the Response Models for 200 area, for application/json, choose the pencil icon to update the response model for this method.
4. Choose PetsModelNoFlatten as the model for the content type of application/json, and then choose the check-mark icon to save the choice.
5. Choose Method Execution, choose Integration Response, and then choose the arrow next to 200 to expand the section.
6. Expand the **Mapping Templates** section. Choose **application/json** for **Content-Type**. For **Generate templates**, choose **PetsModelNoFlatten** to display a mapping script template for the output of this method.

7. Modify the code as follows:

```java
#set($inputRoot = $input.path('"'))
[#foreach($elem in $inputRoot)
  "number": $elem.id,
  "class": "#elem.type",
  "salesPrice": $elem.price
]#if($foreach.hasNext),#end
#end
```

8. Choose **Save**.

9. Go back to **Method Execution**, and in the **Client** box, choose **TEST**, and then choose **Test**. If successful, **Response Body** displays the following:

```json
[
  {
    "number": 1,
    "class": "dog",
    "salesPrice": 249.99
  },
  {
    "number": 2,
    "class": "cat",
    "salesPrice": 124.99
  },
  {
    "number": 3,
    "class": "fish",
    "salesPrice": 0.99
  }
]
```

**Step 6: Deploy the API**

In this step, you deploy the API so that you can begin calling it outside of the API Gateway console.

**To deploy the API**

1. In the **Resources** pane, choose **Deploy API**.
2. For **Deployment stage**, choose **test**.
3. For **Deployment description**, type **Using models and mapping templates walkthrough**.
4. Choose **Deploy**.

**Step 7: Test the API**

In this step, you go outside of the API Gateway console to interact with both the HTTP endpoint and the Lambda function.

1. In the **Stage Editor** pane, next to **Invoke URL**, copy the URL to the clipboard. It should look something like this:
2. Paste this URL in the address box of a new browser tab.
3. Append /petstorewalkthrough/noflatten so that it looks like this:

https://my-api-id.execute-api.region-id.amazonaws.com/test/petstorewalkthrough/noflatten

Browse to the URL. The following information should be displayed:

[{
   "number": 1,
   "class": "dog",
   "salesPrice": 249.99
},
{
   "number": 2,
   "class": "cat",
   "salesPrice": 124.99
},
{
   "number": 3,
   "class": "fish",
   "salesPrice": 0.99
}]

4. After petstorewalkthrough/, replace noflatten with flattensome.
5. Browse to the URL. The following information should be displayed:

[{
   "description": "Item 1 is a dog.",
   "askingPrice": 249.99
},
{
   "description": "Item 2 is a cat.",
   "askingPrice": 124.99
},
{
   "description": "Item 3 is a fish.",
   "askingPrice": 0.99
}]

6. After petstorewalkthrough/, replace flattensome with flattenall.
7. Browse to the URL. The following information should be displayed:

{ "listings": [ 
   "Item number 1 is a dog. The asking price is 249.99.",
   "Item number 2 is a cat. The asking price is 124.99.",
   "Item number 3 is a fish. The asking price is 0.99."
] }

8. After petstorewalkthrough/, replace flattenall with lambdaflattensome.
9. Browse to the URL. The following information should be displayed:
[{
    "description": "Item 1 is a dog.",
    "askingPrice": 249.99
},
{
    "description": "Item 2 is a cat.",
    "askingPrice": 124.99
},
{
    "description": "Item 3 is a fish.",
    "askingPrice": 0.99
}]

**Step 8: Clean Up**

If you no longer need the Lambda function you created for this walkthrough, you can delete it now. You can also delete the accompanying IAM resources.

**Warning**

If you delete a Lambda function your APIs rely on, those APIs will no longer work. Deleting a Lambda function cannot be undone. If you want to use the Lambda function again, you must re-create the function.

If you delete an IAM resource a Lambda function relies on, the Lambda function and any APIs that rely on it will no longer work. Deleting an IAM resource cannot be undone. If you want to use the IAM resource again, you must re-create the resource. If you plan to continue experimenting with the resources you created for this and the other walkthroughs, do not delete the Lambda invocation role or the Lambda execution role.

API Gateway does not currently support the deactivation or deletion of APIs that no longer work.

**To delete the Lambda function**

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the AWS Lambda console at [https://console.aws.amazon.com/lambda/](https://console.aws.amazon.com/lambda/).
2. On the **Lambda: Function list** page, in the list of functions, choose the button next to **GetPetsInfo**, and then choose **Actions, Delete**. When prompted, choose **Delete** again.

**To delete the associated IAM resources**

2. In the **Details** area, choose **Roles**.
3. Select **APIGatewayLambdaExecRole**, and then choose **Role Actions, Delete Role**. When prompted, choose **Yes, Delete**.
4. In the **Details** area, choose **Policies**.
5. Select **APIGatewayLambdaExecPolicy**, and then choose **Policy Actions, Delete**. When prompted, choose **Delete**.

You have now reached the end of this walkthrough.

**Next Steps**

You may want to begin the next walkthrough, which shows you how to create an API Gateway API to access an AWS service. See **Build an API Gateway API with AWS Integration (p. 73)**.
Build an API with API Gateway Private Integration

You can create an API Gateway API with private integration to provide your customers access to HTTP/HTTPS resources within your Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC). Such VPC resources are HTTP/HTTPS endpoints on an EC2 instance behind a network load balancer in the VPC. The network load balancer encapsulates the VPC resource and routes incoming requests to the targeted resource.

When a client calls the API, API Gateway connects to the network load balancer through the pre-configured VPC link. A VPC link is encapsulated by an API Gateway resource of VpcLink. It is responsible for forwarding API method requests to the VPC resources and returns backend responses to the caller. For an API developer, a VpcLink is functionally equivalent to an integration endpoint.

To create an API with private integration, you must create a new or choose an existing VpcLink connected to a network load balancer that targets the desired VPC resources. You must have appropriate permissions (p. 145) to create and manage a VpcLink. You then set up an API method and integrate it with the VpcLink by setting either HTTP or HTTP_PROXY as the integration type, setting VPC_LINK as the integration connection type, and setting the VpcLink identifier on the integration connectionId.

To quickly get started creating an API to access VPC resources, we walk through the essential steps for building an API with the private integration, using the API Gateway console. Before creating the API, do the following:

1. Create a VPC resource, create or choose a network load balancer under your account in the same region, and add the EC2 instance hosting the resource as a target of the network load balancer. For more information, see Set up a Network Load Balancer for API Gateway Private Integrations (p. 145).

2. Grant permissions to create the VPC links for private integrations. For more information, see Grant Permissions to Create a VPC Link (p. 145).

After creating your VPC resource and your network load balancer with your VPC resource configured in its target groups, use the following instructions below to create an API and integrate it with the VPC resource via a VpcLink in a private integration.

**To create an API with private integration using the API Gateway console**

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose a region; for example, us-west-2, on the navigation bar.

2. Create a VPC link, if you have not already done so:

   a. From the primary navigation pane, choose VPC Links and then choose + Create.

   b. Under VPC Link, type a name (for example, my-test-vpc-link) in the Name field.

   c. Optionally, give a description of the VPC link in the Description text area.

   d. Choose a network load balancer from the Target NLB drop-down list.

   You must have the network load balancer already created in the region you chose for the network load balancer to be present in the list.

   e. Choose Create to start creating the VPC link.

   The initial response returns a VpcLink resource representation with the VPC link ID and a PENDING status. This is because the operation is asynchronous and takes about 2-4 minutes to complete. Upon successful completion, the status is AVAILABLE. In the meantime, you can proceed to create the API.

3. Choose APIs from the primary navigation pane and then choose + Create API to create a new API of either an edge-optimized or regional endpoint type.
4. For the root resource (/), choose Create Method from the Actions drop-down menu, and then choose GET.

5. In the / GET - Setup pane, initialize the API method integration as follows:
   a. Choose VPC Link for Integration type.
   b. Choose Use Proxy Integration.
   c. From the Method drop-down list, choose GET as the integration method.
   d. From the VPC Link drop-down list, choose [Use Stage Variables] and type '${stageVariables.vpcLinkId}' in the text box below.

      We will define the vpcLinkId stage variable after deploying the API to a stage and set its value to the ID of the VpcLink created in Step 1.
   e. Type a URL, for example, http://myApi.example.com, for Endpoint URL.

      Here, the host name (for example, myApi.example.com) is used to set the Host header of the integration request.
   f. Leave the Use Default Timeout selection as-is, unless you want to customize the integration timeouts.
   g. Choose Save to finish setting up the integration.

      With the proxy integration, the API is ready for deployment. Otherwise, you need to proceed to set up appropriate method responses and integration responses.
   h. From the Actions drop-down menu, choose Deploy API and then choose a new or existing stage to deploy the API.

      Note the resulting Invoke URL. You need it to invoke the API. Before doing that, you must set up the vpcLinkId stage variable.
   i. In the Stage Editor, choose the Stage Variables tab and choose Add Stage Variable.

      i. Under the Name column, type vpcLinkId.
      ii. Under the Value column, type the ID of VPC_LINK, for example, gix6s7.
      iii. Choose the check-mark icon to save this stage variable.

      Using the stage variable, you can easily switch to different VPC links for the API by changing the stage variable value.

This completes creating the API. You can test invoking the API as with other integrations.

**Build an API Gateway API with AWS Integration**

Both the Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 18) and Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration (p. 17) topics describe how to create an API Gateway API to expose the integrated Lambda function. In addition, you can create an API Gateway API to expose other AWS services, such as Amazon SNS, Amazon S3, Amazon Kinesis, and even AWS Lambda. This is made possible by the AWS integration. The Lambda integration or the Lambda proxy integration is a special case, where the Lambda function invocation is exposed through the API Gateway API.

All AWS services support dedicated APIs to expose their features. However, the application protocols or programming interfaces are likely to differ from service to service. An API Gateway API with the AWS integration has the advantage of providing a consistent application protocol for your client to access different AWS services.

In this walkthrough, we create an API to expose Amazon SNS. For more examples of integrating an API with other AWS services, see Samples and Tutorials (p. 484).
Prerequisites

Before you begin this walkthrough, do the following:

1. Complete the steps in Get Ready to Build an API Gateway API (p. 6).
2. Ensure that the IAM user has access to create policies and roles in IAM. You need to create an IAM policy and role in this walkthrough.
3. Create a new API named `MyDemoAPI`. For more information, see Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42).
4. Deploy the API at least once to a stage named `test`. For more information, see Deploy the API (p. 34) in Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration (p. 17).
5. Complete the rest of the steps in Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration (p. 17).
6. Create at least one topic in Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS). You will use the deployed API to get a list of topics in Amazon SNS that are associated with your AWS account. To learn how to create a topic in Amazon SNS, see Create a Topic. (You do not need to copy the topic ARN mentioned in step 5.)

Step 1: Create the Resource

In this step, you create a resource that enables the AWS service proxy to interact with the AWS service.

To create the resource

2. If `MyDemoAPI` is displayed, choose Resources.
3. In the Resources pane, choose the resource root, represented by a single forward slash (/), and then choose Create Resource.
4. For Resource Name, type `MyDemoAWSProxy`, and then choose Create Resource.
Step 2: Create the GET Method

In this step, you create a GET method that enables the AWS service proxy to interact with the AWS service.

To create the GET method

1. In the Resources pane, choose /mydemoawsproxy, and then choose Create Method.
2. For the HTTP method, choose GET, and then save your choice.

Step 3: Create the AWS Service Proxy Execution Role

In this step, you create an IAM role that your AWS service proxy uses to interact with the AWS service. We call this IAM role an AWS service proxy execution role. Without this role, API Gateway cannot interact with the AWS service. In later steps, you specify this role in the settings for the GET method you just created.

To create the AWS service proxy execution role and its policy

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the IAM console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/.
2. Choose Policies.
3. Do one of the following:
   * If the Welcome to Managed Policies page appears, choose Get Started, and then choose Create Policy.
   * If a list of policies appears, choose Create Policy.
4. Next to Create Your Own Policy, choose Select.
5. For Policy Name, type a name for the policy (for example, APIGatewayAWSProxyExecPolicy).
6. For Description, type Enables API Gateway to call AWS services.
7. For Policy Document, type the following, and then choose Create Policy.

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Resource": 
            
            [ "*
            
            ],
         "Action": [
            "sns:ListTopics"
          ]
      }
   ]
}
```

This policy document allows the caller to get a list of the Amazon SNS topics for the AWS account.

8. Choose Roles.
9. Choose Create Role.
10. Choose AWS Service under Select role type and then choose API Gateway.
11. Choose Next: Permissions.
12. Choose **Next: Review**.

13. For **Role Name**, type a name for the execution role (for example, `APIGatewayAWSProxyExecRole`), optionally, type a description for this role, and then choose **Create role**.

14. In the **Roles** list, choose the role you just created. You may need to scroll down the list.

15. For the selected role, choose **Attach policy**.

16. Select the check box next to the policy you created earlier (`APIGatewayAWSProxyExecPolicy`) and choose **Attach policy**.

17. The role you just created has the following trust relationship that enables API Gateway assume to role for any actions permitted by the attached policies:

   ```json
   {
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
   {
   "Sid": "",
   "Effect": "Allow",
   "Principal": {
   "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
   },
   "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
   }
   ]
   }
   ```

   For **Role ARN**, note of the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the execution role. You need it later. The ARN should look similar to: `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/APIGatewayAWSProxyExecRole`, where `123456789012` is your AWS account ID.

---

**Step 4: Specify Method Settings and Test the Method**

In this step, you specify the settings for the GET method so that it can interact with an AWS service through an AWS service proxy. You then test the method.

**To specify settings for the GET method and then test it**

1. In the API Gateway console, in the **Resources** pane for the API named `MyDemoAPI`, in `/mydemoawsproxy`, choose **GET**.

2. In the **Setup** pane, for **Integration type**, choose **Show advanced**, and then choose **AWS Service Proxy**.

3. For **AWS Region**, choose the name of the AWS Region where you want to get the Amazon SNS topics.

4. For **AWS Service**, choose **SNS**.

5. For **HTTP method**, choose **GET**.

6. For **Action**, type **ListTopics**.

7. For **Execution Role**, type the ARN for the execution role.

8. Leave **Path Override** blank.

9. Choose **Save**.

10. In the **Method Execution** pane, in the **Client** box, choose **TEST**, and then choose **Test**. If successful, **Response Body** displays a response similar to the following:

```json
{}
```
Step 5: Deploy the API

In this step, you deploy the API so that you can call it from outside of the API Gateway console.

**To deploy the API**

1. In the Resources pane, choose Deploy API.
2. For Deployment stage, choose test.
3. For Deployment description, type Calling AWS service proxy walkthrough.

Step 6: Test the API

In this step, you go outside of the API Gateway console and use your AWS service proxy to interact with the Amazon SNS service.

1. In the Stage Editor pane, next to Invoke URL, copy the URL to the clipboard. It should look like this:

   https://my-api-id.execute-api.region-id.amazonaws.com/test

2. Paste the URL into the address box of a new browser tab.
3. Append /mydemoawsproxy so that it looks like this:

   https://my-api-id.execute-api.region-id.amazonaws.com/test/mydemoawsproxy

Browse to the URL. Information similar to the following should be displayed:

```json
{"ListTopicsResponse":{"ListTopicsResult":{"NextToken":null,"Topics":[]},"ResponseMetadata":{"RequestId":"abc1de23-45fa-6789-b0c1-d2e345fa6b78"}}
```

77
Step 7: Clean Up

You can delete the IAM resources the AWS service proxy needs to work.

**Warning**
If you delete an IAM resource an AWS service proxy relies on, that AWS service proxy and any APIs that rely on it will no longer work. Deleting an IAM resource cannot be undone. If you want to use the IAM resource again, you must re-create it.

**To delete the associated IAM resources**

1. Open the IAM console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/.
2. In the Details area, choose Roles.
3. Select APIGatewayAWSProxyExecRole, and then choose Role Actions, Delete Role. When prompted, choose Yes, Delete.
4. In the Details area, choose Policies.
5. Select APIGatewayAWSProxyExecPolicy, and then choose Policy Actions, Delete. When prompted, choose Delete.

You have reached the end of this walkthrough. For more detailed discussions about creating API as an AWS service proxy, see Create an API as an Amazon S3 Proxy (p. 502), Create an API Gateway API for AWS Lambda Functions (p. 484), or Create an API Gateway API as an Amazon Kinesis Proxy (p. 528).
Creating an API in Amazon API Gateway

In Amazon API Gateway, you build an API with a collection of programmable entities known as API Gateway resources. For example, you use a RestApi resource to represent an API that can contain a collection of Resource entities. Each Resource entity can in turn have one or more Method resources. Expressed in the request parameters and body, a Method defines the application programming interface for the client to access the exposed Resource and represents an incoming request submitted by the client. You then create an Integration resource to integrate the Method with a backend endpoint, also known as the integration endpoint, by forwarding the incoming request to a specified integration endpoint URI. If necessary, you transform request parameters or body to meet the backend requirements. For responses, you can create a MethodResponse resource to represent a request response received by the client and you create an IntegrationResponse resource to represent the request response that is returned by the backend. You can configure the integration response to transform the backend response data before returning the data to the client or to pass the backend response as-is to the client.

To help your customers understand your API, you can also provide documentation for the API, as part of the API creation or after the API is created. To enable this, add a DocumentationPart resource for a supported API entity.

To control how clients call an API, use IAM permissions (p. 239), a custom authorizer (p. 257), or an Amazon Cognito user pool (p. 269). To meter the use of your API, set up usage plans to throttle API requests. You can enable these when creating or updating the API.

You can perform these and other tasks by using the API Gateway console, the API Gateway REST API, the AWS CLI, or one of the AWS SDKs. We discuss how to perform these tasks next.

Topics

- Choose an Endpoint Type to Set up an API Gateway API (p. 79)
- Initialize API Setup in API Gateway (p. 80)
- Set up API Methods in API Gateway (p. 104)
- Set up API Integrations in API Gateway (p. 116)
- Set up Gateway Responses to Customize Error Responses (p. 153)
- Set up API Gateway Request and Response Data Mappings (p. 160)
- Support Binary Payloads in API Gateway (p. 196)
- Enable Payload Compression for an API (p. 213)
- Enable Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 217)
- Update and Maintain an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 228)
- Import an API into API Gateway (p. 232)

Choose an Endpoint Type to Set up an API Gateway API

An API endpoint (p. 3) refers to a host name of the API. The API endpoint can be edge-optimized or regional, depending on where the majority of your API traffic originates from. You choose a specific endpoint type when creating an API.
An edge-optimized API endpoint optimizes access to an API by geographically distributed clients through an Amazon CloudFront distribution. API requests are routed to the nearest CloudFront Point of Presence (POP). By default, an API is created with the edge-optimized endpoint.

A regional API is intended for clients in the same region. When a client running on an EC2 instance calls an API in the same region, or when an API is intended to serve a small number of clients with high demands, a regional API reduces connection overhead.

For an edge-optimized API, you create a custom domain name that applies across all the regions. For a regional API, you create a custom domain name that is specific to the API hosting region. It is possible that a regional API deployed in different regions can have the same custom domain name.

**Initialize API Setup in API Gateway**

For this example, we use a simplified PetStore API, with the HTTP integration, that exposes the `GET /pets` and `GET /pets/{petId}` methods. The methods are integrated with the two HTTP endpoints, respectively, of `http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets` and `http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{petId}`. The API handles 200 OK responses. The examples focus on the essential programming tasks for creating an API in API Gateway, taking advantage of default settings when possible.

Because of the default settings, the resulting API is edge-optimized. An alternative is to set up a regional API (p. 101). To set up a regional API, you must set explicitly the endpoint type of the API as **REGIONAL**. To set up an edge-optimized API explicitly, you can set **EDGE** as the type of the endpointConfiguration.

When setting up an API, you must choose a region. When deployed, the API is region-specific. For an edge-optimized API, the base URL is of the `http[s]://(restapi-id).execute-api.amazonaws.com/stage` format, where `{restapi-id}` is the API's id value generated by API Gateway. You can assign a custom domain name (for example, `apis.example.com`) as the API's host name and call the API with a base URL of the `https://apis.example.com/myApi` format.

**Topics**

- Set up an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 80)
- Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using AWS CLI Commands (p. 81)
- Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using the AWS SDK for Node.js (p. 85)
- Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 92)
- Set up an Edge-Optimized API by Importing Swagger Definitions (p. 99)
- Set up a Regional API in API Gateway (p. 101)

**Set up an API Using the API Gateway Console**

To set up an API Gateway API using the API Gateway console, see **Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration** (p. 42).

You can learn how to set up an API by following an example. For more information, see **Build an API Gateway API from an Example** (p. 9).

Alternatively, you can set up an API by using the API Gateway **Import API** (p. 232) feature to upload an external API definition, such as one expressed in the **Swagger 2.0 with the API Gateway Extensions to Swagger** (p. 464). The example provided in **Build an API Gateway API from an Example** (p. 9) uses the Import API feature.
Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using AWS CLI Commands

Setting up an API using the AWS CLI requires working with the `create-rest-api`, `create-resource` or `get-resources`, `put-method`, `put-method-response`, `put-integration`, and `put-integration-response` commands. The following procedures show how to work with these AWS CLI commands to create the simple PetStore API of the HTTP integration type.

To create a simple PetStore API using AWS CLI

1. Call the `create-rest-api` command to set up the `RestApi` in a specific region (us-west-2).

```
aws apigateway create-rest-api --name 'Simple PetStore (AWS CLI)' --region us-west-2
```

The following is the output of this command:

```
{
    "name": "Simple PetStore (AWS CLI)",
    "id": "vaz7da9626",
    "createdDate": 1494572809
}
```

Note the returned `id` of the newly created `RestApi`. You need it to set up other parts of the API.

2. Call the `get-resources` command to retrieve the root resource identifier of the `RestApi`.

```
aws apigateway get-resources --rest-api-id vaz7da9626 --region us-west-2
```

The following is the output of this command:

```
{
    "items": [
        {
            "path": "/",
            "id": "begaltmsm8"
        }
    ]
}
```

Note the root resource `Id`. You need it to start setting the API's resource tree and configuring methods and integrations.

3. Call the `create-resource` command to append a child resource (`pets`) under the root resource (`begaltmsm8`):

```
aws apigateway create-resource --rest-api-id vaz7da9626 \
    --region us-west-2 \
    --parent-id begaltmsm8 \
    --path-part pets
```

The following is the output of this command:

```
{
    "path": "/pets",
    "pathPart": "pets",
    "id": "6esz2j",
```
To append a child resource under the root, you specify the root resource ID as the parentId property value. Similarly, to append a child resource under the pets resource, you repeat the preceding step while replacing the parent-id value with the pets resource id of 6sxz2j:

```
aws apigateway create-resource --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
    --region us-west-2 \
    --parent-id 6sxz2j \
    --path-part '{petId}'
```

To make a path part a path parameter, enclose it in a pair of curly brackets. If successful, this command returns the following response:

```
{
    "path": "/pets/{petId}",
    "pathPart": "{petId}"
}
```

Now that you created two resources: /pets (6sxz2j) and /pets/{petId} (rjkmth), you can proceed to set up methods on them.

4. Call the put-method command to add the GET HTTP method on the /pets resource. This creates an API Method of GET /pets with open access, referencing the /pets resource by its ID value of 6sxz2j.

```
aws apigateway put-method --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
    --resource-id 6sxz2j \
    --http-method GET \
    --authorization-type "NONE" \
    --region us-west-2
```

The following is the successful output of this command:

```
{
    "apiKeyRequired": false,
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "authorizationType": "NONE"
}
```

The method is for open access because authorization-type is set to NONE. To permit only authenticated users to call the method, you can use IAM roles and policies, a custom authorizer, or an Amazon Cognito user pool. For more information, see Controlling Access to an API (p. 239).

To enable read access to the /pets/{petId} resource (rjkmth), add the GET HTTP method on it to create an API Method of GET /pets/{petId} as follows.

```
aws apigateway put-method --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
    --resource-id rjkmth --http-method GET \
    --authorization-type "NONE" \
    --region us-west-2 \
    --request-parameters method.request.path.petId=true
```

The following is the successful output of this command:
Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using AWS CLI Commands

```
{
    "apiKeyRequired": false,
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "authorizationType": "NONE",
    "requestParameters": {
        "method.request.path.petId": true
    }
}
```

Note that the method request path parameter of `petId` must be specified as a required request parameter for its dynamically set value to be mapped to a corresponding integration request parameter and passed to the backend.

5. Call the `put-method-response` command to set up the 200 OK response of the `GET /pets` method, specifying the `/pets` resource by its ID value of 6sxz2j.

```
```

The following is the output of this command:

```
{
    "statusCode": "200"
}
```

Similarly, to set the 200 OK response of the `GET /pets/{petId}` method, do the following, specifying the `/pets/{petId}` resource by its resource ID value of rjkmth:

```
```

Having set up a simple client interface for the API, you can proceed to set up the integration of the API methods with the backend.

6. Call the `put-integration` command to set up an Integration with a specified HTTP endpoint for the `GET /pets` method. The `/pets` resource is identified by its resource ID 6sxz2j:

```
```

The following is the output of this command:

```
{
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
    "cacheKeyParameters": [],
    "type": "HTTP",
    "url": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets",
    "cacheNamespace": "6sxz2j"
}
```
Notice that the integration uri of `http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets` specifies the integration endpoint of the `GET /pets` method.

Similarly, you create an integration request for the `GET /pets/{petId}` method as follows:

```
aws apigateway put-integration \
  --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id rjkkmh \
  --http-method GET \
  --type HTTP \
  --integration-http-method GET \
  --uri 'http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}' \
  --request-parameters \n  '\"integration.request.path.id\"":"method.request.path.petId\"' \
  --region us-west-2
```

Here, the integration endpoint, uri of `http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}`, also uses a path parameter `{id}`. Its value is mapped from the corresponding method request path parameter of `{petId}`. The mapping is defined as part of the request-parameters. If this mapping is not defined here, the client gets an error response when trying to call the method.

The following is the output of this command:

```
{
  "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
  "cacheKeyParameters": [],
  "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "cacheNamespace": "rjkkmh",
  "type": "HTTP",
  "requestParameters": {
    "integration.request.path.id": "method.request.path.petId"
  }
}
```

7. Call the `put-integration-response` command to create an `IntegrationResponse` of the `GET /pets` method integrated with an HTTP backend.

```
aws apigateway put-integration-response --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id 6xz2j --http-method GET \
  --status-code 200 --selection-pattern "" \
  --region us-west-2
```

The following is the output of this command:

```
{
  "selectionPattern": "",
  "statusCode": "200"
}
```

Similarly, call the following `put-integration-response` command to create an `IntegrationResponse` of the `GET /pets/{petId}` method:

```
aws apigateway put-integration-response --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id rjkkmh --http-method GET \
  --status-code 200 --selection-pattern ""
```
With the preceding steps, you finished setting up a simple API that allows your customers to query available pets on the PetStore website and to view an individual pet of a specified identifier. To make it callable by your customer, you must deploy the API.

8. Deploy the API to a stage, for example, by calling `create-deployment`:

```
aws apigateway create-deployment --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6
  --region us-west-2
  --stage-name test
  --stage-description 'Test stage'
  --description 'First deployment'
```

You can test this API by typing the `https://vaz7da96z6.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets` URL in a browser, and substituting `vaz7da96z6` with the identifier of your API. The expected output should be as follows:

```
[{
  "id": 1,
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
},
{
  "id": 2,
  "type": "cat",
  "price": 124.99
},
{
  "id": 3,
  "type": "fish",
  "price": 0.99
}]
```

To test the GET /pets/{petId} method, type `https://vaz7da96z6.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets/3` in the browser. You should receive the following response:

```
{
  "id": 3,
  "type": "fish",
  "price": 0.99
}
```

## Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using the AWS SDK for Node.js

As an illustration, we use AWS SDK for Node.js to describe how you can use an AWS SDK to create an API Gateway API. For more information using an AWS SDK, including how to set up the development environment, see AWS SDKs.

Setting up an API using the AWS SDK for Node.js involves calling the `createRestApi`, `createResource` or `getResources`, `putMethod`, `putMethodResponse`, `putIntegration`, and `putIntegrationResponse` functions.

The following procedures walk you through the essential steps to use these SDK commands to set up a simple PetStore API supporting the `GET /pets` and `GET /pets/{petId}` methods.
To set up a simple PetStore API using the AWS SDK for Node.js

1. Instantiate the SDK:

```javascript
var AWS = require('aws-sdk');
AWS.config.region = 'us-west-2';
var apig = new AWS.APIGateway({apiVersion: '2015/07/09'});
```

2. Call the `createRestApi` function to set up the `RestApi` entity.

```javascript
apig.createRestApi({
    name: "Simple PetStore (node.js SDK)",
    binaryMediaTypes: [ '/*' ],
    description: "Demo API created using the AWS SDK for node.js",
    version: "0.00.001"
}, function(err, data){
    if (!err) {
        console.log(data);
    } else {
        console.log('Create API failed:
', err);
    }
});
```

The function returns an output similar to the following result:

```javascript
{
    id: 'iuo308uaq7',
    name: 'PetStore (node.js SDK)',
    description: 'Demo API created using the AWS SDK for node.js',
    createdDate: 2017-09-05T19:32:35.000Z,
    version: '0.00.001',
    binaryMediaTypes: [ '/*' ]
}
```

The resulting API's identifier is `iuo308uaq7`. You need to supply this to continue the setup of the API.

3. Call the `getResources` function to retrieve the root resource identifier of the `RestApi`.

```javascript
apig getResources({
    restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7'
}, function(err, data){
    if (!err) {
        console.log(data);
    } else {
        console.log('Get the root resource failed:
', err);
    }
});
```

This function returns an output similar to the following result:

```javascript
{
    "items": [
        {
            "path": "/",
            "id": "s4fb0trnk0"
        }
    ]
}
The root resource identifier is s4fb0trnk0. This is the starting point for you to build the API resource tree, which you do next.

4. Call the `createResource` function to set up the /pets resource for the API, specifying the root resource identifier (s4fb0trnk0) on the `parentId` property.

```javascript
apig.createResource({
    restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
    parentId: 's4fb0trnk0',
    pathPart: 'pets'
}, function(err, data) {
    if (!err) {
        console.log(data);
    } else {
        console.log("The '/pets' resource setup failed:", err);
    }
});
```

The successful result is as follows:

```json
{
    "path": "/pets",
    "pathPart": "pets",
    "id": "8sxa2j",
    "parentId": "s4fb0trnk0"
}
```

To set up the /pets/{petId} resource, call the following `createResource` function, specifying the newly created /pets resource (8sxa2j) on the `parentId` property.

```javascript
apig.createResource({
    restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
    parentId: '8sxa2j',
    pathPart: '{petId}'
}, function(err, data) {
    if (!err) {
        console.log(data);
    } else {
        console.log("The '/pets/{petId}' resource setup failed:", err);
    }
});
```

The successful result returns the newly created resource `id` value:

```json
{
    "path": "/pets/{petId}"
}
```

Throughout this procedure, you refer to the /pets resource by specifying its resource ID of 8sxa2j, and the /pets/{petId} resource by specifying its resource ID of au5df2.

5. Call the `putMethod` function to add the GET HTTP method on the /pets resource (8sxa2j). This sets up the GET /pets Method with open access.
Set up an Edge-Optimized API
Using the AWS SDK for Node.js

```
apig.putMethod({
    restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
    resourceId: '8sxa2j',
    httpMethod: 'GET',
    authorizationType: 'NONE'
}, function(err, data){
    if (!err) {
        console.log(data);
    } else {
        console.log("The 'GET /pets' method setup failed:
        ", err);
    }
})
```

This function returns an output similar to the following result:

```
{
    "apiKeyRequired": false,
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "authorizationType": "NONE"
}
```

To add the GET HTTP method on the /pets/{petId} resource (au5df2), which sets up the API method of GET /pets/{petId} with open access, call the putMethod function as follows.

```
apig.putMethod({
    restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
    resourceId: 'au5df2',
    httpMethod: 'GET',
    authorizationType: 'NONE',
    requestParameters: {
        "method.request.path.petId": true
    }
}, function(err, data){
    if (!err) {
        console.log(data);
    } else {
        console.log("The 'GET /pets/{petId}' method setup failed:
        ", err);
    }
})
```

This function returns an output similar to the following result:

```
{
    "apiKeyRequired": false,
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "authorizationType": "NONE",
    "requestParameters": {
        "method.request.path.petId": true
    }
}
```

You need to set the requestParameters property as shown in the preceding example to map and pass the client-supplied petId value to the backend.

6. Call the putMethodResponse function to set up a method response for the GET /pets method.

```
apig.putMethodResponse({
    restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
    resourceId: "8sxa2j",
})
```
This function returns an output similar to the following result:

```
{
    "statusCode": "200"
}
```

To set the 200 OK response of the GET /pets/{petId} method, call the putMethodResponse function, specifying the /pets/{petId} resource identifier (au5df2) on the resourceId property.

```
apig.putMethodResponse(
    restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
    resourceId: "au5df2",
    httpMethod: 'GET',
    statusCode: '200'
), function(err, data){
    if (!err) {
        console.log(data);
    } else {
        console.log("Set up the 200 OK response for the 'GET /pets' method failed:
" , err);
    }
}
```

7. Call the putIntegration function to set up the Integration with a specified HTTP endpoint for the GET /pets method, supplying the /pets resource identifier (8sxa2j) on the parentId property.

```
apig.putIntegration(
    restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
    resourceId: "8sxa2j",
    httpMethod: 'GET',
    type: 'HTTP',
    integrationHttpMethod: 'GET',
    uri: 'http://perstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/pets'
), function(err, data){
    if (!err) {
        console.log(data);
    } else {
        console.log("Set up the integration of the 'GET /' method of the API failed:
" , err);
    }
}
```

This function returns an output similar the following:

```
{
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
    "produces":
```
To set up the integration of the GET /pets/{petId} method with the HTTP endpoint of http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/pets/{id} of the backend, call the following `putIntegration` function, supplying the API's /pets/{petId} resource identifier (au5df2) on the `parentId` property.

```javascript
apig.putIntegration({
  restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
  resourceId: 'au5df2',
  httpMethod: 'GET',
  type: 'HTTP',
  integrationHttpMethod: 'GET',
  uri: 'http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}',
  requestParameters: {
    "integration.request.path.id": "method.request.path.petId"
  }
}, function(err, data){
  if (!err) {
    console.log(data);
  } else {
    console.log("The 'GET /pets/{petId}' method integration setup failed:
", err);
  }
});
```

This function returns a successful output similar to the following:

```json
{
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
  "cacheKeyParameters": [],
  "type": "HTTP",
  "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}",
  "cacheNamespace": "au5df2",
  "requestParameters": {
    "integration.request.path.id": "method.request.path.petId"
  }
}
```

8. Call the `putIntegrationResponse` function to set up the 200 OK integration response for the GET /pets method, specifying the API's /pets resource identifier (8sxa2j) on the `resourceId` property.

```javascript
apig.putIntegrationResponse({
  restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
  resourceId: '8sxa2j',
  httpMethod: 'GET',
  statusCode: '200',
  selectionPattern: ''
}, function(err, data){
  if (!err) {
    console.log(data);
  } else {
    console.log("The 'GET /pets' method integration response setup failed:
", err);
  }
});
```
This function will return an output similar to the following result:

```
{
   "selectionPattern": "",
   "statusCode": "200"
}
```

To set up the 200 OK integration response of the GET /pets/{petId} method, call the putIntegrationResponse function, specifying the API's /pets/{petId} resource identifier (au5df2) on the resourceId property.

```javascript
apig.putIntegrationResponse({
  restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
  resourceId: 'au5df2',
  httpMethod: 'GET',
  statusCode: '200',
  selectionPattern: '',
}, function(err, data){
  if (!err) {
    console.log(data);
  } else {
    console.log("The 'GET /pets/{petId}' method integration response setup failed:
", err);
  }
});
```

9. As a good practice, test invoking the API before deploying it. To test invoking the GET /pets method, call the testInvokeMethod, specifying the /pets resource identifier (8sxa2j) on the resourceId property:

```javascript
apig.testInvokeMethod({
  restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
  resourceId: '8sxa2j',
  httpMethod: "GET",
  pathWithQueryString: '/'
}, function(err, data){
  if (!err) {
    console.log(data);
  } else {
    console.log('Test-invoke-method on 'GET /pets' failed:
", err);
  }
});
```

To test invoking the GET /pets/{petId} method, call the testInvokeMethod, specifying the /pets/{petId} resource identifier (au5df2) on the resourceId property:

```javascript
apig.testInvokeMethod({
  restApiId: 'iuo308uaq7',
  resourceId: 'au5df2',
  httpMethod: "GET",
  pathWithQueryString: '/'
}, function(err, data){
  if (!err) {
    console.log(data);
  } else {
    console.log('Test-invoke-method on 'GET /pets/{petId}' failed:
", err);
  }
});
```

10. Finally, you can deploy the API for your customers to call.
Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using the API Gateway REST API

Setting up an API using the API Gateway REST API involves working with API Gateway resources of the `RestApi`, `Resource`, `Method`, `MethodResponse`, `Integration`, and `IntegrationResponse` types. The following procedure walks through the basic steps to work with these API Gateway resources to set up the simple PetStore API.

To create the simple PetStore API

1. To set up an edge-optimized API, invoke the API Gateway's `restapi:create` link-relation to add an API Gateway resource of `RestApi` to your account in a chosen region:

   ```
   POST /restapis HTTP/1.1
   Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
   Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
   X-Amz-Date: 20170511T214723Z
   Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
   Signature=d0abd98a2a061999531c2916b162ede9f63a247032cdc8e4d0771216446d13103c
   Cache-Control: no-cache
   Postman-Token: 0889d2b5-e507-6aab-f222-ab9548dbacaa

   {  
      "name": "Simple PetStore (REST API)",  
      "description": "A sample API Gateway API created using the REST API."
   }
   ```

   The successful request returns a response of the 201 Created status code with a payload similar to the following output:

   ```
   {
      "createdDate": "2017-05-11T21:47:24Z",
      "description": "A sample API Gateway API created using the REST API.",
      "endpointConfiguration": {
         "types": "EDGE"
      },
      "id": "x7hyqq0ik7",
      "name": "Simple PetStore (REST API)"
   }
   ```

   Note of the id value of the newly created `RestApi`. You will use this id value in subsequent operations on this API. A newly created `RestApi` comes with the API's root resource (`/`) of the API.
You need to specify the `id` value of this root resource to append a child resource, and to add a method on the root resource. To get this API identifier, get the API's resources collection and then parse the result to obtain the `id` property value of the entry with the `path` value of `/`.

2. To get the API root resource identifier, invoke the `restapi:resources` link-relation:

```plaintext
GET /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170511T215738Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=76c24ef91d835b85313142bf75545c4ac4c212067e8188ee6a127c21dae09e29
```

The request returns a response of the 200 OK status code with a payload similar to the following output:

```json
{
  "_embedded": {
    "item": {
      "_links": {
        "self": {
          "href": "/restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/0f72nvvnkd"
        },
        "method:by-http-method": {
          "href": "/restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/0f72nvvnkd/methods/{http_method}",
          "templated": true
        },
        "method:put": {
          "href": "/restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/0f72nvvnkd/methods/{http_method}",
          "templated": true
        },
        "resource:create-child": {
          "href": "/restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/0f72nvvnkd"
        },
        "resource:update": {
          "href": "/restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/0f72nvvnkd"
        }
      },
      "id": "0f72nvvnkd",
      "path": "/"
    }
  }
}
```

The root resource identifier is the `id` value associated with the `path` value of "/". In this example, it is `0f72nvvnkd`.

3. To add a `pets` resource under the root resource (`0f72nvvnkd`) to represent the pets collection of the pet store, call the `resource:create` link-relation of API Gateway:

```plaintext
POST /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/0f72nvvnkd HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T000729Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=8a709341f9c9bb0aa90f4b1890475d93cf20aa3732089da61e6deb410fbc6037d
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: 48abcd2f-c357-9e44-669e-d8d813f876ca

{
  "pathPart": "pets"
}
```
The successful response contains the newly created child resource (47rxl6, pets or /pets) and its parent (0f72nvvnkd).

```json
{
...,
  "id": "47rxl6",
  "parentId": "0f72nvvnkd",
  "path": "/pets",
  "pathPart": "pets"
}
```

Similarly, to add an individual pet under the pets collection (as referenced the resource Id of 47rxl6), invoke the following `resource:create` link-relation:

```
POST /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/47rxl6 HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T000729Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/
apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
  Signature=8a7093411c97b0aa90f4b1890475d93cf20aa3732089da61e6deb410fbc6037d
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: 48abcd2f-c357-9e44-669e-d8d813f876ca
{
  "pathPart": "{petId}"
}
```

The resulting response looks like this one:

```json
{
...,
  "id": "ab34fgd",
  "parentId": "47rxl6",
  "path": "/pets/{petId}"
  "pathPart": "{petsId}"
}
```

4. To add a GET method to the API's /pets resource (47rxl6), invoke the following `method:put` link-relation of API Gateway:

```
PUT /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/47rxl6/methods/GET HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T000729Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/
apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
  Signature=8a7093411c97b0aa90f4b1890475d93cf20aa3732089da61e6deb410fbc6037d
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: 48abcd2f-c357-9e44-669e-d8d813f876ca
{
  "authorizationType": "NONE"
}
```
The method is for open access because authorization-type is set to NONE. To permit only authenticated users to call the method, you can use IAM roles and policies, a custom authorizer, or an Amazon Cognito user pool. For more information, see Controlling Access to an API (p. 239).

The successful request returns a 201 Created response with a payload similar to the following:

```
{
    ...,
    "apiKeyRequired": false,
    "authorizationType": "NONE",
    "httpMethod": "GET"
}
```

To add a GET method to the API's /pets/{petId} resource (ab34fgd), invoke the following method:put link-relation of API Gateway:

```
PUT /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/ab34fgd/methods/GET HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T000729Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=8a7093411c97b0aa90f4b1890475d93cf20aa3373205d9da616de6b4106b5c6037d
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: 48abcd2f-c357-9e44-669e-d8d813f876ca
{
    "authorizationType": "NONE",
    "requestParameters": {
        "method.request.path.petId": true
    }
}
```

You must declare the method request path parameter of petId for API Gateway to map its dynamically set value to the corresponding integration request parameter before passing it to the backend. You must always set a path parameter as required. In addition, depending on API requirements, you can set up header and query parameters on a method request. For POST, PUT, PATCH, or any other method taking a payload, you can define a model for the payload in the method request. For more information about these settings, see Set up API Methods in API Gateway (p. 104).

The successful response has a status code of 201 Created and a payload similar to the following:

```
{
    "apiKeyRequired": false,
    "authorizationType": "NONE",
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "requestParameters": {
        "method.request.path.petId": true
    }
}
```

5. To add a method response of the 200 status code for the GET /pets method of the API, invoke the methodresponse:put link-relation, specifying 47rxl6 to reference the resource exposing this method:

```
PUT /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/47rxl6/methods/GET/responses/200 HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
```
The successful request returns a response of the 201 Created status code with a payload similar to the following output:

```
{
  ...
  "statusCode": "200"
}
```

Similarly, to add a 200 response to the GET /pets/{petId} method, invoke the following methodresponse:put link-relation, referencing the desired /pets/{petId} resource by its ID (ab34fgd):

```
PUT /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/ab34fgd/methods/GET/responses/200 HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T003943Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/apigateway/ab34fgd/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=753f092fae4b73c12a274f59fc45985106e9b778233e
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: 268fcf18-92e4-dfe8-821a-ebf4e0edfd

{}
```

The API Gateway resources of Method and MethodResponse that you just set up define the client-facing interface of the API. For non-proxy integrations, you must add and configure an API Gateway resource of Integration and IntegrationResponse to encapsulate the integration request submitted to the backend and the integration response returned by the backend. For proxy integrations, however, you do not set up Integration and IntegrationResponse.

6. To set up Integration for the GET /pets method, invoke the integration:put link-relation of API Gateway, referencing the /pets resource by its ID value (47rxl6):

```
PUT /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/47rxl6/methods/GET/integration HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T003943Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/apigateway/47rxl6/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=35e506e6de1e1d4f5d3ee1b70e9b778233e
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: 268fcf18-92e4-dfe8-821a-ebf4e0edfd

{
  "type": "HTTP",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets"
}
```

In the request payload, uri points to the backend endpoint associated with the method. The type refers to the integration type. For the specified HTTP endpoint http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets, the integration type must be HTTP.
httpMethod property refers to the HTTP verb as required by the backend, which may be different from the method request HTTP verb set when calling the method:put link-relation.

The successful request returns a response of a 201 Created status code with a payload similar to the following output:

```
{
  ..., 
  "cacheKeyParameters": [],
  "cacheNamespace": "47rx16",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
  "type": "HTTP",
  "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets"
}
```

Similarly, to set up the integration for the GET /pets/{petId} method, invoke the following integration:put link-relation of API Gateway, referencing the /pets/{petId} resource by its value of ab34fgd, and adding the request parameter mapping from {petId} to {id}:

```
PUT /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/ab34fgd/methods/GET/integration HTTP/1.1  
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com  
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0  
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T002249Z  
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,  
Signature=10359971a8c54862a47e39d6a6e4b6e62c263e9a2b785b47b40c426c0aa61c19  
{
  "type": "HTTP",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}"
}
```

The successful response of this integration:put request is shown as follows:

```
{
  ..., 
  "cacheKeyParameters": [],
  "cacheNamespace": "ab34fgd",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
  "type": "HTTP",
  "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}"
}
```

7. To set up the 200 OK IntegrationResponse for the GET /pets method, invoke the following integrationresponse:put link-relation of API Gateway:

```
PUT /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/47rx16/methods/GET/integration/responses/200 HTTP/1.1  
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com  
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0  
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T004542Z  
{  
  "type": "HTTP",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}"
}
```

The successful response of this integration:response:put request is shown as follows:

```
{
  ..., 
  "cacheKeyParameters": [],
  "cacheNamespace": "ab34fgd",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
  "type": "HTTP",
  "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/{id}"
}
```
Set up an Edge-Optimized API

Using the API Gateway REST API

Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=545ab6ea151f72c52161ee856ee621f136d717e40a02743cd8fe3638895794b1
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: d29cabea-5232-7021-88ad-f1e950f55a99

The successful request returns a response of the 201 Created status code and a payload similar to the following output:

{ ...,
  "statusCode": "200"
}

To set up the 200 OK IntegrationResponse for the GET /pets/{petId} (the resource id is ab34fgd) method, invoke the following integrationresponse:put link-relation of API Gateway:

PUT /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/resources/ab34fgd/methods/GET/integration/responses/200
HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T004542Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=545ab6ea151f72c52161ee856ee621f136d717e40a02743cd8fe3638895794b1

{}

We now have successfully created a simple PetStore API with the GET /pets and GET /pets/{petId} method with the HTTP integration type.

8. To open the API for your customers to call, deploy the API to a test stage by invoking deployment:create) link-relation of API Gateway.

POST /restapis/x7hyqq0ik7/deployments HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170512T004542Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170512/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=545ab6ea151f72c52161ee856ee621f136d717e40a02743cd8fe3638895794b1

{ "stageName": "test",
  "stageDescription": "First stage",
  "description": "First deployment"
}

The successful response has a status code of 201 Created and a payload similar to the following:

{ ...,
  "createdDate": "2017-10-13T20:28:56Z",
  "description": "First deployment",
  "id": "s7ja1r" }
Now, you can test the deployed API by typing the `https://x7hyqq0ik7.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets` URL, for the GET /pets method, in a browser. Substitute the RestApi identifier (x7hyqq0ik7) with the identifier of your API. The expected output should be as follows:

```json
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 124.99
  },
  {
    "id": 3,
    "type": "fish",
    "price": 0.99
  }
]
```

To test the GET /pets/{petId} method, type the `https://x7hyqq0ik7.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets/3` URL in the browser, replacing the RestApi identifier with the identifier of your API. The expected output should be like this:

```json
{
  "id": 3,
  "type": "fish",
  "price": 0.99
}
```

**Set up an Edge-Optimized API by Importing Swagger Definitions**

You can set up an API in API Gateway by specifying Swagger definitions of appropriate API Gateway API entities and importing the Swagger definitions into API Gateway.

The following Swagger definitions describe the simple API, exposing only the GET / method integrated with an HTTP endpoint of the PetStore website in the backend, and returning a 200 OK response.

```json
{
  "swagger": "2.0",
  "info": {
    "title": "Simple PetStore (Swagger)"
  },
  "schemes": [
    "https"
  ],
  "paths": {
    "/pets": {
      "get": {
        "responses": {
          "200": {
            "description": "200 response"
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```
The following procedure describes how to import these Swagger definitions into API Gateway using the API Gateway console.

To import the simple API Swagger definitions using the API Gateway console

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Choose Create API.
3. Choose Import from Swagger.
4. If you saved the preceding Swagger definitions in a file, choose Select Swagger File. You can also copy the Swagger definitions and paste them into the import text editor.
5. Choose Import to finish importing the Swagger definitions.
To import the Swagger definitions using the API Gateway REST API, call the `restapi:import` action, supplying the preceding Swagger definitions as the payload. For more information, see the example in the Remarks section of the `restapi:import` topic.

To import the Swagger definitions using the AWS CLI, save the Swagger definitions into a file and then run the following command, assuming that you use the `us-west-2` region and the absolute Swagger file path is `file:///path/to/API_Swagger_template.json`:

```bash
aws apigateway import-rest-api --body 'file:///path/to/API_Swagger_template.json' --region us-west-2
```

**Set up a Regional API in API Gateway**

When API requests predominantly originate from an EC2 instance or services within the same region as the API is deployed, a regional API endpoint will typically lower the latency of connections and is recommended for such scenarios. In addition, for customers to manage their own Amazon CloudFront distribution, they can use a regional API endpoint to ensure that API Gateway does not associate the API with the service-controlled CloudFront distributions.

To create a regional API, you follow the steps in creating an edge-optimized API (p. 80), but must explicitly set `REGIONAL` type as the only option of the API's `endpointConfiguration`.

In the following, we show how to create a regional API using the API Gateway console, AWS CLI, the AWS SDK for Javascript for Node.js, and the API Gateway REST API.

**Topics**
- Create a Regional API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 101)
- Create a Regional API Using the AWS CLI (p. 101)
- Create a Regional API Using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (p. 102)
- Create a Regional API Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 102)
- Test a Regional API (p. 103)

**Create a Regional API Using the API Gateway Console**

To create a regional API using the API Gateway console:

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose **+ Create API**.
2. Under **Create new API**, choose the **New API** option.
3. Type a name (for example, Simple PetStore (Console, Regional)) for **API name**.
4. Choose **Regional** for **Endpoint Type**.
5. Choose **Create API**.

From here on, you can proceed to set up API methods and their associated integrations as described in creating an edge optimized API (p. 42).

**Create a Regional API Using the AWS CLI**

To create a regional API using the AWS CLI, call the `create-rest-api` command:

```bash
aws apigateway create-rest-api \
   --name 'Simple PetStore (AWS CLI, Regional)' \
   --description 'Simple regional PetStore API'
```
--region us-west-2 \
--endpointConfiguration '{ types: ["REGIONAL"] }'

The successful response returns an output similar to the following:

```
{
  "createdDate": "2017-10-13T18:41:39Z",
  "description": "Simple regional PetStore API",
  "endpointConfiguration": {
    "types": "REGIONAL"
  },
  "id": "0qzs2sy7bh",
  "name": "Simple PetStore (AWS CLI, Regional)"
}
```

From here on, you can follow the same instructions given in the section called “Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using AWS CLI Commands” (p. 81) to set up methods and integrations for this API.

**Create a Regional API Using the AWS SDK for JavaScript**

To create a regional API, using the AWS SDK for JavaScript:

```javascript
apig.createRestApi({
  name: "Simple PetStore (node.js SDK, regional)",
  endpointConfiguration: {
    types: ['REGIONAL']
  },
  description: "Demo regional API created using the AWS SDK for node.js",
  version: "0.00.001"
}, function(err, data){
  if (!err) {
    console.log('Create API succeeded:
      ', data);
    restApiId = data.id;
  } else {
    console.log('Create API failed:
      ', err);
  }
});
```

The successful response returns an output similar to the following:

```
{
  "createdDate": "2017-10-13T18:41:39Z",
  "description": "Demo regional API created using the AWS SDK for node.js",
  "endpointConfiguration": {
    "types": "REGIONAL"
  },
  "id": "0qzs2sy7bh",
  "name": "Simple PetStore (node.js SDK, regional)"
}
```

After completing the preceding steps, you can follow the instructions in the section called "Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using the AWS SDK for Node.js " (p. 85) to set up methods and integrations for this API.

**Create a Regional API Using the API Gateway REST API**

To create a regional API using the API Gateway REST API, submit a POST request as follows:

```
POST /restapis HTTP/1.1
```
Set up a Regional API

Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170511T214723Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=d0abd98a2a06199531c2916b162ede9f63a247032c6e8e4d077216446d13103c

{
    "name": "Simple PetStore (REST API, Regional)",
    "description": "A sample API Gateway API created using the REST API."
    "endpointConfiguration": {
        "types": ["REGIONAL"]
    }
}

The successful response has the status code of 201 Created and a body similar to the following output:

{
    "createdDate": "2017-10-13T18:41:39Z",
    "description": "A sample API Gateway API created using the REST API."
    "endpointConfiguration": {
        "types": "REGIONAL"
    },
    "id": "0qzs2sy7bh",
    "name": "Simple PetStore (REST API, Regional)"
}

After completing the preceding steps, you can follow the instructions in the section called “Set up an Edge-Optimized API Using the API Gateway REST API” (p. 92) to set up methods and integrations for this API.

Test a Regional API

Once deployed, the regional API’s default URL host name is of the following format:

{restapi-id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com

The base URL to invoke the API is like the following:

https://{restapi-id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com/{stage}

Assuming you set up the GET /pets and GET /pets/{petId} methods in this example, you can test the API by typing the following URLs in a browser:

https://0qzs2sy7bh.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets

and

https://0qzs2sy7bh.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets/1

Alternatively, you can use cURL commands:

curl -X GET https://0qzs2sy7bh.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets

and
Set up API Methods in API Gateway

In API Gateway, an API method embodies a method request and a method response. You set up an API method to define what a client should or must do to submit a request to access the service at the backend and to define the responses that the client receives in return. For input, you can choose method request parameters, or an applicable payload, for the client to provide the required or optional data at run time. For output, you determine the method response status code, headers, and applicable body as targets to map the backend response data into, before they are returned to the client. To help the client developer understand the behaviors and the input and output formats of your API, you can document your API (p. 309) and provide proper error messages (p. 153) for invalid requests (p. 217).

An API method request is an HTTP request. To set up the method request, you configure an HTTP method (or verb), the path to an API resource, headers, applicable query string parameters. You also configure a payload when the HTTP method is POST, PUT, or PATCH. For example, to retrieve a pet using the PetStore sample API (p. 9), you define the API method request of GET /pets/{petId}, where {petId} is a path parameter that can take a number at run time.

GET /pets/1
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
...

If the client specifies an incorrect path, for example, /pet/1 or /pets/one instead of /pets/1, an exception is thrown.

An API method response is an HTTP response of a given status code. For a non-proxy integration, you must set up method responses to specify the required or optional targets of mappings. These transform integration response headers or body to associated method response headers or body. The mapping can be an identical transformation that passes through the integration as-is. For example, the following 200 method response shows an example of pass-through of a successful integration response as-is.

200 OK
Content-Type: application/json
...
{
   "id": "1",
   "type": "dog",
   "price": "$249.99"
}

In principle, you can define a method response corresponding to a specific response from the backend. Typically, this involves any 2XX, 4XX, and 5XX responses. However, this may not be practical because often you may not know in advance all the responses that a backend may return. In practice, you can designate one method response as the default to handle the unknown or unmapped responses from the backend. It is a good practice to designate the 500 response as the default. In any case, you must set up at least one method response for non-proxy integrations. Otherwise, API Gateway returns a 500 error response to the client even when the request succeeds at the backend.

To support a strongly typed SDK, such as a Java SDK, for your API, you should define the data model for input for the method request, and define the data model for output of the method response.

Topics
- Set up a Method Request in API Gateway (p. 105)
Set up a Method Request in API Gateway

Setting up a method request involves performing the following tasks, after creating a RestApi resource:

1. Creating a new API or choosing an existing API Resource entity.
2. Creating an API Method resource that is a specific HTTP verb on the new or chosen API Resource. This task can be further divided into the following sub tasks:
   - Adding an HTTP method to the method request
   - Configuring request parameters
   - Defining a model for the request body
   - Enacting an authorization scheme
   - Enabling request validation

You can perform these tasks using the following methods:

- API Gateway console (p. 113)
- AWS CLI commands (create-resource and put-method)
- AWS SDK functions (for example, in Node.js, createResource and putMethod)
- API Gateway REST API (resource:create and method:put).

For examples of using these tools, see Initialize API Setup in API Gateway (p. 80).

Topics

- Set up API Resources (p. 105)
- Set up an HTTP Method (p. 108)
- Set up Method Request Parameters (p. 108)
- Set up Method Request Model (p. 109)
- Set up Method Request Authorization (p. 110)
- Set up Method Request Validation (p. 111)

Set up API Resources

In an API Gateway API, you expose addressable resources as a tree of API Resources entities, with the root resource (/) at the top of the hierarchy. The root resource is relative to the API's base URL, which consists of the API endpoint and a stage name. In the API Gateway console, this base URI is referred to as the Invoke URI and is displayed in the API's stage editor after the API is deployed.

The API endpoint can be a default host name or a custom domain name. The default host name is of the following format:

{api-id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com

In this format, the {api-id} represents the API identifier that is generated by API Gateway. The {region} variable represents the AWS Region (for example, us-east-1) that you chose when creating the API. A custom domain name is any user-friendly name under a valid internet domain. For example,
if you have registered an internet domain of example.com, any of *.example.com is a valid custom
domain name. For more information, see create a custom domain name (p. 412).

For the PetStore sample API (p. 9), the root resource (/) exposes the pet store. The /pets resource
represents the collection of pets available in the pet store. The /pets/{petId} exposes an individual
pet of a given identifier (petId). The path parameter of {petId} is part of the request parameters.

To set up an API resource, you choose an existing resource as its parent and then create the child
resource under this parent resource. You start with the root resource as a parent, add a resource to this
parent, add another resource to this child resource as the new parent, and so on, to its parent identifier.
Then you add the named resource to the parent.

With AWS CLI, you can call the get-resources command to find out which resources of an API are
available:

```bash
aws apigateway get-resources --rest-api-id <apiId> \
    --region <region>
```

The result is a list of the currently available resources of the API. For our PetStore sample API, this list
looks like following:

```json
{
    "items": [
        {
            "path": "/pets",
            "resourceMethods": {
                "GET": {} 
            },
            "id": "6sxz2j",
            "pathPart": "pets",
            "parentId": "svzr2028x8"
        },
        {
            "path": "/pets/{petId}",
            "resourceMethods": {
                "GET": {} 
            },
            "id": "rjkmth",
            "pathPart": "{petId}",
            "parentId": "6sxz2j"
        },
        {
            "path": "/",
            "id": "svzr2028x8"
        }
    ]
}
```

Each item lists the identifiers of the resource (id) and, except for the root resource, its immediate parent
(parentId), as well as the resource name (pathPart). The root resource is special in that it does not
have any parent. After choosing a resource as the parent, call the following command to add a child
resource.

```bash
aws apigateway create-resource --rest-api-id <apiId> \
    --region <region> \
    --parent-id <parentId> \
    --path-part <resourceName>
```

For example, to add pet food for sale on the PetStore website, add a food resource to the root (/) by
setting path-part to food and parent-id to svzr2028x8. The result looks like the following:
Use a Proxy Resource to Streamline API Setup

As business grows, the PetStore owner may decide to add food, toys, and other pet-related items for sale. To support this, you can add \(/food\), \(/toys\), and other resources under the root resource. Under each sale category, you may also want to add more resources, such as \(/food\{type\}\{item\}\), \(/toys\{type\}\{item\}\), etc. This can get tedious. If you decide to add a middle layer \(\{subtype\}\) to the resource paths to change the path hierarchy into \(/food\{type\}\{subtype\}\{item\}\), \(/toys\{type\}\{subtype\}\{item\}\), etc., the changes will break the existing API setup. To avoid this, you can use an API Gateway proxy resource (p. 120) to expose a set of API resources all at once.

API Gateway defines a proxy resource as a placeholder for a resource to be specified when the request is submitted. A proxy resource is expressed by a special path parameter of \(\{proxy+\}\), often referred to as a greedy path parameter. The + sign indicates whichever child resources are appended to it. The \(\text{/parent/}\{proxy+\}\) placeholder stands for any resource matching the path pattern of \(\text{/parent/\*}\). The greedy path parameter name, \(\text{proxy}\), can be replaced by another string in the same way you treat a regular path parameter name.

Using the AWS CLI, you can call the following command to set up a proxy resource under the root \((\{proxy+\})\):

```
aws apigateway create-resource --rest-api-id <apiId> \
  --region <region> \
  --parent-id <rootResourceId> \
  --path-part {proxy+}
```

The result is similar to the following:

```
{
  "path": "\{proxy+\}",
  "pathPart": "\{proxy+\}",
  "id": "234jdr",
  "parentId": "svzr2028x8"
}
```

For the PetStore API example, you can use \(\{proxy+\}\) to represent both the \(/pets\) and \(/pets/\{petId\}\). This proxy resource can also reference any other (existing or to-be-added) resources, such as \(/food\{type\}\{item\}\), \(/toys\{type\}\{item\}\), etc., or \(/food\{type\}\{subtype\}\{item\}\), \(\text{/toys/}\{type\}\{subtype\}\{item\}\), etc. The backend developer determines the resource hierarchy and the client developer is responsible for understanding it. API Gateway simply passes whatever the client submitted to the backend.

An API can have more than one proxy resource. For example, the following proxy resources are allowed within an API.

```
/\{proxy+\}
/parent/\{proxy+\}
/parent/\{child\}/\{proxy+\}
```

When a proxy resource has non-proxy siblings, the sibling resources are excluded from the representation of the proxy resource. For the preceding examples, \(\{proxy+\}\) refers to any resources under the root
resource except for the /parent[/*] resources. In other words, a method request against a specific resource takes precedence over the similar method request against a generic resource at the same level of the resource hierarchy.

A proxy resource cannot have any child resource. Any API resource after {proxy+} is redundant and ambiguous. The following proxy resources are not allowed within an API.

```
/{proxy+}/child
/parent/{proxy+}/{child}
/parent/{child}/{proxy+}/(grandchild+)
```

### Set up an HTTP Method

An API method request is encapsulated by the API Gateway Method resource. To set up the method request, you must first instantiate the Method resource, setting at least an HTTP method and an authorization type on the method.

Closely associated with the proxy resource, API Gateway supports an HTTP method of ANY. This ANY method represents any HTTP method that is to be supplied at run time. It allows you to use a single API method setup for all of the supported HTTP methods of DELETE, GET, HEAD, OPTIONS, PATCH, POST, and PUT.

You can set up the ANY method on a non-proxy resource as well. Combining the ANY method with a proxy resource, you get a single API method setup for all of the supported HTTP methods against any resources of an API. Furthermore, the backend can evolve without breaking the existing API setup.

Before setting up an API method, consider who can call the method. Set the authorization type according to your plan. For open access, set it to NONE. To use IAM permissions, set the authorization type to AWS_IAM. To use a Lambda function-based custom authorizer, set this property to CUSTOM. To leverage an Amazon Cognito user pool set the authorization type to COGNITO_USER_POOLS.

The following AWS CLI command shows how to create a method request of the ANY verb against a specified resource (6sxz2j), using the IAM permissions to control its access.

```
aws apigateway put-method --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id 6sxz2j \
  --http-method ANY \
  --authorization-type AWS_IAM \
  --region us-west-2
```

To create an API method request with a different authorization type, see the section called "Set up Method Request Authorization" (p. 110).

### Set up Method Request Parameters

Method request parameters are a way for a client to provide input data or execution context necessary to complete the method request. A method parameter can be a path parameter, a header, or a query string parameter. As part of method request setup, you must declare required request parameters to make them available for the client. For non-proxy integration, you can translate these request parameters to a form that is compatible with the backend requirement.

For example, for the GET /pets/{petId} method request, the {petId} path variable is a required request parameter. You can declare this path parameter when calling the put-method command of the AWS CLI. This is illustrated as follows:

```
aws apigateway put-method --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id rjkmth \
```

108
Set up Method Request

If a parameter is not required, you can set it to false in request-parameters. For example, if the GET /pets method uses an optional query string parameter of type, and an optional header parameter of breed, you can declare them using the following CLI command, assuming that the /pets resource id is 6sxz2j:

```
aws apigateway put-method --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id 6sxz2j \
  --http-method GET \
  --authorization-type "NONE" \
  --region us-west-2 \
  --request-parameters method.request.querystring.type=false,method.request.header.breed=false
```

Instead of this abbreviated form, you can use a JSON string to set the request-parameters value:

```
'{"method.request.querystring.type":false,"method.request-header.breed":false}'
```

With this setup, the client can query pets by type:

```
GET /pets?type=dog
```

And the client can query dogs of the poodle breed as follows:

```
GET /pets?type=dog
breed:poodle
```

For information on how to map method request parameters to integration request parameters, see the section called “Set up API Integrations” (p. 116).

Set up Method Request Model

For an API method that can take input data in a payload, you can use a model. A model is expressed in a JSON schema and describes the data structure of the request body. With a model, a client can determine how to construct a method request payload as input. More importantly, API Gateway uses the model to validate a request (p. 217), generate an SDK (p. 396), and initialize a mapping template for setting up the integration in the API Gateway console. For information about how to create a model, see Models and Mapping Templates (p. 162).

Depending on the content types, a method payload can have different formats. A model is indexed against the media type of the applied payload. To set up method request models, add key-value pairs of the "<media-type>:<model-name>" format to the requestModels map when calling the AWS CLI put-method command.

For example, to set a model on the JSON payload of the POST /pets method request of the PetStore example API, you can call the following AWS CLI command:

```
aws apigateway put-method \
  --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id 6sxz2j \
  --http-method POST \
  --authorization-type "NONE" \
```
Set up Method Request

Here, petModel is the name property value of a Model resource describing a pet. The actual schema definition is expressed as a JSON string value of the schema property of the Model resource.

In a Java, or other strongly typed SDK, of the API, the input data is cast as the petModel class derived from the schema definition. With the request model, the input data in the generated SDK is cast into the Empty class, which is derived from the default Empty model. In this case, the client cannot instantiate the correct data class to provide the required input.

Set up Method Request Authorization

To control who can call the API method, you can configure the authorization type on the method. You can use this type to enact one of the supported authorizers, including IAM roles and policies (AWS_IAM, an Amazon Cognito user pool (COGNITO_USER_POOLS), or a Lambda function-based custom authorizer (CUSTOM)). The API Gateway console sets NONE for open access as the default.

To use IAM permissions to authorize access to the API method, set the authorization-type input property to AWS_IAM. When this option is set, API Gateway verifies the caller's signature on the request, based on the caller's IAM user's access key identifier and secret key. If the verified user has permission to call the method, the request is accepted. Otherwise, the request is rejected and the caller receives an unauthorized error response. The call to the method does not succeed unless the caller has been granted permission to invoke the API method or if the caller is allowed to assume a role that has been granted the permission. The caller has permissions to call this and any other API methods created by anyone of the same AWS account if the caller has the following IAM policy attached to his or her IAM user:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "execute-api:Invoke"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:execute-api:*:*:*"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see the section called “Use IAM Permissions” (p. 239).

At present, such a policy can be granted to only the IAM users of the API owner's account. Users from a different AWS account can call the API methods if they are allowed to assume a role of the API owner account and the assumed role has the proper permissions for the execute-api:Invoke action. For information on cross-account permissions, see Using IAM Roles.

You can use AWS CLI, an AWS SDK, or a REST API client, such as Postman, which implements Signature Version 4 Signing.

To use a custom authorizer to authorize access to the API method, set the authorization-type input property to CUSTOM and set the authorizer-id input property to the id property value of a custom authorizer that already exists. The referenced custom authorizer can be of the TOKEN or REQUEST type. For information about creating a custom authorizer, see the section called “Use Custom Authorizers” (p. 257).

To use an Amazon Cognito user pool to authorize access to the API method, set the authorization-type input property to COGNITO_USER_POOLS and set the authorizer-id input property to the id property value of the COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer that was already created. For information about
creating an Amazon Cognito user pool authorizer, see the section called “Use Amazon Cognito User Pools” (p. 269).

Set up Method Request Validation

You can enable request validation when setting up an API method request. You need to first to create a request validator:

```
aws apigateway create-request-validator \
  --rest-api-id 7zw9uyk9kl \
  --name bodyOnlyValidator \
  --validate-request-body \
  --no-validate-request-parameters
```

This CLI command creates a body-only request validator. Example output is as follows:

```
{
  "validateRequestParameters": true,
  "validateRequestBody": true,
  "id": "jgpyy6",
  "name": "bodyOnlyValidator"
}
```

With this request validator, you can enable request validation as part of the method request setup:

```
aws apigateway put-method \
  --rest-api-id 7zw9uyk9kl \
  --region us-west-2 \
  --resource-id xdsvhp \
  --http-method PUT \
  --authorization-type "NONE" \
  --request-parameters "{"method.request.querystring.type": false, "method.request.querystring.page":false}'
  --request-models '{"application/json":"petModel"}'
  --request-validator-id jgpyy6
```

To be included in request validation, a request parameter must be declared as required. If the query string parameter for the page is used in request validation, the request-parameters map of the preceding example must be specified as '{"method.request.querystring.type": false, "method.request.querystring.page":true}'.

Set up Method Responses in API Gateway

An API method response encapsulates the output of an API method request that the client will receive. The output data includes an HTTP status code, some headers, and possibly a body.

With non-proxy integrations, the specified response parameters and body can be mapped from the associated integration response data or can be assigned certain static values according to mappings. These mappings are prescribed in the integration response. The mapping can be an identical transformation that passes the integration response through as-is.

With a proxy integration, API Gateway passes the backend response through to the method response automatically. There is no need for you to set up the API method response. However, with the Lambda proxy integration, the Lambda function must return a result of this output format (p. 132) for API Gateway to successfully map the integration response to a method response.

Programmatically, the method response setup amounts to creating a `MethodResponse` resource of API Gateway and setting the properties of `statusCode`, `responseParameters`, and `responseModels`. 
When setting status codes for an API method, you should choose one as the default to handle any integration response of an unanticipated status code. It is reasonable to set 500 as the default because this amounts to casting otherwise unmapped responses as a server-side error. For instructional reasons, the API Gateway console sets the 200 response as the default. But you can reset it to the 500 response.

To set up a method response, you must have created the method request.

**Set up Method Response Status Code**

The status code of a method response defines a type of response. For example, responses of 200, 400, and 500 indicate successful, client-side error and server-side error responses, respectively.

To set up a method response status code, set the `statusCode` property to an HTTP status code. The following AWS CLI command creates a method response of 200.

```
aws apigateway put-method-response \
  --region us-west-2 \
  --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id 6sxz2j \
  --http-method GET \
  --status-code 200
```

**Set up Method Response Parameters**

Method response parameters define which headers the client receives in response to the associated method request. Response parameters also specify a target to which API Gateway maps an integration response parameter, according to mappings prescribed in the API method’s integration response.

To set up the method response parameters, add to the `responseParameters` map of `MethodResponse` key-value pairs of the `{(parameter-name)}":"{boolean}" format. The following CLI command shows an example of setting the `my-header` header, the `petId` path variable, and the `query` query parameter as the mapping targets:

```
aws apigateway put-method-response \
  --region us-west-2 \
  --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --resource-id 6sxz2j \
  --http-method GET \
  --status-code 200 \
  --response-parameters method.request.header.my-header=false,method.request.path.petId=true,method.request.querystring.query=false
```

**Set up Method Response Models**

A method response model defines a format of the method response body. Before setting up the response model, you must first create the model in API Gateway. To do so, you can call the `create-model` command. The following example shows how to create a `PetStorePet` model to describe the body of the response to the `GET /pets/{petId}` method request.

```
aws apigateway create-model \
  --region us-west-2 \
  --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --content-type application/json \
  --name PetStorePet \
  --schema '{ \
    "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#", \
    "title": "PetStorePet", \
    "type": "object"'
```
The result is created as an API Gateway Model resource.

To set up the method response models to define the payload format, add the "application/json":"PetStorePet" key-value pair to the requestModels map of MethodResponse resource. The following AWS CLI command of put-method-response shows how this is done:

```bash/aws apigateway put-method-response
   --region us-west-2
   --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6
   --resource-id 6sxz2j
   --http-method GET
   --status-code 200
   --request-parameters method.request.header.my-header=false,method.request.path.petId=true,method.request.querystring.query=false
   --request-models '{"application/json":"PetStorePet"}'
```

Setting up a method response model is necessary when you generate a strongly typed SDK for the API. It ensures that the output is cast into an appropriate class in Java or Objective-C. In other cases, setting a model is optional.

**Set up a Method Using the API Gateway Console**

Before setting up an API method, verify the following:

- You must have the method available in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42).

- If you want the method to communicate with a Lambda function, you must have already created the Lambda invocation role and Lambda execution role in IAM. You must also have created the Lambda function with which your method will communicate in AWS Lambda. To create the roles and function, use the instructions in Create a Lambda Function for the Lambda Custom Integration (p. 27) of the Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration (p. 17).

- If you want the method to communicate with an HTTP or HTTP proxy integration, you must have already created, and have access to, the HTTP endpoint URL with which your method will communicate.

- Verify that your certificates for HTTP and HTTP proxy endpoints are supported by API Gateway. For details see API Gateway-Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integrations (p. 280).

**Topics**

- Set up an API Gateway Method Request in the API Gateway Console (p. 113)
- Set up an API Gateway Method Response Using the API Gateway Console (p. 116)

**Set up an API Gateway Method Request in the API Gateway Console**

To use the API Gateway console to specify an API's method request/response, and to configure how the method will authorize requests, follow these instructions.
Note
These instructions assume you have already completed the steps in Set up an API Integration Request Using the API Gateway Console (p. 121). They are best used to supplement the discussions given in Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration (p. 17).

1. With the method selected in the Resources pane, choose Method Request from the Method Execution pane.

2. Under Settings, choose the pencil icon to open the Authorization drop-down menu and choose one of the available authorizers.
   a. To enable open access to the method for any user, choose NONE. This step can be skipped if the default setting has not been changed.
   b. To use IAM permissions to control the client access to the method, choose AWS_IAM. With this choice, only users of the IAM roles with the correct IAM policy attached are allowed to call this method.

   To create the IAM role, specify an access policy with a format like the following:

   ```json
   {
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
   {
   "Effect": "Allow",
   "Action": [
   "execute-api:Invoke"
   ],
   "Resource": [
   "resource-statement"
   }
   ]
   }
   ```

   In this access policy, resource-statement is the value of the ARN field in the Authorization Settings section. For more information about setting the IAM permissions, see Control Access to an API with IAM Permissions (p. 239).

   To create the IAM role, you can adapt the instructions in "To create the Lambda invocation role and its policy" and "To create the Lambda execution role and its policy" in the Create Lambda Functions (p. 27) section of the Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration (p. 17).

   To save your choice, choose Update. Otherwise, choose Cancel.
   c. To use a custom authorizer, choose one under Token authorizer. You must have created a custom authorizer to have this choice displayed in the drop-down menu. For information on how to create a custom authorizer, see Use API Gateway Custom Authorizers (p. 257).

   d. To use an Amazon Cognito user pool, choose an available user pool under Cognito user pool authorizers. You must have created a user pool in Amazon Cognito and an Amazon Cognito user pool authorizer in API Gateway to have this choice displayed in the drop-down menu. For information on how to create an Amazon Cognito user pool authorizer, see Use Amazon Cognito User Pools (p. 269).

3. To enable or disable request validation, choose the pencil icon from the Request Validator drop-down menu and choose one of the listed options. For more information about each option, see Enable Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 217).

4. To require an API key, choose the pencil icon to open the API Key Required drop-down menu and choose either true or false according to your API requirements. When enabled, API keys are used in usage plans (p. 296) to throttle client traffic.

5. To add a query string parameter to the method, do the following:
a. Choose the arrow next to **URL Query String Parameters**, and then choose **Add query string**.

b. For **Name**, type the name of the query string parameter.

c. Choose the check-mark icon to save the new query string parameter name.

d. If the newly created query string parameter is to be used for request validation, choose the **Required** option. For more information about the request validation, see Enable Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 217).

e. If the newly created query string parameter is to be used as part of a caching key, check the **Caching** option. This is applicable only when caching is enabled. For more information about caching, see Use Method/Integration Parameters as Cache Keys (p. 359).

**Tip**
To remove the query string parameter, choose the x icon associated with it and then choose **Remove this parameter and any dependent parameters** to confirm the removal.

To change the name of the query string parameter, remove it and then create a new one.

6. To add a header parameter to the method, do the following:

a. Choose the arrow next to **HTTP Request Headers**, and then choose **Add header**.

b. For **Name**, type the name of the header parameter and then choose the check-mark icon to save the settings.

c. If the newly created header parameter is to be used for request validation, choose the **Required** option. For more information about request validation, see Enable Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 217).

d. If the newly created header parameter is to be used as part of a caching key, choose the **Caching** option. This is applicable only when caching is enabled. For more information about caching, see Use Method/Integration Parameters as Cache Keys (p. 359).

**Tip**
To remove the header parameter, choose the x icon associated with it and then choose **Remove this parameter and any dependent parameters** to confirm the removal.

To change the name of the header parameter, remove it and then create a new one.

7. To declare the payload format of a method request with the **POST**, **PUT**, or **PATCH** HTTP verb, expand **Request Body**, and do the following:

a. Choose **Add model**.

b. Type a MIME-type (for example, **application/json**) for **Content type**.

c. Open the **Model name** drop-down menu to choose an available model for the payload and choose the check-mark icon to save the settings.

The currently available models for the API include the default **Empty** and **Error** models as well as any models you have created and added to the **Models** collection of the API. For more information about creating a model, see Create a Model (p. 168).

**Note**
The model is useful to inform the client of the expected data format of a payload. It is helpful to generate a skeletal mapping template. It is important to generate a strongly typed SDK of the API in such languages as Java, C#, Objective-C, and Swift. It is only required if request validation is enabled against the payload.

8. To assign an operation name in a Java SDK of this API, generated by API Gateway, expand **SDK Settings** and type a name in **Operation name**. For example, for the method request of **GET /pets/** {petId}, the corresponding Java SDK operation name is, by default, **GetPetsPetId**. This name is constructed from the method’s HTTP verb (**GET**) and the resource path variable names (**Pets** and **PetId**). If you set the operation name as **getPetById**, the SDK operation name becomes **GetPetById**.
Set up an API Gateway Method Response Using the API Gateway Console

An API method can have one or more responses. Each response is indexed by its HTTP status code. By default, the API Gateway console adds 200 response to the method responses. You can modify it, for example, to have the method return 201 instead. You can add other responses, for example, 409 for access denial and 500 for uninitialized stage variables used.

To use the API Gateway console to modify, delete, or add a response to an API method, follow these instructions.

1. Choose **Method Response** from **Method Execution** for a given method of an API resource.
2. To add a new response, choose **Add Response**.
   a. Type an HTTP status code; for example, 200, 400, or 500 for **HTTP Status**, and then choose the check-mark icon to save the choice.
      When a backend-returned response does not have a corresponding method response defined, API Gateway fails to return the response to the client. Instead, it returns a 500 Internal server error error response.
   b. Expand the response of the given status code.
   c. Choose **Add Header**.
   d. Type a name for **Name** under **Response Headers for** `{status}`, and then choose the check-mark icon to save the choice.
      If you need to translate any backend-returned header to one defined in a method response, you must first add the method response header as described in this step.
   e. Choose **Add Response Model** under **Response Body for** `{status}`.
   f. Type the media type of the response payload for **Content type** and choose a model from the **Models** drop-down menu.
   g. Choose the check-mark icon to save the settings.
3. To modify an existing response, expand the response and follow Step 2 above.
4. To remove a response, choose the x icon for the response and confirm you want to delete the response.

For every response returned from the backend, you must have a compatible response configured as the method response. However, the configuring method response headers and payload model are optional unless you map the result from the backend to the method response before returning to the client. Also, a method response payload model is important if you are generating a strongly typed SDK for your API.

Set up API Integrations in API Gateway

After setting up an API method, you must integrate it with an endpoint in the backend. A backend endpoint is also referred to as an integration endpoint and can be a Lambda function, an HTTP webpage, or an AWS service action. As with the API method, the API integration has an integration request and an integration response. An integration request encapsulates an HTTP request received by the backend. It may or may not differ from the method request submitted by the client. An integration response is an HTTP response encapsulating the output returned by the backend.

Setting up an integration request involves the following: configuring how to pass client-submitted method requests to the backend; configuring how to transform the request data, if necessary, to the integration request data; specifying which Lambda function to call, specifying which HTTP server to forward the incoming request to, or specifying the AWS service action to invoke.
Setting up an integration response, applicable to non-proxy integrations only, involves the following:
configuring how to pass the backend-returned result to a method response of a given status code,
configuring how to transform specified integration response parameters to preconfigured method
response parameters, and configuring how to map the integration response body to the method
response body according to the specified body-mapping templates.

Programmatically, an integration request is encapsulated by the Integration resource and an
integration response by the IntegrationResponse resource of API Gateway. To set up an integration
request, you create an Integration resource and use it to configure the integration endpoint URL.
You then set the IAM permissions to access the backend, and specify mappings to transform the
incoming request data before passing it to the backend. To set up an integration response for non-proxy
integration, you create an IntegrationResponse resource and use it to set its target method response.
You then configure how to map backend output to the method response.

**Topics**

- Set up an Integration Request in API Gateway (p. 117)
- Set up an Integration Response in API Gateway (p. 123)
- Set up Lambda Integrations in API Gateway (p. 124)
- Set up HTTP Integrations in API Gateway (p. 140)
- Set up API Gateway Private Integrations (p. 144)
- Set up Mock Integrations in API Gateway (p. 150)

**Set up an Integration Request in API Gateway**

To set up an integration request, you perform the following required and optional tasks:

1. Choose an integration type that determines how method request data is passed to the backend.
2. For non-mock integrations, specify an HTTP method and the URI of the targeted integration endpoint,
   except for the MOCK integration.
3. For integrations with Lambda functions and other AWS service actions, set an IAM role with required
   permissions for API Gateway to call the backend on your behalf.
4. For non-proxy integrations, set necessary parameter mappings to map predefined method request
   parameters to appropriate integration request parameters.
5. For non-proxy integrations, set necessary body mappings to map the incoming method request body
   of a given content type according to the specified mapping template.
6. For non-proxy integrations, specify the condition under which the incoming method request data is
   passed through to the backend as-is.
7. Optionally, specify how to handle type conversion for a binary payload.
8. Optionally, declare a cache namespace name and cache key parameters to enable API caching.

Performing these tasks involves creating an Integration resource of API Gateway and setting appropriate
property values. You can do so using the API Gateway console, AWS CLI commands, an AWS SDK, or the
API Gateway REST API.

**Topics**

- Basic Tasks of an API Integration Request (p. 118)
- Choose an API Gateway API Integration Type (p. 119)
- Set up a Proxy Integration with a Proxy Resource (p. 120)
- Set up an API Integration Request Using the API Gateway Console (p. 121)
Basic Tasks of an API Integration Request

An integration request is an HTTP request that API Gateway submits to the backend, passing along the client-submitted request data, and transforming the data, if necessary. The HTTP method (or verb) and URI of the integration request are dictated by the backend (that is, the integration endpoint). They can be the same as or different from the method request's HTTP method and URI, respectively. For example, when a Lambda function returns a file that is fetched from Amazon S3, you can expose this operation intuitively as a GET method request to the client even though the corresponding integration request requires that a POST request be used to invoke the Lambda function. For an HTTP endpoint, it is likely that the method request and the corresponding integration request both use the same HTTP verb. However, this is not required. You can integrate the following method request:

```
GET /{var}?query=value
Host: api.domain.net
```

With the following integration request:

```
POST /
Host: service.domain.com
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: ...

{
    path: "{var}'s value",
    type: "value"
}
```

As an API developer, you can use whatever HTTP verb and URI for a method request suit your requirements. But you must follow the requirements of the integration endpoint. When the method request data differs from the integration request data, you can reconcile the difference by providing mappings from the method request data to the integration request data. In the preceding examples, the mapping translates the path variable ({var}) and the query parameter (query) values of the GET method request to the values of the integration request's payload properties of path and type. Other mappable request data includes request headers and body. These are described in Set up Request and Response Data Mappings Using the API Gateway Console (p. 160).

When setting up the HTTP or HTTP proxy integration request, you assign the backend HTTP endpoint URL as the integration request URI value. For example, in the PetStore API, the method request to get a page of pets has the following integration request URI:

```
http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets
```

When setting up the Lambda or Lambda proxy integration, you assign the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for invoking the Lambda function as the integration request URI value. This ARN has the following format:

```
```

The part after arn:aws:apigateway:api-region:lambda:path/, namely, /2015-03-31/functions/arn:aws:lambda:lambda-region:account-id:function:lambda-function-name/invocations, is the REST API URI path of the Lambda Invoke action. If you use the API Gateway console to set up the Lambda integration, API Gateway creates the ARN and assigns it to the integration URI after prompting you to choose the lambda-function-name from a region.
When setting up the integration request with another AWS service action, the integration request URI is also an ARN, similar to the integration with the Lambda `Invoke` action. For example, for the integration with the `GetBucket` action of Amazon S3, the integration request URI is an ARN of the following format:

```
arn:aws:apigateway:api-region:s3:path/{bucket}
```

The integration request URI is of the path convention to specify the action, where `{bucket}` is the placeholder of a bucket name. Alternatively, an AWS service action can be referenced by its name. Using the action name, the integration request URI for the `GetBucket` action of Amazon S3 becomes the following:

```
```

With the action-based integration request URI, the bucket name (`{bucket}`) must be specified in the integration request body (`{ Bucket: "{bucket}" }`), following the input format of `GetBucket` action.

For AWS integrations, you must also configure credentials to allow API Gateway to call the integrated actions. You can create a new or choose an existing IAM role for API Gateway to call the action and then specify the role using its ARN. The following shows an example of this ARN:

```
ar:n:aws:iam::account-id:role/iam-role-name
```

This IAM role must contain a policy to allow the action to be executed. It must also have API Gateway declared (in the role's trust relationship) as a trusted entity to assume the role. Such permissions can be granted on the action itself. They are known as resource-based permissions. For the Lambda integration, you can call the Lambda's `addPermission` action to set the resource-based permissions and then set credentials to null in the API Gateway integration request.

We discussed the basic integration setup. Advanced settings involve mapping method request data to the integration request data. After discussing the basic setup for an integration response, we cover advanced topics in `Set up Request and Response Data Mappings Using the API Gateway Console` (p. 160), where we also cover passing payload through and handling content encodings.

### Choose an API Gateway API Integration Type

You choose an API integration type according to the types of integration endpoint you work with and how you want data to pass to and from the integration endpoint. For a Lambda function, you can have the Lambda proxy integration, or the Lambda custom integration. For an HTTP endpoint, you can have the HTTP proxy integration or the HTTP custom integration. For an AWS service action, you have the AWS integration of the non-proxy type only. API Gateway also supports the mock integration, where API Gateway serves as an integration endpoint to respond to a method request.

The Lambda custom integration is a special case of the AWS integration, where the integration endpoint corresponds to the `function-invoking action` of the Lambda service.

Programmatically, you choose an integration type by setting the `type` property on the `Integration` resource. For the Lambda proxy integration, the value is `AWS_PROXY`. For the Lambda custom integration and all other AWS integrations, it is `AWS`. For the HTTP proxy integration and HTTP custom integration, the value is `HTTP_PROXY` and `HTTP`, respectively. For the mock integration, the `type` value is `MOCK`.

The Lambda proxy integration supports a streamlined integration setup with a single Lambda function. The setup is simple and can evolve with the backend without having to tear down the existing setup. For these reasons, it is highly recommended for integration with a Lambda function. In contrast, the Lambda custom integration allows for reuse of configured mapping templates for various integration endpoints that have similar requirements of the input and output data formats. The setup is more involved and is recommended for more advanced application scenarios.
Similarly, the HTTP proxy integration has a streamlined integration setup and can evolve with the backend without having to tear down the existing setup. The HTTP custom integration is more involved to set up, but allows for reuse of configured mapping templates for other integration endpoints.

The following list summarizes the supported integration types:

- **AWS**: This type of integration lets an API expose AWS service actions. It is intended for calling all AWS service actions, but is not recommended for calling a Lambda function, because the Lambda custom integration is a legacy technology. With the AWS integration, you must configure both the integration request and integration response and set up necessary data mappings from the method request to the integration request, and from the integration response to the method response.

- **AWS_PROXY**: This type of integration lets an API method be integrated with the Lambda function invocation action with a flexible, versatile, and streamlined integration setup. This integration relies on direct interactions between the client and the integrated Lambda function. With this type of integration, also known as the Lambda proxy integration, you do not set the integration request or the integration response. API Gateway passes the incoming request from the client as the input to the backend Lambda function. The integrated Lambda function takes the input of this format (p. 130) and parses the input from all available sources, including request headers, URL path variables, query string parameters, and applicable body. The function returns the result following this output format (p. 132). This is the preferred integration type to call a Lambda function through API Gateway and is not applicable to any other AWS service actions, including Lambda actions other than the function-invoking action.

- **HTTP**: This type of integration lets an API expose HTTP endpoints in the backend. With the HTTP integration, also known as the HTTP custom integration, you must configure both the integration request and integration response. You must set up necessary data mappings from the method request to the integration request, and from the integration response to the method response.

- **HTTP_PROXY**: The HTTP proxy integration allows a client to access the backend HTTP endpoints with a streamlined integration setup on single API method. You do not set the integration request or the integration response. API Gateway passes the incoming request from the client to the HTTP endpoint and passes the outgoing response from the HTTP endpoint to the client.

- **MOCK**: This type of integration lets API Gateway return a response without sending the request further to the backend. This is useful for API testing because it can be used to test the integration set up without incurring charges for using the backend and to enable collaborative development of an API. In collaborative development, a team can isolate their development effort by setting up simulations of API components owned by other teams by using the MOCK integrations. It is also used to return CORS-related headers to ensure that the API method permits CORS access. In fact, the API Gateway console integrates the OPTIONS method to support CORS with a mock integration. Gateway responses (p. 153) are other examples of mock integrations.

### Set up a Proxy Integration with a Proxy Resource

To set up a proxy integration in an API Gateway API with a proxy integration, you perform the following three tasks:

- Create a proxy resource with a greedy path variable of `{proxy+}`.
- Set the `ANY` method on the proxy resource.
- Integrate the resource and method with a backend using the HTTP or Lambda integration type.

**Note**

Greedy path variables, `ANY` methods, and proxy integration types are independent features, although they are commonly used together. You can configure a specific HTTP method on a greedy resource or apply non-proxy integration types to a proxy resource.

API Gateway enacts certain restrictions and limitations when handling methods with either a Lambda proxy integration or an HTTP proxy integration. For details, see Known Issues (p. 562).
Note
When using proxy integration with a passthrough, API Gateway returns the default Content-Type: application/json header if the content type of a payload is unspecified.

A proxy resource is most powerful when it is integrated with a backend using either the HTTP proxy integration or Lambda proxy integration.

HTTP Proxy Integration with a Proxy Resource

The HTTP proxy integration, designated by HTTP_PROXY in the API Gateway REST API, is for integrating a method request with a backend HTTP endpoint. With this integration type, API Gateway simply passes the entire request and response between the frontend and the backend, subject to certain restrictions and limitations (p. 562).

When applying the HTTP proxy integration to a proxy resource, you can set up your API to expose a portion or an entire endpoint hierarchy of the HTTP backend with a single integration setup. For example, suppose the backend of the website is organized into multiple branches of tree nodes off the root node (/site) as: /site/a0/a1/.../aN, /site/b0/b1/.../bM, etc. If you integrate the ANY method on a proxy resource of /api/{proxy+} with the backend endpoints with URL paths of /site/{proxy}, a single integration request can support any HTTP operations (GET, POST, etc.) on any of [a0, a1, ..., aN, b0, b1, ...bM, ...]. If you apply a proxy integration to a specific HTTP method, for example, GET, instead, the resulting integration request works with the specified (that is, GET) operations on any of those backend nodes.

Lambda Proxy Integration with a Proxy Resource

The Lambda proxy integration, designated by AWS_PROXY in the API Gateway REST API, is for integrating a method request with a Lambda function in the backend. With this integration type, API Gateway applies a default mapping template to send the entire request to the Lambda function and transforms the output from the Lambda function to HTTP responses.

Similarly, you can apply the Lambda proxy integration to a proxy resource of /api/{proxy+} to set up a single integration to have a backend Lambda function react individually to changes in any of the API resources under /api.

Set up an API Integration Request Using the API Gateway Console

An API method setup defines the method and describes its behaviors. To set up a method, you must specify a resource, including the root ("/"), on which the method is exposed, an HTTP method (GET, POST, etc.), and how it will be integrated with the targeted backend. The method request and response specify the contract with the calling app, stipulating which parameters the API can receive and what the response looks like.

The following procedure describes how to use the API Gateway console to specify method settings.

1. In the Resources pane, choose the method.
2. In the Method Execution pane, choose Integration Request. For Integration type, choose one of the following:
   - Choose Lambda Function if your API will be integrated with a Lambda function. At the API level, this is an AWS integration type.
   - Choose HTTP if your API will be integrated with an HTTP endpoint. At the API level, this is the HTTP integration type.
   - Choose AWS Service if your API will be integrated directly with an AWS service. At the API level, this is the AWS integration type. The Lambda Function option above is a special case of the AWS integration for invoking a Lambda function and is available only in the API Gateway console. To
set up an API Gateway API to create a new Lambda function in AWS Lambda, to set a resource permission on the Lambda function, or to perform any other Lambda service actions, you must choose the AWS Service option here.

- Choose Mock if you want API Gateway to act as your backend to return static responses. At the API level, this is the MOCK integration type. Typically, you can use the MOCK integration when your API is not yet final, but you want to generate API responses to unblock dependent teams for testing. For the OPTION method, API Gateway sets the MOCK integration as default to return CORS-enabling headers for the applied API resource. If you choose this option, skip the rest of the instructions in this topic and see Set up Mock Integrations in API Gateway (p. 150).

3. If you chose Lambda Function, do the following:
   1. For Lambda Region, choose the region identifier that corresponds to the region where you created the Lambda function. For example, if you created the Lambda function in the US East (N. Virginia) Region, choose us-east-1. For a list of region names and identifiers, see AWS Lambda in the Amazon Web Services General Reference.
   2. For Lambda Function, type the name of the Lambda function, and then choose the function’s corresponding ARN.
   3. Choose Save.

4. If you chose HTTP, do the following:
   1. For HTTP method, choose the HTTP method type that most closely matches the method in the HTTP backend.
   2. For Endpoint URL, type the URL of the HTTP backend you want this method to use.
   3. Choose Save.

5. If you chose Mock, do the following:
   - Choose Save.

6. If you chose AWS Service, do the following:
   1. For AWS Region, choose the AWS Region you want this method to use to call the action.
   2. For AWS Service, choose the AWS service you want this method to call.
   3. For AWS Subdomain, type the subdomain used by the AWS service. Typically, you would leave this blank. Some AWS services can support subdomains as part of the hosts. Consult the service documentation for the availability and, if available, details.
   4. For HTTP method, choose the HTTP method type that corresponds to the action. For HTTP method type, see the API reference documentation for the AWS service you chose for AWS Service.
   5. For Action, type the action you want to use. For a list of available actions, see the API reference documentation for the AWS service you chose for AWS Service.
   6. For Execution Role, type the ARN of the IAM role that the method will use to call the action.

To create the IAM role, you can adapt the instructions in “To create the Lambda invocation role and its policies” and “To create the Lambda execution role and its policy” in the Create Lambda Functions (p. 27) section. Specify an access policy of the following format, with the desired number of action and resource statements:

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "action-statement"
      ],
      "Resource": [
```
Set up Integration Response

For the action and resource statement syntax, see the documentation for the AWS service you chose for *AWS Service*.

For the IAM role's trust relationship, specify the following, which enables API Gateway to take action on behalf of your AWS account:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [ 
    {
      "Sid": "",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
```

7. If the action you typed for **Action** provides a custom resource path that you want this method to use, for **Path Override**, type this custom resource path. For the custom resource path, see the API reference documentation for the AWS service you chose for *AWS Service*.

8. Choose **Save**.

---

**Set up an Integration Response in API Gateway**

For a non-proxy integration, you must set up at least one integration response, and make it the default response, to pass the result returned from the backend to the client. You can choose to pass through the result as-is or to transform the integration response data to the method response data if the two have different formats.

For a proxy integration, API Gateway automatically passes the backend output to the client as an HTTP response. You do not set either an integration response or a method response.

To set up an integration response, you perform the following required and optional tasks:

1. Specify an HTTP status code of a method response to which the integration response data is mapped. This is required.
2. Define a regular expression to select backend output to be represented by this integration response. If you leave this empty, the response is the default response that is used to catch any response not yet configured.
3. If needed, declare mappings consisting of key-value pairs to map specified integration response parameters to given method response parameters.
4. If needed, add body-mapping templates to transform given integration response payloads into specified method response payloads.
5. If needed, specify how to handle type conversion for a binary payload.

An integration response is an HTTP response encapsulating the backend response. For an HTTP endpoint, the backend response is an HTTP response. The integration response status code can take the
backend-returned status code, and the integration response body is the backend-returned payload. For a Lambda endpoint, the backend response is the output returned from the Lambda function. With the Lambda integration, the Lambda function output is returned as a 200 OK response. The payload can contain the result as JSON data, including a JSON string or a JSON object, or an error message as a JSON object. You can assign a regular expression to the SelectionPattern property to map an error response to an appropriate HTTP error response. For more information about the Lambda function error response, see Handle Lambda Errors in API Gateway (p. 136). With the Lambda proxy integration, the Lambda function must return output of the following format:

```
{
  statusCode: "...",            // a valid HTTP status code
  headers: {
    custom-header: "...",      // any API-specific custom header
  },
  body: "...",                  // a JSON string.
  isBase64Encoded: true|false   // for binary support
}
```

There is no need to map the Lambda function response to its proper HTTP response.

To return the result to the client, set up the integration response to pass the endpoint response through as-is to the corresponding method response. Or you can map the endpoint response data to the method response data. The response data that can be mapped includes the response status code, response header parameters, and response body. If no method response is defined for the returned status code, API Gateway returns a 500 error. For more information, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162).

## Set up Lambda Integrations in API Gateway

You can integrate an API method with a Lambda function using the Lambda proxy integration or the Lambda custom integration.

With the proxy integration, the setup is simple. If your API does not require content encoding or caching, you only need to set the integration's HTTP method to POST, the integration endpoint URI to the ARN of the Lambda function invocation action of a specific Lambda function, and the credential to an IAM role with permissions to allow API Gateway to call the Lambda function on your behalf.

With the custom integration, the setup is more involved. In addition to the proxy integration setup steps, you also specify how the incoming request data is mapped to the integration request and how the resulting integration response data is mapped to the method response.

### Topics
- Set up Lambda Proxy Integrations in API Gateway (p. 124)
- Set up Lambda Custom Integrations in API Gateway (p. 133)
- Handle Lambda Errors in API Gateway (p. 136)

## Set up Lambda Proxy Integrations in API Gateway

### Topics
- Understand the API Gateway Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 125)
- Set up a Proxy Resource with the Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 126)
- Set up Lambda Proxy Integration Using the AWS CLI (p. 127)
- Input Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 130)
- Output Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 132)
Understand the API Gateway Lambda Proxy Integration

The Lambda proxy integration of API Gateway is a simple, powerful, and nimble mechanism to build an API with a setup of a single API method. The Lambda proxy integration allows the client to call a single Lambda function in the backend. The function accesses many resources or features of other AWS services, including calling other Lambda functions.

With the Lambda proxy integration, when a client submits an API request, API Gateway passes to the integrated Lambda function the raw request as-is. This request data includes the request headers, query string parameters, URL path variables, payload, and API configuration data. The configuration data can include current deployment stage name, stage variables, user identity, or authorization context (if any). The backend Lambda function parses the incoming request data to determine the response that it returns. For API Gateway to pass the Lambda output as the API response to the client, the Lambda function must return the result in this format.

Because API Gateway doesn't intervene very much between the client and the backend Lambda function for the Lambda proxy integration, the client and the integrated Lambda function can adapt to changes in each other without breaking the existing integration setup of the API. To enable this, the client must follow application protocols enacted by the backend Lambda function.

You can set up a Lambda proxy integration for any API method. But a Lambda proxy integration is more potent when it is configured for an API method involving a generic proxy resource. The generic proxy resource can be denoted by a special templated path variable of {proxy+}, the catch-all ANY method placeholder, or both. The client can pass the input to the backend Lambda function in the incoming request as request parameters or applicable payload. The request parameters include headers, URL path variables, query string parameters, and the applicable payload. The integrated Lambda function verifies all of the input sources before processing the request and responding to the client with meaningful error messages if any of the required input is missing.

When calling an API method integrated with the generic HTTP method of ANY and the generic resource of {proxy+}, the client submits a request with a particular HTTP method in place of ANY. The client also specifies a particular URL path instead of {proxy+}, and includes any required headers, query string parameters, or an applicable payload.

The following list summarizes runtime behaviors of different API methods with the Lambda proxy integration:

- **ANY /{proxy+}**: The client must choose a particular HTTP method, must set a particular resource path hierarchy, and can set any headers, query string parameters, and applicable payload to pass the data as input to the integrated Lambda function.
- **ANY /res**: The client must choose a particular HTTP method and can set any headers, query string parameters, and applicable payload to pass the data as input to the integrated Lambda function.
- **GET|POST|PUT|... /{proxy+}**: The client can set a particular resource path hierarchy, any headers, query string parameters, and applicable payload to pass the data as input to the integrated Lambda function.
- **GET|POST|PUT|... /res/{path}/...**: The client must choose a particular path segment (for the {path} variable) and can set any request headers, query string parameters, and applicable payload to pass input data to the integrated Lambda function.
- **GET|POST|PUT|... /res**: The client can choose any request headers, query string parameters, and applicable payload to pass input data to the integrated Lambda function.

Both the proxy resource of {proxy+} and the custom resource of {custom} are expressed as templated path variables. However {proxy+} can refer to any resource along a path hierarchy, while {custom} refers to a particular path segment only. For example, a grocery store might organize its online product inventory by department names, produce categories, and product types. The grocery store's website can then represent available products by the following templated path variables of custom resources: /
{department}/{produce-category}/{product-type}. For example, apples are represented by /produce/fruit/apple and carrots by /produce/vegetables/carrot. It can also use {proxy+} to represent any department, any produce category, or any product type that a customer can search for while shopping in the online store. For example, {proxy+} can refer to any of the following items:

- /produce
- /produce/fruit
- /produce/vegetables/carrot

To let customers search for any available product, its produce category, and the associated store department, you can expose a single method of GET {proxy+} with read-only permissions. Similarly, to allow a supervisor to update the produce department's inventory, you can set up another single method of PUT /produce/{proxy+} with read/write permissions. To allow a cashier to update the running total of a vegetable, you can set up a POST /produce/vegetables/{proxy+} method with read/write permissions. To let a store manager perform any possible action on any available product, the online store developer can expose the ANY {proxy+} method with read/write permissions. In any case, at run time, the customer or the employee must select a particular product of a given type in a chosen department, a specific produce category in a chosen department, or a specific department.

For more information about setting up the API Gateway proxy integrations, see Set up a Proxy Integration with a Proxy Resource (p. 120).

The proxy integration requires that the client have more detailed knowledge of the backend requirements. Therefore, to ensure optimal app performance and user experience, the backend developer must communicate clearly to the client developer the requirements of the backend, and provide a robust error feedback mechanism when the requirements are not met.

Set up a Proxy Resource with the Lambda Proxy Integration

To set up a proxy resource with the Lambda proxy integration type, create an API resource with a greedy path parameter (for example, /parent/{proxy+}) and integrate this resource with a Lambda function backend (for example, arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:SimpleLambda4ProxyResource) on the ANY method. The greedy path parameter must be at the end of the API resource path. As with a non-proxy resource, you can set up the proxy resource by using the API Gateway console, importing a Swagger definition file, or calling the API Gateway REST API directly.

For detailed instructions about using the API Gateway console to configure a proxy resource with the Lambda proxy integration, see Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Proxy Integration (p. 18).

The following Swagger API definition file shows an example of an API with a proxy resource that is integrated with the SimpleLambda4ProxyResource (p. 19) Lambda function.

```json
{
    "swagger": "2.0",
    "info": {
        "version": "2016-09-12T17:50:37Z",
        "title": "ProxyIntegrationWithLambda"
    },
    "host": "gy415nuibc.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
    "basePath": "/testStage",
    "schemes": ["https"],
    "paths": {
        "/{proxy+}": {
            "x-amazon-apigateway-any-method": {
                "produces": [
                    "application/json"
                ]
            }
        }
    }
}
```
With the Lambda proxy integration, at run time, API Gateway maps an incoming request into the input event parameter of the Lambda function. The input includes the request method, path, headers, any query parameters, any payload, associated context, and any defined stage variables. The input format is explained in Input Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 130). For API Gateway to map the Lambda output to HTTP responses successfully, the Lambda function must output the result in the format described in Output Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 132).

With the Lambda proxy integration of a proxy resource through the ANY method, the single backend Lambda function serves as the event handler for all requests through the proxy resource. For example, to log traffic patterns, you can have a mobile device send its location information of state, city, street, and building by submitting a request with /state/city/street/house in the URL path for the proxy resource. The backend Lambda function can then parse the URL path and insert the location tuples into a DynamoDB table.

**Set up Lambda Proxy Integration Using the AWS CLI**

In this section, we show how to use AWS CLI to set up an API with the Lambda proxy integration.

As an example, we use the following sample Lambda function as the backend of the API:

```javascript
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
  console.log('Received event:', JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
  var res = {
    "statusCode": 200,
    "headers": {
      "Content-Type": "*/*
    }
  };
  var greeter = 'World';
  if (event.greeter && event.greeter!=='') {
    greeter = event.greeter;
  }
  callback(null, {
    "statusCode": 200,
    "headers": {
      "Content-Type": "*/*
    }
  });
};
```
Comparing this to the Lambda custom integration setup (p. 133), the input to this Lambda function can be expressed in the request parameters and body. You have more latitude to allow the client to pass the same input data. Here, the client can pass the greeter's name in as a query string parameter, a header, or a body property. The function can also support the Lambda custom integration. The API setup is simpler. You do not configure the method response or integration response at all.

To set up a Lambda proxy integration using the AWS CLI

1. Call the create-rest-api command to create an API:

   ```bash
   aws apigateway create-rest-api --name 'HelloWorld (AWS CLI)' --region us-west-2
   ```

   Note the resulting API's id value (te6si5ach7) in the response:

   ```json
   {
   "name": "HelloWorldProxy (AWS CLI)",
   "id": "te6si5ach7",
   "createdDate": 1508461860
   }
   ```

   You need the API id throughout this section.

2. Call the get-resources command to get the root resource id:

   ```bash
   aws apigateway get-resources --rest-api-id te6si5ach7 --region us-west-2
   ```

   The successful response is shown as follows:

   ```json
   {
   "items": [
   {
   "path": "/",
   "id": "krznpq9xpg"
   }
   ]
   }
   ```

   Note the root resource id value (krznpq9xpg). You need it in the next step and later.

3. Call create-resource to create an API Gateway Resource of /greeting:

   ```bash
   aws apigateway create-resource --rest-api-id te6si5ach7 --region us-west-2 --parent-id krznpq9xpg
   ```
---path-part greeting

The successful response is similar to the following:

```json
{
  "path": "/(proxy+)",
  "pathPart": "/(proxy+)",
  "id": "2jf6xt",
  "parentId": "krznpq9xpg"
}
```

Note the resulting (proxy+) resource's id value (2jf6xt). You need it to create a method on the / (proxy+) resource in the next step.

4. Call `put-method` to create an ANY method request of ANY /{proxy+}:

```bash
aws apigateway put-method --rest-api-id te6si5ach7 \
  --region us-west-2 \
  --resource-id 2jf6xt \
  --http-method ANY \
  --authorization-type "NONE"
```

The successful response is similar to the following:

```json
{
  "apiKeyRequired": false,
  "httpMethod": "ANY",
  "authorizationType": "NONE"
}
```

This API method allows the client to receive or send greetings from the Lambda function at the backend.

5. Call `put-integration` to set up the integration of the ANY /{proxy+} method with a Lambda function, named `HelloWorld`. This function responds to the request with a message of "Hello, {name}!", if the greeter parameter is provided, or "Hello, World!", if the query string parameter is not set.

```bash
aws apigateway put-integration \
  --region us-west-2 \
  --rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
  --http-method ANY \
  --type AWS \
  --integration-http-method POST \
  --credentials arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole
```

For Lambda integrations, you must use the HTTP method of POST for the integration request. The IAM role of `apigAwsProxyRole` must have policies allowing the `apigateway` service to invoke Lambda functions. For more information about the IAM permissions, see the section called "API Gateway Permissions Model for Creating and Managing an API" (p. 239).

The successful output is similar to the following:

```json
{
  "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
  "cacheKeyParameters": []
}
```
Instead of supplying an IAM role for credentials, you can call the `add-permission` command to add resource-based permissions. This is what the API Gateway console does.

6. Call `create-deployment` to deploy the API to a test stage:

```bash
curl -X GET 'https://te6si5ach7.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/greeting?greeter=jane' \
-H 'Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key/20171020/us-west-2/execute-api/aws4_request, \ 
   SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=f327...5751'
```

7. Test the API using the following cURL commands in a terminal.

Calling the API with the query string parameter of `?greeter=jane`:

```bash
curl -X GET https://te6si5ach7.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/hi \
-H 'Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key/20171020/us-west-2/execute-api/aws4_request, \ 
   SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=f327...5751' \
-H 'Content-Type: application/json' \
-H 'Greeter: jane'
```

Calling the API with a header parameter of `Greeter:jane`:

```bash
curl -X POST https://te6si5ach7.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test \
-H 'Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key/20171020/us-west-2/execute-api/aws4_request, \ 
   SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=f327...5751' \
   -d '{ "Greeter": "jane" }'
```

In all the cases, the output is a 200 response with the following response body:

```
Hello, jane!
```

**Input Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration**

With the Lambda proxy integration, API Gateway maps the entire client request to the input event parameter of the backend Lambda function as follows:

```json
{
   "resource": "Resource path",
   "path": "Path parameter",
   "httpMethod": "Incoming request's method name"
}
```
"headers": {Incoming request headers}
"queryStringParameters": {query string parameters }
"pathParameters": {path parameters}
"stageVariables": {Applicable stage variables}
"requestContext": {Request context, including authorizer-returned key-value pairs}
"body": "A JSON string of the request payload."
"isBase64Encoded": "A boolean flag to indicate if the applicable request payload is Base64-encoded"

We illustrate this using the following POST request to show an API deployed to testStage with a stage variable of stageVariableName=stageVariableValue:

POST /testStage/hello/world?name=me HTTP/1.1
Host: gy415nuibc.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
headerName: headerValue

{
    "a": 1
}

This request produces the following response payload, which contains the output returned from the backend Lambda function, where input was set to the event parameter to the Lambda function.

{
    "message": "Hello me!",
    "input": {
        "resource": "/{proxy+}",
        "path": "/hello/world",
        "httpMethod": "POST",
        "headers": {
            "Accept": "*/*",
            "Accept-Encoding": "gzip, deflate",
            "cache-control": "no-cache",
            "CloudFront-Forwarded-Proto": "https",
            "CloudFront-Is-Desktop-Viewer": "true",
            "CloudFront-Is-Mobile-Viewer": "false",
            "CloudFront-Is-SmartTV-Viewer": "false",
            "CloudFront-Is-Tablet-Viewer": "false",
            "CloudFront-Viewer-Country": "US",
            "Content-Type": "application/json",
            "headerName": "headerValue",
            "Host": "gy415nuibc.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "Postman-Token": "9f583ef0-eb9ce3f7a57f",
            "User-Agent": "PostmanRuntime/2.4.5",
            "Via": "1.1 d98420743a69852491bbdea73f7680bd.cloudfront.net (CloudFront)",
            "X-Amzn-Cf-Id": "pn-FWIJo6tYnZm5P0NMgOqULdStt1ogdeJKy8tqsg81S_sgnKDA==",
            "X-Forwarded-For": "54.240.196.186, 54.182.214.83",
            "X-Forwarded-Port": "443",
            "X-Forwarded-Proto": "https"
        },
        "queryStringParameters": {
            "name": "me"
        },
        "pathParameters": {
            "proxy": "hello/world"
        },
        "stageVariables": {
            "stageVariableName": "stageVariableValue"
        },
        "requestContext": {
            "accountId": "12345678912",
            "resourceId": "12345678912",
            "stage": "testStage",
            "stageArn": "arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:12345678912:...",
            "requestId": "12345678912",
            "identity": {
                "accountId": "12345678912",
                "anonymizedId": "a12345678912",
                "callerArn": "arn:aws:iam::12345678912:...",
                "principalId": "A12345678912",
                "sourceIp": "123.45.67.89",
                "userAgent": "User-Agent: PostmanRuntime/2.4.5",
                "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::12345678912:...",
                "userPrincipalId": "A12345678912"
            }
        }
    }
}
In the input to Lambda, the requestContext object is a map of key-value pairs. The key is a property name of the $context (p. 189) variable and the value is the property value of the corresponding $context variable. API Gateway may add new keys to the map. Depending on the features enabled, the requestContext map may vary from API to API. For example, in the preceding example, $context.authorizer.* properties are absent because no custom authorizer is enabled for the API.

Note
API Gateway enacts certain restrictions and limitations when handling methods with either Lambda proxy integration or HTTP proxy integration. For details, see Known Issues (p. 562).

Output Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration

With the Lambda proxy integration, API Gateway requires the backend Lambda function to return output according to the following JSON format:

```json
{
"isBase64Encoded": true|false,
"statusCode": httpStatusCode,
"headers": { "headerName": "headerValue", ... },
"body": "..."
}
```

In the output, headers can be unspecified if no extra response headers are to be returned. To enable CORS for the Lambda proxy integration, you must add Access-Control-Allow-Origin: domain-name to the output headers. domain-name can be * for any domain name. The output body is marshalled to the frontend as the method response payload. If body is a binary blob, you can encode it as a Base64-encoded string and set isBase64Encoded to true. Otherwise, you can set it to false or leave it unspecified.

If the function output is of a different format, API Gateway returns a 502 Bad Gateway error response.

In a Lambda function in Node.js, to return a successful response, call callback(null, {"statusCode": 200, "body": "results"}). To throw an exception, call callback(new Error('internal server error')). For a client-side error (if, for example, a required parameter is missing), you can call callback(null, {"statusCode": 400, "body": "Missing parameters of ..."}) to return the error without throwing an exception.
Set up Lambda Custom Integrations in API Gateway

To show how to set up the Lambda custom integration, we create an API Gateway API to expose the GET /greeting?greeter={name} method to invoke a Lambda function. The function responds with a message of "Hello, {name}!" if the greeter parameter value is a non-empty string. It returns a message of "Hello, World!" if the greeter value is an empty string. The function returns an error message of "Missing the required greeter parameter." if the greeter parameter is not set in the incoming request. We name the function HelloWorld.

For reference, a Node.js version of the Lambda function is shown as follows:

```javascript
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
  var res ={
"statusCode": 200,
"headers": {
  "Content-Type": "*/*
}
};
if (event.greeter==null) {
  callback(new Error('Missing the required greeter parameter.'));
} else if (event.greeter === "") {
  res.body = "Hello, World"
  callback(null, res);
} else {
  res.body = "Hello, " + event.greeter +"!"
  callback(null, res);
}
}
```

You can create it in the Lambda console or by using the AWS CLI. In this section, we reference this function using the following ARN:

```
arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:HelloWorld
```

With the Lambda function set in the backend, proceed to set up the API.

To set up the Lambda custom integration using the AWS CLI

1. Call the create-rest-api command to create an API:

```
aws apigateway create-rest-api --name 'HelloWorld (AWS CLI)' --region us-west-2
```

Note the resulting API's id value (te6si5ach7) in the response:

```
{
  "name": "HelloWorld (AWS CLI)",
  "id": "te6si5ach7",
  "createdDate": 1508461860
}
```

You need the API id throughout this section.

2. Call the get-resources command to get the root resource id:

```
aws apigateway get-resources --rest-api-id te6si5ach7 --region us-west-2
```

The successful response is as follows:
Note the root resource id value (krznpq9xpg). You need it in the next step and later.

3. Call create-resource to create an API Gateway Resource of /greeting:

```
aws apigateway create-resource --rest-api-id te6si5ach7
    --region us-west-2
    --parent-id krznpq9xpg
    --path-part greeting
```

The successful response is similar to the following:

```
{
    "path": "/greeting",
    "pathPart": "greeting",
    "id": "2jf6xt",
    "parentId": "krznpq9xpg"
}
```

Note the resulting greeting resource's id value (2jf6xt). You need it to create a method on the /greeting resource in the next step.

4. Call put-method to create an API method request of GET /greeting?greeter={name}:

```
aws apigateway put-method --rest-api-id te6si5ach7
    --region us-west-2
    --resource-id 2jf6xt
    --http-method GET
    --authorization-type "NONE"
    --request-parameters method.request.querystring.greeter=false
```

The successful response is similar to the following:

```
{
    "apiKeyRequired": false,
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "authorizationType": "NONE",
    "requestParameters": {
        "method.request.querystring.greeter": false
    }
}
```

This API method allows the client to receive a greeting from the Lambda function at the backend. The greeter parameter is optional because the backend should handle either an anonymous caller or a self-identified caller.

5. Call put-method-response to set up the 200 OK response to the method request of GET /greeting?greeter={name}:

```
aws apigateway put-method-response
    --region us-west-2
```

134
```
--rest-api-id te6si5ach7 \
--resource-id 2jf6xt \
--http-method GET \
--status-code 200
```

6. Call `put-integration` to set up the integration of the GET `/greeting?greeter={name}` method with a Lambda function, named `HelloWorld`. The function responds to the request with a message of "Hello, {name}!", if the `greeter` parameter is provided, or "Hello, World!", if the query string parameter is not set.

```
aws apigateway put-integration \
--region us-west-2 \
--rest-api-id vaz7da96z6 \
--resource-id 2jf6xt \
--http-method GET \
--type AWS \
--integration-http-method POST \
--request-templates file://path/to/integration-request-template.json \
--credentials arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole
```

Here, the `request-template` parameter value, `file://path/to/integration-request-template.json`, points to a JSON file, named `integration-request-template.json` in the `path/to` directory, which contains a key-value map as a JSON object. The key is a media type of the request payload and the value is a mapping template for the body of the specified content type. In this example, the JSON file contains the following JSON object:

```
{"application/json":"{"greeter":"$input.params('greeter')"}"
```

The mapping template supplied here translates the `greeter` query string parameter to the `greeter` property of the JSON payload. This is necessary because input to a Lambda function in the Lambda function must be expressed in the body. You could use JSON string of the map (for example, "{"greeter":"'john'"}") as the `request-template` input value to the `put-integration` command. However, using the file input avoids the difficult, and sometimes impossible, quote-escaping that is required to stringify a JSON object.

For Lambda integrations, you must use the HTTP method of `POST` for the integration request, according to the specification of the Lambda service action for function invocations. The `uri` parameter is the ARN of the function-invoking action.

The successful output is similar to the following:

```
{
    "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
    "cacheKeyParameters": [],
    "httpMethod": "POST",
    "requestTemplates": {
        "application/json": "{"greeter":"$input.params('greeter')"}"
    },
    "cacheNamespace": "krznpq9xpg",
    "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
    "type": "AWS"
}
```

The IAM role of `apigAwsProxyRole` must have policies that allow the `apigateway` service to invoke Lambda functions. Instead of supplying an IAM role for `credentials`, you can call the add-
permission command to add resource-based permissions. This is how the API Gateway console adds these permissions.

7. Call put-integration-response to set up the integration response to pass the Lambda function output to the client as the 200 OK method response.

```bash
aws apigateway put-integration-response
   --region us-west-2
   --rest-api-id te6si5ach7
   --resource-id 2jf6xt
   --http-method GET
   --status-code 200
   --selection-pattern ""
```

By setting the selection-pattern to an empty string, the 200 OK response is the default.

The successful response should be similar to the following:

```json
{
  "selectionPattern": ",",
  "statusCode": "200"
}
```

8. Call create-deployment to deploy the API to a test stage:

```bash
aws apigateway create-deployment --rest-api-id te6si5ach7 --stage-name test
```

9. Test the API using the following cURL command in a terminal:

```bash
curl -X GET 'https://te6si5ach7.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/greeting?greeter=me'
   -H 'authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={access_key}/20171020/us-west-2/execute-api/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=f327...5751'
```

Compared to the setup for the Lambda proxy integration (p. 127), it is much more involved to set up a Lambda custom integration.

### Handle Lambda Errors in API Gateway

For Lambda custom integrations, you must map errors returned by Lambda in the integration response to standard HTTP error responses for your clients. Otherwise, Lambda errors are returned as 200 OK responses by default and the result is not intuitive for your API users.

There are two types of errors that Lambda can return: standard errors and custom errors. In your API, you must handle these differently.

With the Lambda proxy integration, Lambda is required to return an output of the following format:

```json
{
   "isBase64Encoded" : "boolean",
   "statusCode": "number",
   "headers": { ... },
   "body": "JSON string"
}
```

In this output, statusCode is typically 4XX for a client error and 5XX for a server error. API Gateway handles these errors by mapping the Lambda error to an HTTP error response, according to the specified
statusCode. For API Gateway to pass the error type (for example, InvalidParameterException), as part of the response to the client, the Lambda function must include a header (for example, "X-Amzn-ErrorType":"InvalidParameterException") in the headers property.

**Topics**
- Handle Standard Lambda Errors in API Gateway (p. 137)
- Handle Custom Lambda Errors in API Gateway (p. 139)

### Handle Standard Lambda Errors in API Gateway

A standard AWS Lambda error has the following format:

```
{
  "errorMessage": "<replaceable>string</replaceable>",
  "errorType": "<replaceable>string</replaceable>",
  "stackTrace": [
    "<replaceable>string</replaceable>",
    ...
  ]
}
```

Here, errorMessage is a string expression of the error. The errorType is a language-dependent error or exception type. The stackTrace is a list of string expressions showing the stack trace leading to the occurrence of the error.

For example, consider the following JavaScript Lambda function (Node.js 4.3 and later).

```javascript
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
  callback(new Error("Malformed input ..."));
};
```

This function returns the following standard Lambda error, containing Malformed input ... as the error message:

```
{
  "errorMessage": "Malformed input ...",
  "errorType": "Error",
  "stackTrace": [
    "exports.handler (/var/task/index.js:3:14)"
  ]
}
```

Similarly, consider the following Python Lambda function, which raises an Exception with the same Malformed input ... error message.

```python
def lambda_handler(event, context):
  raise Exception('Malformed input ...')
```

This function returns the following standard Lambda error:

```
{
  "stackTrace": [
    ["/var/task/lambda_function.py", 3, "lambda_handler",
```

137
"raise Exception('Malformed input ...')"
]
],
"errorType": "Exception",
"errorMessage": "Malformed input ..."
}

Note that the `errorType` and `stackTrace` property values are language-dependent. The standard error also applies to any error object that is an extension of the `Error` object or a subclass of the `Exception` class.

To map the standard Lambda error to a method response, you must first decide on an HTTP status code for a given Lambda error. You then set a regular expression pattern on the `selectionPattern` property of the `IntegrationResponse` associated with the given HTTP status code. In the API Gateway console, this `selectionPattern` is denoted as Lambda Error Regex in the Integration Response configuration editor.

For example, to set up a new `selectionPattern` expression, using AWS CLI, call the following `put-integration-response` command:

```
aws apigateway put-integration-response --rest-api-id z0vprf0mdh --resource-id x3o5ih -- http-method GET --status-code 400 --selection-pattern "Invalid*" --region us-west-2
```

Make sure that you also set up the corresponding error code (400) on the method request. Otherwise, API Gateway throws an invalid configuration error response at runtime.

At runtime, API Gateway matches the error message against the pattern of the regular expression on the `selectionPattern` property. When there is a match, API Gateway returns the Lambda error as an HTTP response of the corresponding HTTP status code. If there is no match, API Gateway returns the error as a default response or throws an invalid configuration exception if no default response is configured.

**Note**

Setting the `selectionPattern` value to `.*` for a given response amounts to resetting this response as the default response. This is because such a selection pattern will match all error messages, including null, i.e., any unspecified error message. The resulting mapping overrides the default mapping.

To update an existing `selectionPattern` value using the API Gateway REST API, call the `integrationresponse:update` operation to replace the `/selectionPattern` path value with the specified regex expression of the `Malformed*` pattern.

```
PATCH /restapis/z0vprf0mdh/resources/x3o5ih/methods/GET/integration/responses/400 HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170513T044831Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170513/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=4b4e4881a727bc999799be5110facf7ec81d025afciac4386cf440b4efc80de
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: 04794263-29f2-f336-fa16-5653a7f3281d

{
  "patchOperations" : [ {
    "op" : "replace",
    "path" : "/selectionPattern",
    "value" : "Malformed*"
  } ]
}
```
To set the selectionPattern expression using the API Gateway console, type the expression in the **Lambda Error Regex** text box when setting up or updating an integration response of a specified HTTP status code.

**Handle Custom Lambda Errors in API Gateway**

Instead of the standard error described in the preceding section, AWS Lambda allows you to return a custom error object as JSON string. The error can be any valid JSON object. For example, the following JavaScript Lambda function (Node.js 4.3 or later) returns a custom error:

```javascript
exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
  ...  // Error caught here:
  var myErrorObj = {
    errorType : "InternalServerError",
    httpStatus : 500,
    requestId : context.awsRequestId,
    trace : {
      "function": "abc()",
      "line": 123,
      "file": "abc.js"
    }
  }
  callback(JSON.stringify(myErrorObj));
};
```

You must turn the `myErrorObj` object into a JSON string before calling `callback` to exit the function. Otherwise, the `myErrorObj` is returned as a string of \"[object Object]\". When a method of your API is integrated with the preceding Lambda function, API Gateway receives an integration response with the following payload:

```
{
  "errorMessage": "{\"errorType\":\"InternalServerError\",\"httpStatus\":500,\"requestId\":\"e5849002-39a0-11e7-a419-5bb5807c9fb2\",\"trace\":{\"function\":\"abc()\",\"line\":123,\"file\":\"abc.js\"}}"
}
```

As with any integration response, you can pass through this error response as-is to the method response. Or you can have a body-mapping template to transform the payload into a different format. For example, consider the following body-mapping template for a method response of 500 status code:

```json
{
  errorMessage: $input.path('$.errorMessage');
}
```

This template translates the integration response body that contains the custom error JSON string to the following method response body. This method response body contains the custom error JSON object:

```json
{
  "errorMessage" : {
    errorType : "InternalServerError",
    httpStatus : 500,
    requestId : context.awsRequestId,
    trace : {
      "function": "abc()",
      "line": 123,
      "file": "abc.js"
    }
  }
}
```
Depending on your API requirements, you may need to pass some or all of the custom error properties as method response header parameters. You can achieve this by applying the custom error mappings from the integration response body to the method response headers.

For example, the following Swagger extension defines a mapping from the `errorMessage.errorType`, `errorMessage.httpStatus`, `errorMessage.trace.function`, and `errorMessage.trace` properties to the `error_type`, `error_status`, `error_trace_function`, and `error_trace` headers, respectively.

```
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "responses": {
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200",
      "responseParameters": {
        "method.response.header.error_trace_function": "integration.response.body.errorMessage.trace.function",
        "method.response.header.error_status": "integration.response.body.errorMessage.httpStatus",
        "method.response.header.error_type": "integration.response.body.errorMessage.errorType",
        "method.response.header.error_trace": "integration.response.body.errorMessage.trace"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

At runtime, API Gateway deserializes the `integration.response.body` parameter when performing header mappings. However, this deserialization applies only to body-to-header mappings for Lambda custom error responses and does not apply to body-to-body mappings using $input.body. With these custom-error-body-to-header mappings, the client receives the following headers as part of the method response, provided that the `error_status`, `error_trace`, `error_trace_function`, and `error_type` headers are declared in the method request.

```
"error_status":"500",
"error_trace":"{"function":"abc()","line":123,"file":"abc.js"}",
"error_trace_function":"abc()",
"error_type":"InternalServerError"
```

The `errorMessage.trace` property of the integration response body is a complex property. It is mapped to the `error_trace` header as a JSON string.

**Set up HTTP Integrations in API Gateway**

You can integrate an API method with an HTTP endpoint using the HTTP proxy integration or the HTTP custom integration.

With the proxy integration, the setup is simple. You only need to set the HTTP method and the HTTP endpoint URI, according to the backend requirements, if you are not concerned with content encoding or caching.

With the custom integration, the setup is more involved. In addition to the proxy integration setup steps, you need to specify how the incoming request data is mapped to the integration request and how the resulting integration response data is mapped to the method response.

**Topics**
- Set up HTTP Proxy Integrations in API Gateway (p. 141)
- Set up HTTP Custom Integrations in API Gateway (p. 144)
Set up HTTP Proxy Integrations in API Gateway

To set up a proxy resource with the HTTP proxy integration type, create an API resource with a greedy path parameter (for example, /parent/{proxy+}) and integrate this resource with an HTTP backend endpoint (for example, https://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/{proxy}) on the ANY method. The greedy path parameter must be at the end of the resource path.

As with a non-proxy resource, you can set up a proxy resource with the HTTP proxy integration by using the API Gateway console, importing a Swagger definition file, or calling the API Gateway REST API directly. For detailed instructions about using the API Gateway console to configure a proxy resource with the HTTP integration, see Build an API with HTTP Proxy Integration (p. 37).

The following Swagger API definition file shows an example of an API with a proxy resource that is integrated with the PetStore website.

```json
{
  "swagger": "2.0",
  "info": {
    "version": "2016-09-12T23:19:28Z",
    "title": "PetStoreWithProxyResource"
  },
  "host": "4z9giyi2c1.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
  "basePath": "/test",
  "schemes": ["https"],
  "paths": {
    "/{proxy+}": {
      "x-amazon-apigateway-any-method": {
        "produces": ["application/json"],
        "parameters": [
          {
            "name": "proxy",
            "in": "path",
            "required": true,
            "type": "string"
          }
        ],
        "responses": {},
        "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
          "responses": {
            "default": {
              "statusCode": "200"
            }
          },
          "requestParameters": {
            "integration.request.path.proxy": "method.request.path.proxy"
          },
          "uri": "http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/{proxy}",
          "passThroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
          "httpMethod": "ANY",
          "cacheNamespace": "rbftud",
          "cacheKeyParameters": {
            "method.request.path.proxy"
          },
          "type": "http_proxy"
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```
In this example, a cache key is declared on the `method.request.path.proxy` path parameter of the proxy resource. This is the default setting when you create the API using the API Gateway console. The API's base path (/test, corresponding to a stage) is mapped to the website's PetStore page (/petstore). The single integration request mirrors the entire PetStore website using the API's greedy path variable and the catch-all ANY method. The following examples illustrate this mirroring.

- **Set ANY as GET and \(\{proxy+\}\) as pets**

  Method request initiated from the frontend:

  ```
  GET https://4z9giyi2c1.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets HTTP/1.1
  ```

  Integration request sent to the backend:

  ```
  GET http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets HTTP/1.1
  ```

  The run-time instances of the ANY method and proxy resource are both valid. The call returns a 200 OK response with the payload containing the first batch of pets, as returned from the backend.

- **Set ANY as GET and \(\{proxy+\}\) as pets?type=dog**

  GET https://4z9giyi2c1.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets?type=dog HTTP/1.1

  Integration request sent to the backend:

  ```
  GET http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets?type=dog HTTP/1.1
  ```

  The run-time instances of the ANY method and proxy resource are both valid. The call returns a 200 OK response with the payload containing the first batch of specified dogs, as returned from the backend.

- **Set ANY as GET and \(\{proxy+\}\) as pets/{petId}**

  Method request initiated from the frontend:

  ```
  GET https://4z9giyi2c1.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets/1 HTTP/1.1
  ```

  Integration request sent to the backend:

  ```
  GET http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/1 HTTP/1.1
  ```

  The run-time instances of the ANY method and proxy resource are both valid. The call returns a 200 OK response with the payload containing the specified pet, as returned from the backend.

- **Set ANY as POST and \(\{proxy+\}\) as pets**

  Method request initiated from the frontend:

  ```
  POST https://4z9giyi2c1.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets HTTP/1.1
  Content-Type: application/json
  Content-Length: ...

  {
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 1001.00
  }
  ```
Integration request sent to the backend:

```python
POST http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets HTTP/1.1
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: ...

{
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 1001.00
}
```

The run-time instances of the ANY method and proxy resource are both valid. The call returns a 200 OK response with the payload containing the newly created pet, as returned from the backend.

- **Set ANY as GET and {proxy+} as pets/cat**

Method request initiated from the frontend:

```
GET https://4z9giyi2c1.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/pets/cat
```

Integration request sent to the backend:

```
GET http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets/cat
```

The run-time instance of the proxy resource path does not correspond to a backend endpoint and the resulting request is invalid. As a result, a 400 Bad Request response is returned with the following error message:

```json
{
    "errors": [
        {
            "key": "Pet2.type",
            "message": "Missing required field"
        },
        {
            "key": "Pet2.price",
            "message": "Missing required field"
        }
    ]
}
```

- **Set ANY as GET and {proxy+} as null**

Method request initiated from the frontend:

```
GET https://4z9giyi2c1.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test
```

Integration request sent to the backend:

```
GET http://petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore
```

The targeted resource is the parent of the proxy resource, but the run-time instance of the ANY method is not defined in the API on that resource. As a result, this GET request returns a 403 Forbidden response with the Missing Authentication Token error message as returned by API Gateway. If the API exposes the ANY or GET method on the parent resource (/), the call returns a 404 Not Found response with the Cannot GET /petstore message as returned from the backend.
For any client request, if the targeted endpoint URL is invalid or the HTTP verb is valid but not supported, the backend returns a 404 Not Found response. For an unsupported HTTP method, a 403 Forbidden response is returned.

**Set up HTTP Custom Integrations in API Gateway**

With the HTTP custom integration, you have more control of which data to pass between an API method and an API integration and how to pass the data. You do this using data mappings.

As part of the method request setup, you set the `requestParameters` property on a `Method` resource. This declares which method request parameters, which are provisioned from the client, are to be mapped to integration request parameters or applicable body properties before being dispatched to the backend. Then, as part of the integration request setup, you set the `requestParameters` property on the corresponding `Integration` resource to specify the parameter-to-parameter mappings. You also set the `requestTemplates` property to specify mapping templates, one for each supported content type. The mapping templates map method request parameters, or body, to the integration request body.

Similarly, as part of the method response setup, you set the `responseParameters` property on the `MethodResponse` resource. This declares which method response parameters, to be dispatched to the client, are to be mapped from integration response parameters or certain applicable body properties that were returned from the backend. Then, as part of the integration response setup, you set the `responseParameters` property on the corresponding `IntegrationResponse` resource to specify the parameter-to-parameter mappings. You also set the `responseTemplates` map to specify mapping templates, one for each supported content type. The mapping templates map integration response parameters, or integration response body properties, to the method response body.

For more information about setting up mapping templates, see Set up Data Mappings. (p. 160)

**Set up API Gateway Private Integrations**

The API Gateway private integration makes it simple to expose your HTTP/HTTPS resources behind an Amazon VPC for access by clients outside of the VPC. To extend access to your private VPC resources beyond the VPC boundaries, you can create an API with private integration for open access or controlled access. You can do this by using IAM permissions, a custom authorizer, or an Amazon Cognito user pool.

The private integration uses an API Gateway resource of `VpcLink` to encapsulate connections between API Gateway and targeted VPC resources. As an owner of a VPC resource, you are responsible for creating a network load balancer in your VPC and adding a VPC resource as a target of a network load balancer's listener. As an API developer, to set up an API with the private integration, you are responsible for creating a `VpcLink` targeting specified network load balancers and then treating the `VpcLink` as an effective integration endpoint.

With the API Gateway private integration, you can enable access to HTTP/HTTPS resources within a VPC without detailed knowledge of private network configurations or technology-specific appliances.

**Topics**

- Set up a Network Load Balancer for API Gateway Private Integrations (p. 145)
- Grant Permissions to Create a VPC Link (p. 145)
- Set up an API Gateway API with Private Integrations Using the API Gateway Console (p. 146)
- Set up an API Gateway API with Private Integrations Using the AWS CLI (p. 146)
- Set up API with Private Integrations Using Swagger (p. 149)
Set up a Network Load Balancer for API Gateway Private Integrations

The following procedure outlines the steps to set up a network load balancer for API Gateway private integrations using the Amazon EC2 console and provides references for detailed instructions for each step.

To create a network load balancer for private integration using the API Gateway console

1. Sign in to the Amazon EC2 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/ and choose a region; for example, us-east-1, on the navigation bar.
2. Set up a web server on an Amazon EC2 instance. For an example setup, see Installing a LAMP Web Server on Amazon Linux.
3. Create a network load balancer, register the EC2 instance with a target group, and add the target group to a listener of the network load balancer. For details, follow the instructions in Getting Started with Network Load Balancers.

After the network load balancer is created, note its ARN. You will need it to create a VPC link in API Gateway for integrating the API with the VPC resources behind the network load balancer.

Grant Permissions to Create a VPC Link

For you or a user in your account to create and maintain a VPC link, you or the user must have permissions to create, delete, and view VPC endpoint service configurations, change VPC endpoint service permissions, and examine load balancers. To grant such permissions, use the following steps.

To grant permissions to create and update a `VpcLink`

1. Create an IAM policy similar to the following:

```json
{
    "Version":"2012-10-17",
    "Statement":[
        {
            "Effect":"Allow",
            "Action": [
                "ec2:CreateVpcEndpointServiceConfiguration",
                "ec2:DeleteVpcEndpointServiceConfigurations",
                "ec2:DescribeVpcEndpointServiceConfigurations",
                "ec2:ModifyVpcEndpointServicePermissions"
            ],
            "Resource":"*"
        },
        {
            "Effect":"Allow",
            "Action": [
                "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers"
            ],
            "Resource":"*"
        }
    ]
}
```

2. Create or choose an IAM role and attach the preceding policy to the role.
3. Assign the IAM role to you or a user in your account who is creating VPC links.
Set up an API Gateway API with Private Integrations Using the API Gateway Console

For instructions using the API Gateway Console to set up an API with private integration, see Build an API with API Gateway Private Integration (p. 72).

Set up an API Gateway API with Private Integrations Using the AWS CLI

Before creating an API with the private integration, you must have your VPC resource set up and a network load balancer created and configured with your VPC source as the target. If the requirements are not met, follow Set up a Network Load Balancer for API Gateway Private Integrations (p. 145) to install the VPC resource, create a NLB, set the VPC resource as a target of the network load balancer.

For you to be able to create and manage a VpcLink, you must also have the appropriate permissions configured. For more information, see Grant Permissions to Create a VPC Link (p. 145).

**Note**

You only need the permissions to create a VpcLink in your API. You do not need the permissions to use the VpcLink.

After the network load balancer is created, note its ARN. You need it to create a VPC link for the private integration.

**To set up an API with the private integration using AWS CLI**

1. Create a VpcLink targeting the specified network load balancer.

   For this discussion, we assume the ARN of the network load balancer is


   ```
   aws apigateway create-vpc-link \
   --name my-test-vpc-link \
   --target-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/my-vpclink-test-nlb/1f8df693cd094a72 \
   --endpoint-url https://apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com \
   --region us-east-1
   ```

   If the AWS configuration uses `us-east-1` as the default region, you can skip the `endpoint-url` and `region` parameters in the preceding input.

   The preceding command immediately returns the following response, acknowledging the receipt of the request, and showing the PENDING status for the VpcLink being created.

   ```
   {
     "status": "PENDING",
     "targetArns": [
       "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/my-vpclink-test-nlb/1f8df693cd094a72"
     ],
     "id": "gim7c3",
     "name": "my-test-vpc-link"
   }
   ```

   It takes 2-4 minutes for API Gateway to finish creating the VpcLink. When the operation finishes successfully, the status is AVAILABLE. You can verify this by calling the following CLI command:
Set up Private Integrations

.aws apigateway get-vpc-link --vpc-link-id gim7c3

If the operation fails, you get a FAILED status, with the statusMessage containing the error message. For example, if you attempt to create a VpcLink with a network load balancer that is already associated with a VPC endpoint, you get the following on the statusMessage property:

"NLB is already associated with another VPC Endpoint Service"

Only after the VpcLink is created successfully are we ready to create the API and integrate it with the VPC resource through the VpcLink.

Note the id value of the newly created VpcLink (gim7c3 in the preceding output). You need it to set up the private integration.

2. Set up an API by creating an API Gateway RestApi resource:

.aws apigateway create-rest-api --name 'My VPC Link Test'

We have dropped the input parameters of endpoint-url and region to use the default region as specified in the AWS configuration.

Note the RestApi's id value in the returned result. In this example, we assume it is 6j4m3244we. You need this value to perform further operations on the API, including setting up methods and integrations.

For illustration purposes, we will create an API with only a GET method on the root resource (/) and integrate the method with the VpcLink.

3. Set up the GET / method. First get the identifier of the root resource (/):

.aws apigateway get-resources --rest-api-id 6j4m3244we

In the output, note the id value of the / path. In this example, we assume it to be skpp60rab7.

Set up the method request for the API method of GET /:

.aws apigateway put-method \
    --rest-api-id 6j4m3244we \
    --resource-id skpp60rab7 \
    --http-method GET \
    --authorization-type "NONE"

To use the IAM permissions, a custom authorizer, or an Amazon Cognito user pool to authenticate the caller, set the authorization-type to AWS_IAM, CUSTOM, or COGNITO_USER_POOLS, respectively.

If you do not use the proxy integration with the VpcLink, you must also set up at least a method response of the 200 status code. We will use the proxy integration here.

4. Set up the private integration of the HTTP_PROXY type and call the put-integration command as follows:

.aws apigateway put-integration \
    --rest-api-id 6j4m3244we \
    --resource-id skpp60rab7 \
    --uri 'http://myApi.example.com' \
    --http-method GET \n
147
For a private integration, you must set connection-type to VPC_LINK and set connection-id to either your VpcLink’s identifier or a stage variable referencing your VpcLink ID. The uri parameter is not used for routing requests to your endpoint, but is used for setting the Host header and for certificate validation.

If successful, the command returns the following output:

```plaintext
{
  "passthroughBehavior": "WHEN_NO_MATCH",
  "timeoutInMillis": 29000,
  "connectionId": "gim7c3",
  "uri": "http://myApi.example.com",
  "connectionType": "VPC_LINK",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "cacheNamespace": "skpp60rab7",
  "type": "HTTP_PROXY",
  "cacheKeyParameters": []
}
```

Using a stage variable, you set the connectionId property when creating the integration:

```shell
aws apigateway put-integration \
  --rest-api-id 6j4m3244we \
  --resource-id skpp60rab7 \
  --uri 'http://myApi.example.com' \
  --http-method GET \
  --type HTTP_PROXY \
  --integration-http-method GET \
  --connection-type VPC_LINK \
  --connection-id "\${stageVariables.vpcLinkId}"
```

Make sure to double-quote the stage variable expression (`\${stageVariables.vpcLinkId}`) and escape the $ character.

Alternatively, you can update the integration to reset the connectionId value with a stage variable:

```shell
aws apigateway update-integration \
  --rest-api-id 6j4m3244we \
  --resource-id skpp60rab7 \
  --http-method GET \
  --patch-operations '[["op":"replace","path":"\n  connectionId","value":"\${stageVariables.vpcLinkId}"]]'
```

Make sure to use a stringified JSON list as the patch-operations parameter value.

Using a stage variable to set the connectionId value has the advantage of having the same API integrated with different VpcLinks by resetting the stage variable value. This is useful for switching your API to a different VPC link to migrate to a different network load balancer or a different VPC.

Because we used the private proxy integration, the API is now ready for deployment and for test runs. With the non-proxy integration, you must also set up the method response and integration response, just as you would when setting up an API with HTTP custom integrations (p. 43).
5. To test the API, deploy the API. This is necessary if you have used the stage variable as a placeholder of the VpcLink ID. To deploy the API with a stage variable, call the `create-deployment` command as follows:

```
aws apigateway create-deployment \
  --rest-api-id 6j4m3244we \ 
  --stage-name test \ 
  --variables vpcLinkId=gim7c3
```

To update the stage variable with a different VpcLink ID (e.g., asf9d7), call the `update-stage` command:

```
aws apigateway update-stage \
  --rest-api-id 6j4m3244we \ 
  --stage-name test \ 
  --patch-operations op=replace,path='/variables/vpcLinkId',value='asf9d7'
```

To test the API, invoke it using the following cURL command:

```
curl -X GET https://6j4m3244we.beta.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/test
```

Alternatively, you can type the API's invoke-URL in a web browser to view the result.

When you hardcode the `connection-id` property with the VpcLink ID literal, you can also call `test-invoke-method` to test invoking the API before it is deployed.

**Set up API with Private Integrations Using Swagger**

You can set up an API with the private integration by importing the API Swagger file. The settings are similar to the Swagger definitions of an API with HTTP integrations, with the following exceptions:

- You must explicitly set `connectionType` to `VPC_LINK`.
- You must explicitly set `connectionId` to the ID of a VpcLink or to a stage variable referencing the ID of a VpcLink.
- The `uri` parameter in the private integration points to an HTTP/HTTPS endpoint in the VPC, but is used instead to set up the integration request's `Host` header.
- The `uri` parameter in the private integration with an HTTPS endpoint in the VPC is used to verify the stated domain name against the one in the certificate installed on the VPC endpoint.

You can use a stage variable to reference the VpcLink ID. Or you can assign the ID value directly to `connectionId`.

The following JSON-formatted API Swagger file shows an example of an API with a VPC link as referenced by a stage variable (${stageVariables.vpcLinkId}):

```
{
  "swagger": "2.0",
  "info": {
    "version": "2017-11-17T04:40:23Z",
    "title": "MyApiWithVpcLink"
  },
  "host": "p3wocvip9a.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com",
  "basePath": "/test",
  "schemes": [
    "https"
  ],
  "x-amazon-apigateway-connection-type": "VPC_LINK",
  "x-amazon-apigateway-connection-id": "$\{stageVariables.vpcLinkId\}$"
}
```
Set up Mock Integrations in API Gateway

Amazon API Gateway supports mock integrations for API methods. This feature enables API developers to generate API responses from API Gateway directly, without the need for an integration backend. As an API developer, you can use this feature to unblock dependent teams that need to work with an API before the project development is complete. You can also use this feature to provision a landing page for your API, which can provide an overview of and navigation to your API. For an example of such a landing page, see the integration request and response of the GET method on the root resource of the example API discussed in Build an API Gateway API from an Example (p. 9).

As an API developer, you decide how API Gateway responds to a mock integration request. For this, you configure the method's integration request and integration response to associate a response with a given status code. For a method with the mock integration to return a 200 response, configure the integration request body mapping template to return the following.

```
{
  "statusCode": 200
}
```

Configure a 200 integration response to have the following body mapping template, for example:

```
{
  "statusCode": 200,
  "message": "Go ahead without me."
}
```
Similarly, for the method to return, for example, a 500 error response, set up the integration request body mapping template to return the following.

```
{"statusCode": 500}
```

Set up a 500 integration response with, for example, the following mapping template:

```
{
  "statusCode": 500,
  "message": "The invoked method is not supported on the API resource."
}
```

Alternatively, you can have a method of the mock integration return the default integration response without defining the integration request mapping template. The default integration response is the one with an undefined HTTP status regex. Make sure appropriate passthrough behaviors are set.

Using an integration request mapping template, you can inject application logic to decide which mock integration response to return based on certain conditions. For example, you could use a scope query parameter on the incoming request to determine whether to return a successful response or an error response:

```
{
  #if( $input.params('scope') == "internal" )
    "statusCode": 200
  #else
    "statusCode": 500
  #end
}
```

This way, the method of the mock integration lets internal calls to go through while rejecting other types of calls with an error response.

In this section, we describe how to use the API Gateway console to enable the mock integration for an API method.

**Topics**

- Enable Mock Integration Using the API Gateway Console (p. 151)

**Enable Mock Integration Using the API Gateway Console**

You must have the method available in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42).

1. Choose an API resource and create a method. In the method Setup pane, choose **Mock** for Integration type, and then choose **Save**.
2. Choose **Method Request** from Method Execution. Expand **URL Query String Parameters**. Choose **Add query string** to add a scope query parameter. This determines if the caller is internal or otherwise.
3. Choose **Integration Request** from Method Execution. Expand **Body Mapping Templates**. Choose or add an application/json mapping template. Type the following in the template editor:

```
{
  #if( $input.params('scope') == "internal" )
    "statusCode": 200
  #else
    "statusCode": 500
  #end
}
```
Choose **Save**.

4. Choose **Integration Response** from **Method Execution**. Expand the **200** response and then the **Body Mapping Templates** section. Choose or add an application/json mapping template and type the following response body mapping template in the template editor.

```json
{
  "statusCode": 200,
  "message": "Go ahead without me"
}
```

Choose **Save**.

5. Scroll to **Integration Response**. Choose **Add integration response** to add a **500** response. Type `5\d{2}` in **HTTP status regex**. Expand **Body Mapping Templates** and choose **Add mapping template**. Type `application/json` for **Content-Type** and then choose the check mark icon to save the setting. In the template editor, type the following integration response body mapping template:

```json
{
  "statusCode": 500,
  "message": "The invoked method is not supported on the API resource."
}
```

Choose **Save**.

6. Choose **Test** from **Method Execution**. Do the following:

   a. Type **internal** under **scope**. Choose **Test**. The test result shows:

   ```
   Request: /?scope=internal
   Status: 200
   Latency: 26 ms
   Response Body
   {
     "statusCode": 200,
     "message": "Go ahead without me"
   }
   Response Headers
   {"Content-Type":"application/json"}
   ```

   b. Type **public** under **scope** or leave it blank. Choose **Test**. The test result shows:

   ```
   Request: /
   Status: 500
   Latency: 16 ms
   Response Body
   {
     "statusCode": 500,
     "message": "The invoked method is not supported on the API resource."
   }
   ```
Response Headers

{"Content-Type":"application/json"}

You can also return headers in a mock integration response by first adding a header to the method response and then setting up a header mapping in the integration response. In fact, this is how the API Gateway console enables CORS support by returning CORS required headers.

Set up Gateway Responses to Customize Error Responses

If API Gateway fails to process an incoming request, it returns to the client an error response without forwarding the request to the integration backend. By default, the error response contains a short descriptive error message. For example, if you attempt to call an operation on an undefined API resource, you receive an error response with the { "message": "Missing Authentication Token" } message. If you are new to API Gateway, you may find it difficult to understand what actually went wrong.

For some of the error responses, API Gateway allows customization by API developers to return the responses in different formats. For the Missing Authentication Token example, you can add a hint to the original response payload with the possible cause, as in this example: {"message":"Missing Authentication Token", "hint":"The HTTP method or resources may not be supported."}.

When your API mediates between an external exchange and the AWS cloud, you use VTL mapping templates for integration request or integration response to map the payload from one format to another. However, the VTL mapping templates work only for valid requests with successful responses. For invalid requests, API Gateway bypasses the integration altogether and returns an error response. You must use the customization to render the error responses in an exchange-compliant format. Here, the customization is rendered in a non-VTL mapping template supporting only simple variable substitutions.

Generalizing the API Gateway-generated error response to any responses generated by API Gateway, we refer to them as gateway responses. This distinguishes API Gateway-generated responses from the integration responses. A gateway response mapping template can access $context variable values and $stageVariables property values, as well as method request parameters, in the form of method.request.param-position.param-name. For more information about $context variables, see Accessing the $context Variable (p. 189). For more information about $stageVariables, see Accessing the $stageVariables Variable (p. 195). For more information about method request parameters, see Request parameters accessible by a mapping template (p. 185).

Topics

- Gateway Responses in API Gateway (p. 154)
- Gateway Response Types (p. 154)
- Set up a Gateway Response Using the API Gateway Console (p. 157)
- Set up a Gateway Response Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 159)
- Set up Gateway Response Customization in Swagger (p. 159)
Gateway Responses in API Gateway

A gateway response is identified by a response type defined by API Gateway. The response consists of an HTTP status code, a set of additional headers that are specified by parameter mappings, and a payload that is generated by a non-VTL mapping template.

In the API Gateway REST API, a gateway response is represented by the `GatewayResponse`. In Swagger, a `GatewayResponse` instance is described by the `x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.gatewayResponse` (p. 471) extension.

To enable a gateway response, you set up a gateway response for a supported response type (p. 154) at the API level. Whenever API Gateway returns a response of the type, the header mappings and payload mapping templates defined in the gateway response are applied to return the mapped results to the API caller.

In the following section, we show how to set up gateway responses using the API Gateway console and the API Gateway REST API.

Gateway Response Types

API Gateway exposes the following gateway responses for customization by API developers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gateway response type</th>
<th>Default status code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT_4XX</td>
<td>Null</td>
<td>The default gateway response for an unspecified response type with the status code of 4XX. Changing the status code of this fallback gateway response changes the status codes of all other 4XX responses to the new value. Resetting this status code to null reverts the status codes of all other 4XX responses to their original values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT_5XX</td>
<td>Null</td>
<td>The default gateway response for an unspecified response type with a status code of 5XX. Changing the status code of this fallback gateway response changes the status codes of all other 5XX responses to the new value. Resetting this status code to null reverts the status codes of all other 5XX responses to their original values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS_DENIED</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>The gateway response for authorization failure; for example, when access is denied by a custom or Amazon Cognito authorizer. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the <code>DEFAULT_4XX</code> type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway response type</td>
<td>Default status code</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API_CONFIGURATION_ERROR</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>The gateway response for invalid API configuration, including invalid endpoint address submitted, Base64 decoding failed on binary data when binary support is enacted, or integration response mapping cannot match any template and no default template is configured. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_5XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTHORIZER_CONFIGURATION_ERROR</td>
<td></td>
<td>The gateway response for failing to connect to a custom or Amazon Cognito authorizer. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_5XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTHORIZER_FAILURE</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>The gateway response when a custom or Amazon Cognito authorizer failed to authenticate the caller. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_5XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAD_REQUEST_PARAMETERS</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>The gateway response when the request parameter cannot be validated according to an enabled request validator. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAD_REQUEST_BODY</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>The gateway response when the request body cannot be validated according to an enabled request validator. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXPIRED_TOKEN</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>The gateway response for an AWS authentication token expired error. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway response type</td>
<td>Default status code</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGRATION_FAILURE</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>The gateway response for an integration failed error. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_5XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGRATION_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>The gateway response for an integration timed out error. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_5XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INVALID_API_KEY</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>The gateway response for an invalid API key submitted for a method requiring an API key. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INVALID_SIGNATURE</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>The gateway response for an invalid AWS signature error. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISSING_AUTHENTICATION_TOKEN</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>The gateway response for a missing authentication token error, including the cases when the client attempts to invoke an unsupported API method or resource. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUOTA_EXCEEDED</td>
<td>429</td>
<td>The gateway response for the usage plan quota exceeded error. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REQUEST_TOO_LARGE</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>The gateway response for the request too large error. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway response type</td>
<td>Default status code</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESOURCE_NOT_FOUND</td>
<td>404</td>
<td>The gateway response when API Gateway cannot find the specified resource after an API request passes authentication and authorization, except for API key authentication and authorization. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THROTTLED</td>
<td>429</td>
<td>The gateway response when usage plan-, method-, stage-, or account-level throttling limits exceeded. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNAUTHORIZED</td>
<td>401</td>
<td>The gateway response when the custom or Amazon Cognito authorizer failed to authenticate the caller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNSUPPORTED_MEDIA_TYPE</td>
<td>415</td>
<td>The gateway response when a payload is of an unsupported media type, if strict passthrough behavior is enabled. If the response type is unspecified, this response defaults to the DEFAULT_4XX type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Set up a Gateway Response Using the API Gateway Console**

**To customize a gateway response using the API Gateway console**

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Choose your existing API or create a new one.
3. Expand the API in the primary navigation pane and choose **Gateway Responses** under the API.
4. In the **Gateway Responses** pane, choose a response type. In this walkthrough, we use **Missing Authentication Token (403)** as an example.
5. You can change the API Gateway-generated **Status Code** to return a different status code that meets your API's requirements. In this example, the customization changes the status code from the default (403) to 404 because this error message occurs when a client calls an unsupported or invalid resource that can be thought of as not found.
6. To return custom headers, choose **Add Header** under **Response Headers**. For illustration purposes, we add the following custom headers:

   ```
   Access-Control-Allow-Origin:'a.b.c'
   x-request-id:method.request.header.x-amzn-RequestId
   x-request-path:method.request.path.petId
   ```
In the preceding header mappings, a static domain name ('a.b.c') is mapped to the Allow-Control-Allow-Origin header to allow CORS access to the API; the input request header of x-amzn-RequestId is mapped to request-id in the response; the petId path variable of the incoming request is mapped to the request-path header in the response; and the q query parameter of the original request is mapped to the request-query header of the response.

7. Under **Body Mapping Templates**, leave application/json for **Content Type** and type the following body mapping template in the **Body Mapping Template** editor:

```json
{
    "message": "$context.error.messageString",
    "type": "$context.error.responseType",
    "statusCode": '404',
    "stage": "$context.stage",
    "resourcePath": "$context.resourcePath",
    "stageVariables.a": "$stageVariables.a"
}
```

This example shows how to map $context and $stageVariables properties to properties of the gateway response body.

8. Choose **Save**.

9. Deploy the API to a new or existing stage.

10. Test it by calling the following CURL command, assuming the corresponding API method's Invoke URL is https://o81lxisefl.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/custErr/pets/{petId}:

    ```
    curl -v -H 'x-amzn-RequestId:123344566' https://o81lxisefl.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/custErr/pets/5/type?q=1
    ```

Because the extra query string parameter q=1 is not compatible with the API, An error is returned to trigger the specified gateway response. You should get a gateway response similar to the following:

```text
> GET /custErr/pets/5?q=1 HTTP/1.1
Host: o81lxisefl.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
User-Agent: curl/7.51.0
Accept: */*

HTTP/1.1 404 Not Found
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: 334
Connection: keep-alive
Date: Tue, 02 May 2017 03:15:47 GMT
x-amzn-RequestId: a2be05a4-2ee5-11e7-bbf2-df131ec50ae6
Access-Control-Allow-Origin: a.b.c
x-amzn-ErrorType: MissingAuthenticationTokenException
header-1: static
x-request-query: 1
x-request-path: 5
X-Cache: Error from cloudfront
Via: 1.1 441811a054e8d055b893175754ef0c3.cloudfront.net (CloudFront)
X-Amz-Cf-Id: nNDR-fX4csbRoAgtq2J16u0rTDz9FZWT-Mk9JKgoznfsDlTuXh3flmzA==

{
    "message":"Missing Authentication Token",
    "type": 'MISSING_AUTHENTICATION_TOKEN',
    "statusCode": '404',
    "stage": custErr,
    "resourcePath": /pets/{petId},
}
```
The preceding example assumes that the API backend is Pet Store and the API has a stage variable, a, defined.

**Set up a Gateway Response Using the API Gateway REST API**

Before customizing a gateway response using the API Gateway REST API, you must have already created an API and have obtained its identifier. To retrieve the API identifier, you can follow restapi:gateway-responses link relation and examine the result.

To customize a gateway response using the API Gateway REST API

1. To overwrite an entire GatewayResponse instance, call the gatewayresponse:put action, specifying a desired responseType in the URL path parameter and supplying in the request payload the statusCode, responseParameters and responseTemplates mappings.
2. To update part of a GatewayResponse instance, call the gatewayresponse:update action, specifying a desired responseType in the URL path parameter and supplying in the request payload desired individual GatewayResponse properties, for example, the responseParameters or the responseTemplates mapping.

**Set up Gateway Response Customization in Swagger**

You can use the x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses extension at the API root level to customize gateway responses in Swagger. The following Swagger definition shows an example for customizing the GatewayResponse of the MISSING_AUTHENTICATION_TOKEN type.

```json
"x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses": {
    "MISSING_AUTHENTICATION_TOKEN": {
        "statusCode": 404,
        "responseParameters": {
            "gatewayresponse.header.x-request-path": "method.input.params.petId",
            "gatewayresponse.header.x-request-query": "method.input.params.q",
            "gatewayresponse.header.Access-Control-Allow-Origin": "'a.b.c'",
            "gatewayresponse.header.x-request-header": "method.input.params.Accept"
        },
        "responseTemplates": {
            "application/json": "{\n                "message": $context.error.messageString,\n                "type": "$context.error.responseType",\n                "stage": "$context.stage",
                "resourcePath": "$context.resourcePath",\n                "$stageVariables.a": "$stageVariables.a",
                "statusCode": "404"
            }\n        }
    }
}
```

In this example, the customization changes the status code from the default (403) to 404. It also adds to the gateway response four header parameters and one body mapping template for the application/json media type.
Set up API Gateway Request and Response Data Mappings

Topics
- Set up Request and Response Data Mappings Using the API Gateway Console (p. 160)
- Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162)
- Amazon API Gateway API Request and Response Data Mapping Reference (p. 185)
- API Gateway Mapping Template Reference (p. 189)

Set up Request and Response Data Mappings Using the API Gateway Console

To use the API Gateway console to define the API's integration request/response, follow these instructions.

Note
These instructions assume you have already completed the steps in Set up an API Integration Request Using the API Gateway Console (p. 121).

1. With the method selected in the Resources pane, in the Method Execution pane, choose Integration Request.

2. For an HTTP proxy or an AWS service proxy, to associate a path parameter, a query string parameter, or a header parameter defined in the integration request with a corresponding path parameter, query string parameter, or header parameter in the method request of the HTTP proxy or AWS service proxy, do the following:

   a. Choose the arrow next to URL Path Parameters, URL Query String Parameters, or HTTP Headers respectively, and then choose Add path, Add query string, or Add header, respectively.

   b. For Name, type the name of the path parameter, query string parameter, or header parameter in the HTTP proxy or AWS service proxy.

   c. For Mapped from, type the mapping value for the path parameter, query string parameter, or header parameter. Use one of the following formats:

      • method.request.path.parameter-name for a path parameter named parameter-name as defined in the Method Request page.

      • method.request.querystring.parameter-name for a query string parameter named parameter-name as defined in the Method Request page.

      • method.request.header.parameter-name for a header parameter named parameter-name as defined in the Method Request page.

   Alternatively, you can set a literal string value (enclosed by a pair of single quotes) to an integration header.

   d. Choose Create. (To delete a path parameter, query string parameter, or header parameter, choose Cancel or Remove next to the parameter you want to delete.)

3. In the Body Mapping Templates area, choose an option for Request body passthrough to configure how the method request body of an unmapped content type will be passed through the integration request without transformation to the Lambda function, HTTP proxy, or AWS service proxy. There are three options:
• Choose **When no template matches the request Content-Type header** if you want the method request body to pass through the integration request to the backend without transformation when the method request content type does not match any content types associated with the mapping templates, as defined in the next step.

**Note**
When calling the API Gateway API, you choose this option by setting WHEN_NO_MATCH as the passthroughBehavior property value on the Integration resource.

• Choose **When there are no templates defined (recommended)** if you want the method request body to pass through the integration request to the backend without transformation when no mapping template is defined in the integration request. If a template is defined when this option is selected, the method request of an unmapped content type will be rejected with an HTTP 415 Unsupported Media Type response.

**Note**
When calling the API Gateway API, you choose this option by setting WHEN_NO_TEMPLATE as the passthroughBehavior property value on the Integration resource.

• Choose **Never** if you do not want the method request to pass through when either the method request content type does not match any content type associated with the mapping templates defined in the integration request or no mapping template is defined in the integration request. The method request of an unmapped content type will be rejected with an HTTP 415 Unsupported Media Type response.

**Note**
When calling the API Gateway API, you choose this option by setting NEVER as the passthroughBehavior property value on the Integration resource.

For more information about the integration passthrough behaviors, see Integration Passthrough Behaviors (p. 188).

4. To define a mapping template for an incoming request, choose **Add mapping template** under **Content-Type**. Type a content type (e.g., application/json) in the input text box and then choose the check mark icon to save the input. Then, type the mapping template manually or choose **Generate template** to create one from a model template. For more information, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162).

5. You can map an integration response from the backend to a method response of the API returned to the calling app. This includes returning to the client selected response headers from the available ones from the back end, transforming the data format of the backend response payload to an API-specified format. You can specify such mapping by configuring **Method Response** and **Integration Response** from the Method Execution page.

a. In the **Method Execution** pane, choose **Integration Response**. Choose either the arrow next to 200 to specify settings for a 200 HTTP response code from the method, or choose **Add integration response** to specify settings for any other HTTP response status code from the method.

b. For **Lambda error regex** (for a Lambda function) or **HTTP status regex** (for an HTTP proxy or AWS service proxy), type a regular expression to specify which Lambda function error strings (for a Lambda function) or HTTP response status codes (for an HTTP proxy or AWS service proxy) map to this output mapping. For example, to map all 2xx HTTP response status codes from an HTTP proxy to this output mapping, type "2\d{2}" for **HTTP status regex**. To return an error message containing "Invalid Request" from a Lambda function to a 400 Bad Request response, type ".*Invalid request.*" as the **Lambda error regex** expression. On the other hand, to return 400 Bad Request for all unmapped error messages from Lambda, type "(\n|.)+" in **Lambda error regex**. This last regular expression can be used for the default error response of an API.
Note
The error patterns are matched against the entire string of the errorMessage property in the Lambda response, which is populated by callback(errorMessage) in Node.js or by throw new MyException(errorMessage) in Java. Also, escaped characters are unescaped before the regular expression is applied. If you use '.+' as the selection pattern to filter responses, be aware that it may not match a response containing a newline ('\n') character.

c. If enabled, for Method response status, choose the HTTP response status code you defined in the Method Response page.
d. For Header Mappings, for each header you defined for the HTTP response status code in the Method Response page, specify a mapping value by choosing Edit. For Mapping value, use the format integration.response.header.header-name where header-name is the name of a response header from the backend. For example, to return the backend response's Date header as an API method's response's Timestamp header, the Response header column will contain an Timestamp entry and the associated Mapping value should be set to integration.response.header.Date.
e. In the Template Mappings area, next to Content type, choose Add. In the Content type box, type the content type of the data that will be passed from the Lambda function, HTTP proxy, or AWS service proxy to the method. Choose Update.
f. Select Output passthrough if you want the method to receive, but not modify, the data from the Lambda function, HTTP proxy, or AWS service proxy.
g. If Output passthrough is cleared, for Output mapping, specify the output mapping template you want the Lambda function, HTTP proxy, or AWS service proxy to use to send data to the method. You can either type the mapping template manually or choose a model from Generate template from model.
h. Choose Save.

Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings

In API Gateway, an API's method request can take a payload in a different format from the corresponding integration request payload, as required in the backend. Similarly, the backend may return an integration response payload different from the method response payload, as expected by the frontend. API Gateway lets you use mapping templates to map the payload from a method request to the corresponding integration request and from an integration response to the corresponding method response.

A mapping template is a script expressed in Velocity Template Language (VTL) and applied to the payload using JSONPath expressions. The payload can have a data model according to the JSON Schema. You must define the model in order to have API Gateway to generate a SDK or to enable basic request validation for your API. You do not have to define any model to create a mapping template. However, a model can help you create a template because API Gateway will generate a template blueprint based on a provided model.

The section explains how to map the API request and response payload using models and mapping templates.

Topics
- Models (p. 163)
- Mapping Templates (p. 166)
- Tasks for Models and Mapping Templates (p. 168)
- Create a Model in API Gateway (p. 168)
Models

In API Gateway, a model defines the data structure of a payload. In API Gateway models are defined using the JSON Schema.

The following JSON object describes a sample data describing the fruit or vegetable inventory in the produce department of a likely supermarket:

Suppose we have an API for managing fruit and vegetable inventory in the produce department of a supermarket. When a manager queries the backend for the current inventory, the server sends back the following response payload:

```json
{
   "department": "produce",
   "categories": [
      "fruit",
      "vegetables"
   ],
   "bins": [
      {
         "category": "fruit",
         "type": "apples",
         "price": 1.99,
         "unit": "pound",
         "quantity": 232
      },
      {
         "category": "fruit",
         "type": "bananas",
         "price": 0.19,
         "unit": "each",
         "quantity": 112
      },
      {
         "category": "vegetables",
         "type": "carrots",
         "price": 1.29,
         "unit": "bag",
         "quantity": 57
      }
   ]
}
```

The JSON object has three properties:

- The `department` property has a string value (`produce`).
- The `categories` property is an array of two strings: `fruit` and `vegetables`.
- The `bins` property is an array of objects, each having the string- or number-valued properties of category, type, price, unit and quantity.

We can use the following JSON Schema to define the model for the above data:
In the preceding example model:

- The $schema object represents a valid JSON Schema version identifier. In this example, it refers to JSON Schema, draft v4.
- The title object is a human-readable identifier for the model. In this example, it is GroceryStoreInputModel.
- The top-level, or root, construct in the JSON data is an object.
- The root object in the JSON data contains department, categories, and bins properties.
- The department property is a string object in the JSON data.
- The categories property is an array in the JSON data. The array contains string values in the JSON data.
- The bins property is an array in the JSON data. The array contains objects in the JSON data. Each of these objects in the JSON data contains a category string, a type string, a price number, a unit string, and a quantity integer (a number without a fraction or exponent part).

Alternatively, you could include part of this schema, for example, the item definition of the bins array, in a separate section of the same file and use the $ref primitive to reference this reusable definition in other parts of the schema. Using $ref, the above model definition file can be expressed as follows:

```json
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "GroceryStoreInputModel",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "department": { "type": "string" },
    "categories": {
      "type": "array",
      "items": { "type": "string" }
    },
    "bins": {
      "type": "array",
      "items": {
        "$ref": "#/definitions/Bin"
      }
    }
  }
}
```
The definitions section contains the schema definition of the Bin item that is referenced in the bins array with "ref": "#/definitions/Bin". Using reusable definitions this way makes your model definition easier to read.

In addition, you can also reference another model schema defined in an external model file by setting that model's URL as the value of the $ref property: "$ref": "https://apigateway.amazonaws.com/restapis/{restapi_id}/models/{model_name}". For example, supposed you have the following full-fledged model named Bin2 created under an API with an identifier of fugvjdxtri:

```json
{
    "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
    "title": "GroceryStoreInputModel",
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
        "Bin": {
            "type": "object",
            "properties": {
                "category": { "type": "string" },
                "type": { "type": "string" },
                "price": { "type": "number" },
                "unit": { "type": "string" },
                "quantity": { "type": "integer" }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

You can then reference it from the GroceryStoreInputModel from the same API, as shown as follows:

```json
{
    "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
    "title": "GroceryStoreInputModel",
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
        "department": { "type": "string" },
        "categories": {
            "type": "array",
            "items": { "type": "string" }
        },
        "bins": {
            "type": "array",
            "items": {
                "$ref": "https://apigateway.amazonaws.com/restapis/fugvjdxtri/models/Bin2"
            }
        }
    }
}
```
The referencing and referenced models must be from the same API.

The examples do not use advanced JSON Schema features, such as specifying required items; minimum and maximum allowed string lengths, numeric values, and array item lengths; regular expressions; and more. For more information, see Introducing JSON and JSON Schema.

For more complex JSON data formats and their models, see the following examples:

- Input Model (Photos Example) (p. 170) and Output Model (Photos Example) (p. 172) in the Photos Example (p. 169)
- Input Model (News Article Example) (p. 173) and Output Model (News Article Example) (p. 175) in the News Article Example (p. 173)
- Input Model (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 177) and Output Model (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 179) in the Sales Invoice Example (p. 176)
- Input Model (Employee Record Example) (p. 181) and Output Model (Employee Record Example) (p. 183) in the Employee Record Example (p. 180)

To experiment with models in API Gateway, follow the instructions in Map Response Payload (p. 60), specifically Step 1: Create Models (p. 62).

Mapping Templates

When the backend returns the query results (shown in the Models (p. 163) section), the manager of the produce department may be interested in reading them as follows:

```json
{
    "choices": [
        {
            "kind": "apples",
            "suggestedPrice": "1.99 per pound",
            "available": 232
        },
        {
            "kind": "bananas",
            "suggestedPrice": "0.19 per each",
            "available": 112
        },
        {
            "kind": "carrots",
            "suggestedPrice": "1.29 per bag",
            "available": 57
        }
    ]
}
```

To enable this, we need to provide API Gateway a mapping template to translate the data from the backend format. The following mapping template will do just that.

```java
#set($inputRoot = $input.path(''))
{
    "choices": [
        #foreach($elem in $inputRoot.bins)
            {
```

166
Let us now examine some details of the preceding output mapping template:

- The $inputRoot variable represents the root object in the original JSON data from the previous section. The variables in an output mapping template map to the original JSON data, not the desired transformed JSON data schema.
- The choices array in the output mapping template is mapped from the bins array with the root object in the original JSON data ($inputRoot.bins).
- In the output mapping template, each of the objects in the choices array (represented by $elem) are mapped from the corresponding objects in the bins array within the root object in the original JSON data.
- In the output mapping template, for each of objects in the choices object, the values of the kind and available objects (represented by $elem.type and $elem.quantity) are mapped from the corresponding values of the type and value objects in each of the objects in the original JSON data's bins array, respectively.
- In the output mapping template, for each of objects in the choices object, the value of the suggestedPrice object is a concatenation of the corresponding value of the price and unit objects in each of the objects in the original JSON data, respectively, with each value separated by the word per.

For more information about the Velocity Template Language, see Apache Velocity - VTL Reference. For more information about JSONPath, see JSONPath - XPath for JSON.

The mapping template assumes that the underlying data is of a JSON object. It does not require that a model be defined for the data. As an API developer, you know the data formats at both the front and backends. That knowledge can guide you to define the necessary mappings without ambiguity.

To have an SDK generated for the API, the above data will be returned as a language-specific object. For strongly typed languages, such as Java, Objective-C or Swift, the object corresponds to a user-defined data type (UDT). API Gateway will create such a UDT if you provide it with a data model. For the method response example above, you can define the following payload model in the integration response:

```json
{
   "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
   "title": "GroceryStoreOutputModel",
   "type": "object",
   "properties": {
      "choices": {
         "type": "array",
         "items": {
            "type": "object",
            "properties": {
               "kind": { "type": "string" },
               "suggestedPrice": { "type": "string" },
               "available": { "type": "integer" }
            }
         }
      }
   }
}
```
In this model, the JSON schema is expressed as follows:

- The `$schema` object represents a valid JSON Schema version identifier. In this example, it refers to JSON Schema, draft v4.
- The `title` object is a human-readable identifier for the model. In this example, it is `GroceryStoreOutputModel`.
- The top-level, or root, construct in the JSON data is an object.
- The root object in the JSON data contains an array of objects.
- Each object in the array of objects contains a `kind` string, a `suggestedPrice` string, and an `available` integer (a number without a fraction or exponent part).

With this model, you can call an SDK to retrieve the `kind`, `suggestedPrice` and `available` property values by reading the `GroceryStoreOutputModel.kind`, `GroceryStoreOutputModel.suggestedPrice` and `GroceryStoreOutputModel.available` properties, respectively. If no model is provided, API Gateway will use the Empty model to create a default UDT. In this case, you will not be able to read these properties using a strongly-typed SDK.

To explore more complex mapping templates, see the following examples:

- Input Mapping Template (Photos Example) (p. 171) and Output Mapping Template (Photos Example) (p. 172) in the Photos Example (p. 169)
- Input Mapping Template (News Article Example) (p. 174) and Output Mapping Template (News Article Example) (p. 175) in the News Article Example (p. 173)
- Input Mapping Template (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 178) and Output Mapping Template (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 180) in the Sales Invoice Example (p. 176)
- Input Mapping Template (Employee Record Example) (p. 182) and Output Mapping Template (Employee Record Example) (p. 184) in the Employee Record Example (p. 180)

To experiment with mapping templates in API Gateway, follow the instructions in Map Response Payload (p. 60), specifically Step 5: Set up and Test the Methods (p. 66).

**Tasks for Models and Mapping Templates**

For additional things you can do with models and mapping templates, see the following:

- Create a Model (p. 168)
- View a List of Models (p. 169)
- Delete a Model (p. 169)

**Create a Model in API Gateway**

Use the API Gateway console to create a model for an API.

**Topics**

- Prerequisites (p. 168)
- Create a Model With the API Gateway Console (p. 169)

**Prerequisites**

- You must have an API available in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Creating an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 79).
Create a Model With the API Gateway Console

2. In the box that contains the name of the API where you want to create the model, choose Models.
3. Choose Create.
4. For Model Name, type a name for the model.
5. For Content Type, type the model's content type (for example, application/json for JSON).
6. (Optional) For Model description, type a description for the model.
7. For Model schema, type the model's schema. For more information about model schemas, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162).
8. Choose Create model.

View a List of Models in API Gateway

Use the API Gateway console to view a list of models.

Topics
- Prerequisites (p. 169)
- View a List of Models with the API Gateway Console (p. 169)

Prerequisites

- You must have at least one model in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Create a Model (p. 168).

View a List of Models with the API Gateway Console

2. In the box that contains the name of the API, choose Models.

Delete a Model in API Gateway

Use the API Gateway console to delete a model.

Warning
Deleting a model may cause part or all of the corresponding API to become unusable by API callers. Deleting a model cannot be undone.

Delete a Model with the API Gateway Console

2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the model, choose Models.
3. In the Models pane, choose the model you want to delete, and then choose Delete Model.
4. When prompted, choose Delete.

Photos Example (API Gateway Models and Mapping Templates)

The following sections provide examples of models and mapping templates that could be used for a sample photo API in API Gateway. For more information about models and mapping templates in API Gateway, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162).
Original Data (Photos Example)

The following is the original JSON data for the photos example:

```
{
  "photos": {
    "page": 1,
    "pages": "1234",
    "perpage": 100,
    "total": "123398",
    "photo": [
      {
        "id": "12345678901",
        "owner": "23456789@A12",
        "secret": "abc123d456",
        "server": "1234",
        "farm": 1,
        "title": "Sample photo 1",
        "ispublic": 1,
        "isfriend": 0,
        "isfamily": 0
      },
      {
        "id": "23456789012",
        "owner": "34567890@B23",
        "secret": "bcd234e567",
        "server": "2345",
        "farm": 2,
        "title": "Sample photo 2",
        "ispublic": 1,
        "isfriend": 0,
        "isfamily": 0
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

Input Model (Photos Example)

The following is the input model that corresponds to the original JSON data for the photos example:

```
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "PhotosInputModel",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "photos": {
      "type": "object",
      "properties": {
        "page": { "type": "integer" },
        "pages": { "type": "string" },
```
"perpage": { "type": "integer" },
"total": { "type": "string" },
"photo": {
  "type": "array",
  "items": {
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
      "id": { "type": "string" },
      "owner": { "type": "string" },
      "secret": { "type": "string" },
      "server": { "type": "string" },
      "farm": { "type": "integer" },
      "title": { "type": "string" },
      "ispublic": { "type": "integer" },
      "isfriend": { "type": "integer" },
      "isfamily": { "type": "integer" }
    }
  }
}

Input Mapping Template (Photos Example)

The following is the input mapping template that corresponds to the original JSON data for the photos example:

```yaml
#set($inputRoot = $input.path('$'))
{
  "photos": {
    "page": $inputRoot.photos.page,
    "pages": "$inputRoot.photos.pages",
    "perpage": $inputRoot.photos.perpage,
    "total": "$inputRoot.photos.total",
    "photo": [
      #foreach($elem in $inputRoot.photos.photo)
      {
        "id": "$elem.id",
        "owner": "$elem.owner",
        "secret": "$elem.secret",
        "server": "$elem.server",
        "farm": "$elem.farm",
        "title": "$elem.title",
        "ispublic": "$elem.ispublic",
        "isfriend": "$elem.isfriend",
        "isfamily": "$elem.isfamily"
      }#if($foreach.hasNext),#end
    ]
  }
}
```

Transformed Data (Photos Example)

The following is one example of how the original photos example JSON data could be transformed for output:

```json
{
  "photos": [
```
Output Model (Photos Example)

The following is the output model that corresponds to the transformed JSON data format:

```json
{
    "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
    "title": "PhotosOutputModel",
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
        "photos": {
            "type": "array",
            "items": {
                "type": "object",
                "properties": {
                    "id": { "type": "string" },
                    "owner": { "type": "string" },
                    "title": { "type": "string" },
                    "ispublic": { "type": "integer" },
                    "isfriend": { "type": "integer" },
                    "isfamily": { "type": "integer" }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Output Mapping Template (Photos Example)

The following is the output mapping template that corresponds to the transformed JSON data format. The template variables here are based on the original, not transformed, JSON data format:

```template
#set($inputRoot = $input.path('$.')
{
    "photos": [
        #foreach($elem in $inputRoot.photos.photo)
            "id": "$elem.id",
            "owner": "$elem.owner",
            "title": "$elem.title",
            "ispublic": "$elem.ispublic",
            "isfriend": "$elem.isfriend",
            "isfamily": "$elem.isfamily"
        #if($foreach.hasNext),#end
    ]
}
```
News Article Example (API Gateway Models and Mapping Templates)

The following sections provide examples of models and mapping templates that could be used for a sample news article API in API Gateway. For more information about models and mapping templates in API Gateway, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162).

Topics
- Original Data (News Article Example) (p. 173)
- Input Model (News Article Example) (p. 173)
- Input Mapping Template (News Article Example) (p. 174)
- Transformed Data (News Article Example) (p. 175)
- Output Model (News Article Example) (p. 175)
- Output Mapping Template (News Article Example) (p. 175)

Original Data (News Article Example)

The following is the original JSON data for the news article example:

```json
{
  "count": 1,
  "items": [
    {
      "last_updated_date": "2015-04-24",
      "expire_date": "2016-04-25",
      "author_first_name": "John",
      "description": "Sample Description",
      "creation_date": "2015-04-20",
      "title": "Sample Title",
      "allow_comment": "1",
      "author": {
        "last_name": "Doe",
        "email": "johndoe@example.com",
        "first_name": "John"
      },
      "body": "Sample Body",
      "publish_date": "2015-04-25",
      "version": "1",
      "author_last_name": "Doe",
      "parent_id": 2345678901,
      "article_url": "http://www.example.com/articles/3456789012"
    }
  ],
  "version": 1
}
```

Input Model (News Article Example)

The following is the input model that corresponds to the original JSON data for the news article example:

```json
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
```

173
"title": "NewsArticleInputModel",
"type": "object",
"properties": {
  "count": { "type": "integer" },
  "items": {
    "type": "array",
    "items": {
      "type": "object",
      "properties": {
        "last_updated_date": { "type": "string" },
        "expire_date": { "type": "string" },
        "author_first_name": { "type": "string" },
        "description": { "type": "string" },
        "creation_date": { "type": "string" },
        "title": { "type": "string" },
        "allow_comment": { "type": "string" },
        "author": {
          "type": "object",
          "properties": {
            "last_name": { "type": "string" },
            "email": { "type": "string" },
            "first_name": { "type": "string" }
          }
        },
        "body": { "type": "string" },
        "publish_date": { "type": "string" },
        "version": { "type": "string" },
        "author_last_name": { "type": "string" },
        "parent_id": { "type": "integer" },
        "article_url": { "type": "string" }
      }
    }
  }
},
"version": { "type": "integer" }
}
Transformed Data (News Article Example)

The following is one example of how the original news article example JSON data could be transformed for output:

```json
{
  "count": 1,
  "items": [
    {
      "creation_date": "2015-04-20",
      "title": "Sample Title",
      "author": "John Doe",
      "body": "Sample Body",
      "publish_date": "2015-04-25",
      "article_url": "http://www.example.com/articles/3456789012"
    }
  ],
  "version": 1
}
```

Output Model (News Article Example)

The following is the output model that corresponds to the transformed JSON data format:

```json
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "NewsArticleOutputModel",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "count": { "type": "integer" },
    "items": {
      "type": "array",
      "items": {
        "type": "object",
        "properties": {
          "creation_date": { "type": "string" },
          "title": { "type": "string" },
          "author": { "type": "string" },
          "body": { "type": "string" },
          "publish_date": { "type": "string" },
          "article_url": { "type": "string" }
        }
      }
    },
    "version": { "type": "integer" }
  }
}
```

Output Mapping Template (News Article Example)

The following is the output mapping template that corresponds to the transformed JSON data format. The template variables here are based on the original, not transformed, JSON data format:
Sales Invoice Example (API Gateway Models and Mapping Templates)

The following sections provide examples of models and mapping templates that could be used for a sample sales invoice API in API Gateway. For more information about models and mapping templates in API Gateway, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162).

Topics
- Original Data (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 176)
- Input Model (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 177)
- Input Mapping Template (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 178)
- Transformed Data (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 179)
- Output Model (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 179)
- Output Mapping Template (Sales Invoice Example) (p. 180)

Original Data (Sales Invoice Example)

The following is the original JSON data for the sales invoice example:

```json
{
  "DueDate": "2013-02-15",
  "Balance": 1990.19,
  "DocNumber": "SAMP001",
  "Status": "Payable",
  "Line": [
    {
      "Description": "Sample Expense",
      "Amount": 500,
      "DetailType": "ExpenseDetail",
      "ExpenseDetail": {
        "Customer": {
          "value": "ABC123",
          "name": "Sample Customer"
        },
        "Ref": {
          "value": "DEF234",
          "name": "Sample Construction"
        },
        "Account": {
```

176
Input Model (Sales Invoice Example)

The following is the input model that corresponds to the original JSON data for the sales invoice example:

```
{
    "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
    "title": "InvoiceInputModel",
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
        "DueDate": { "type": "string" },
        "Balance": { "type": "number" },
        "DocNumber": { "type": "string" },
        "Status": { "type": "string" },
        "Line": {
            "type": "array",
            "items": {
                "type": "object",
                "properties": {
                    "Description": { "type": "string" },
                    "Amount": { "type": "integer" },
                    "DetailType": { "type": "string" },
                    "ExpenseDetail": {
                        "type": "object",
                        "properties": {
                            "Customer": {
                                "type": "object",
                                "properties": {
                                    "value": { "type": "string" },
                                    "name": { "type": "string" }
                                }
                            },
                            "Ref": {
                                "type": "object",
                                "properties": {
                                    "value": { "type": "string" },
                                    "name": { "type": "string" }
                                }
                            },
                            "Account": {
                                "type": "object",
                                "properties": {
                                    "value": { "type": "string" },
                                    "name": { "type": "string" }
                                }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```
The following is the input mapping template that corresponds to the original JSON data for the sales invoice example:

```
#set($inputRoot = $input.path('$'))
{
  "DueDate": "$inputRoot.DueDate",
  "Balance": $inputRoot.Balance,
  "DocNumber": "$inputRoot.DocNumber",
  "Status": "$inputRoot.Status",
  "Line": [
    #foreach($elem in $inputRoot.Line)
    {
      "Description": "$elem.Description",
      "Amount": $elem.Amount,
      "DetailType": "$elem.DetailType",
      "ExpenseDetail": {
        "Customer": {
          "value": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.Customer.value",
          "name": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.Customer.name"
        },
        "Ref": {
          "value": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.Ref.value",
          "name": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.Ref.name"
        },
        "Account": {
          "value": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.Account.value",
          "name": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.Account.name"
        },
        "LineStatus": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.LineStatus"
      }
    }#if($foreach.hasNext),#end
  ]
  "Vendor": {
    "value": "$inputRoot.Vendor.value",
    "name": "$inputRoot.Vendor.name"
  }
}
```

---

**Input Mapping Template (Sales Invoice Example)**

The following is the input mapping template that corresponds to the original JSON data for the sales invoice example:
Transformed Data (Sales Invoice Example)

The following is one example of how the original sales invoice example JSON data could be transformed for output:

```
{
  "DueDate": "2013-02-15",
  "Balance": 1990.19,
  "DocNumber": "SAMP001",
  "Status": "Payable",
  "Line": [
    {
      "Description": "Sample Expense",
      "Amount": 500,
      "DetailType": "ExpenseDetail",
      "Customer": "ABC123 (Sample Customer)",
      "Ref": "DEF234 (Sample Construction)",
      "Account": "EFG345 (Fuel)",
      "LineStatus": "Billable"
    }
  ],
  "TotalAmt": 1990.19
}
```

Output Model (Sales Invoice Example)

The following is the output model that corresponds to the transformed JSON data format:

```
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "InvoiceOutputModel",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "DueDate": { "type": "string" },
    "Balance": { "type": "number" },
    "DocNumber": { "type": "string" },
    "Status": { "type": "string" },
    "Line": {
      "type": "array",
      "items": {
        "type": "object",
        "properties": {
          "Description": { "type": "string" },
          "Amount": { "type": "integer" },
          "DetailType": { "type": "string" },
          "Customer": { "type": "string" },
          "Ref": { "type": "string" },
          "Account": { "type": "string" },
          "LineStatus": { "type": "string" }
        }
      }
    },
    "TotalAmt": { "type": "number" }
  }
}
```
Output Mapping Template (Sales Invoice Example)

The following is the output mapping template that corresponds to the transformed JSON data format. The template variables here are based on the original, not transformed, JSON data format:

```java
#set($inputRoot = $input.path('/'))
{
    "DueDate": "$inputRoot.DueDate",
    "Balance": $inputRoot.Balance,
    "DocNumber": "$inputRoot.DocNumber",
    "Status": "$inputRoot.Status",
    "Line": [
        #foreach($elem in $inputRoot.Line)
            {
                "Description": "$elem.Description",
                "Amount": $elem.Amount,
                "DetailType": "$elem.DetailType",
                "Ref": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.Ref.value ($elem.ExpenseDetail.Ref.name)",
                "LineStatus": "$elem.ExpenseDetail.LineStatus"
            }#if($foreach.hasNext),#end
        #end
    ],
    "TotalAmt": $inputRoot.TotalAmt
}
```

Employee Record Example (API Gateway Models and Mapping Templates)

The following sections provide examples of models and mapping templates that can be used for a sample employee record API in API Gateway. For more information about models and mapping templates in API Gateway, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162).

Topics

- Original Data (Employee Record Example) (p. 180)
- Input Model (Employee Record Example) (p. 181)
- Input Mapping Template (Employee Record Example) (p. 182)
- Transformed Data (Employee Record Example) (p. 183)
- Output Model (Employee Record Example) (p. 183)
- Output Mapping Template (Employee Record Example) (p. 184)

Original Data (Employee Record Example)

The following is the original JSON data for the employee record example:

```json
{
    "QueryResponse": {
        "maxResults": "1",
        "startPosition": "1",
        "Employee": {
            "Organization": "false",
            "Title": "Mrs.",
            "GivenName": "Jane",
            "MiddleName": "Lane",
            "Surname": "Smith",
            "Email": "jane.smith@example.com",
            "Phone": "555-1234",
            "Address": "123 Main St, Anytown, CA 90210"
        }
    }
}
```
"FamilyName": "Doe",
"DisplayName": "Jane Lane Doe",
"PrintOnCheckName": "Jane Lane Doe",
"Active": "true",
"PrimaryPhone": { "FreeFormNumber": "505.555.9999" },
"PrimaryEmailAddr": { "Address": "janedoe@example.com" },
"EmployeeType": "Regular",
"status": "Synchronized",
"Id": "ABC123",
"SyncToken": "1",
"MetaData": { 
  "CreateTime": "2015-04-26T19:45:03Z",
  "LastUpdatedTime": "2015-04-27T21:48:23Z"
},
"PrimaryAddr": { 
  "Line1": "123 Any Street",
  "City": "Any City",
  "CountrySubDivisionCode": "WA",
  "PostalCode": "01234"
    
"time": "2015-04-27T22:12:32.012Z"

Input Model (Employee Record Example)

The following is the input model that corresponds to the original JSON data for the employee record example:

```json
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "EmployeeInputModel",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "QueryResponse": {
      "type": "object",
      "properties": {
        "maxResults": { "type": "string" },
        "startPosition": { "type": "string" },
        "Employee": {
          "type": "object",
          "properties": {
            "Organization": { "type": "string" },
            "Title": { "type": "string" },
            "GivenName": { "type": "string" },
            "MiddleName": { "type": "string" },
            "FamilyName": { "type": "string" },
            "DisplayName": { "type": "string" },
            "PrintOnCheckName": { "type": "string" },
            "Active": { "type": "string" },
            "PrimaryPhone": {
              "type": "object",
              "properties": {
                "FreeFormNumber": { "type": "string" }
              }
            },
            "PrimaryEmailAddr": {
              "type": "object",
              "properties": {
                "Address": { "type": "string" }
              }
            },
            "EmployeeType": { "type": "string" },
```
Input Mapping Template (Employee Record Example)

The following is the input mapping template that corresponds to the original JSON data for the employee record example:

```java
#set($inputRoot = $input.path('/'))
{
  "QueryResponse": {
    "maxResults": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.maxResults",
    "startPosition": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.startPosition",
    "Employee": {
      "Title": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.Title",
      "GivenName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.GivenName",
      "MiddleName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.MiddleName",
      "FamilyName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.FamilyName",
      "DisplayName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.DisplayName",
      "PrintOnCheckName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.PrintOnCheckName",
      "Active": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.Active",
      "PrimaryPhone": { "FreeFormNumber": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.PrimaryPhone.FreeFormNumber" },
      "PrimaryEmailAddress": { "Address": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.PrimaryEmailAddress.Address" },
      "EmployeeType": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.EmployeeType",
      "status": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.status",
      "Id": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.Id",
      "SyncToken": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.SyncToken",
      "MetaData": {
        "LastUpdatedTime": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.MetaData.LastUpdatedTime"
      },
      "PrimaryAddr": {
        "Line1": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.PrimaryAddr.Line1",
        "City": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.PrimaryAddr.City",
      }
    }
  }
}
```
Transformed Data (Employee Record Example)

The following is one example of how the original employee record example JSON data could be transformed for output:

```json
{
    "QueryResponse": {
        "maxResults": "1",
        "startPosition": "1",
        "Employees": [
            {
                "Title": "Mrs."
                "GivenName": "Jane",
                "MiddleName": "Lane",
                "FamilyName": "Doe",
                "DisplayName": "Jane Lane Doe",
                "PrintOnCheckName": "Jane Lane Doe",
                "Active": "true",
                "PrimaryPhone": "505.555.9999",
                "Email": [,
                    {"type": "primary",
                    "Address": "janedoe@example.com"
                    },
                ],
                "EmployeeType": "Regular",
                "PrimaryAddr": {
                    "Line1": "123 Any Street",
                    "City": "Any City",
                    "CountrySubDivisionCode": "WA",
                    "PostalCode": "01234"
                }
            }
        ],
        "time": "2015-04-27T22:12:32.012Z"
    }
}
```

Output Model (Employee Record Example)

The following is the output model that corresponds to the transformed JSON data format:

```json
{
    "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
    "title": "EmployeeOutputModel",
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
        "QueryResponse": {
            "type": "object",
            "properties": {
                "maxResults": {"type": "string"},
                "startPosition": {"type": "string"},
                "Employees": {
                    "type": "array",
                    "items": {
                        "type": "object",
                        "properties": {
                            "Title": "Mrs.",
                            "GivenName": "Jane",
                            "MiddleName": "Lane",
                            "FamilyName": "Doe",
                            "DisplayName": "Jane Lane Doe",
                            "PrintOnCheckName": "Jane Lane Doe",
                            "Active": "true",
                            "PrimaryPhone": "505.555.9999",
                            "Email": [,
                                {"type": "primary",
                                "Address": "janedoe@example.com"
                                },
                            ],
                            "EmployeeType": "Regular",
                            "PrimaryAddr": {
                                "Line1": "123 Any Street",
                                "City": "Any City",
                                "CountrySubDivisionCode": "WA",
                                "PostalCode": "01234"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
    "time": "2015-04-27T22:12:32.012Z"
}
```
Output Mapping Template (Employee Record Example)

The following is the output mapping template that corresponds to the transformed JSON data format. The template variables here are based on the original, not transformed, JSON data format:

```java
#set($inputRoot = $input.path('/'))
{
    "QueryResponse": {
        "maxResults": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.maxResults",
        "startPosition": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.startPosition",
        "Employees": [
            {
                "Title": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.Title",
                "GivenName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.GivenName",
                "MiddleName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.MiddleName",
                "FamilyName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.FamilyName",
                "DisplayName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.DisplayName",
                "PrintOnCheckName": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.PrintOnCheckName",
                "Active": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.Active",
                "PrimaryPhone": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.PrimaryPhone.FreeFormNumber",
                "Email": [
                    {
                        "type": "primary",
                        "Address": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.PrimaryEmailAddr.Address"
                    }
                ],
                "EmployeeType": "$inputRoot.QueryResponse.Employee.EmployeeType",
```
Amazon API Gateway API Request and Response Data Mapping Reference

This section explains how to set up data mappings from an API's method request data, including other data stored in context (p. 189), stage (p. 195), or util (p. 195) variables, to the corresponding integration request parameters and from an integration response data, including the other data, to the method response parameters. The method request data includes request parameters (path, query string, headers) and the body. The integration response data includes response parameters (headers), and the body. For more information about using the stage variables, see Amazon API Gateway Stage Variables Reference (p. 373).

Topics
- Map Method Request Data to Integration Request Parameters (p. 185)
- Map Integration Response Data to Method Response Headers (p. 186)
- Map Request and Response Payloads between Method and Integration (p. 187)
- Integration Passthrough Behaviors (p. 188)

Map Method Request Data to Integration Request Parameters

Integration request parameters, in the form of path variables, query strings or headers, can be mapped from any defined method request parameters and the payload.

Integration request data mapping expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mapped data source</th>
<th>Mapping expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Method request path</td>
<td>method.request.path.\textit{PARAM_NAME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method request query string</td>
<td>method.request.querystring.\textit{PARAM_NAME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method request header</td>
<td>method.request.header.\textit{PARAM_NAME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method request body</td>
<td>method.request.body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method request body (JsonPath)</td>
<td>method.request.body.\textit{JSONPath_EXPRESSION}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage variables</td>
<td>stageVariables.\textit{VARIABLE_NAME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context variables</td>
<td>context.\textit{VARIABLE_NAME} that must be one of the supported context variables (p. 189).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static value</td>
<td>'\textit{STATIC_VALUE}'. The \textit{STATIC_VALUE} is a string literal and must be enclosed within a pair of single quotes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Here, **PARAM_NAME** is the name of a method request parameter of the given parameter type. It must have been defined before it can be referenced. **JSONPath_EXPRESSION** is a JSONPath expression for a JSON field of the body of a request or response. However, the "." prefix is omitted in this syntax.

**Example mappings from method request parameter in Swagger**

The following example shows a Swagger snippet that maps 1) the method request's header, named `methodRequestHeaderParam`, into the integration request path parameter, named `integrationPathParam`; 2) the method request query string, named `methodRequestQueryParam`, into the integration request query string, named `integrationQueryParam`.

```json
...
"requestParameters" : {
    "integration.request.path.integrationPathParam" : "method.request.header.methodRequestHeaderParam",
    "integration.request.querystring.integrationQueryParam" : "method.request.querystring.methodRequestQueryParam"
}
...
```

Integration request parameters can also be mapped from fields in the JSON request body using a JSONPath expression. The following table shows the mapping expressions for a method request body and its JSON fields.

**Example mapping from method request body in Swagger**

The following example shows a Swagger snippet that maps 1) the method request body to the integration request header, named `body-header`, and 2) a JSON field of the body, as expressed by a JSON expression (`petstore.pets[0].name`, without the "." prefix).

```json
...
"requestParameters" : {
    "integration.request.header.body-header" : "method.request.body",
    "integration.request.path.pet-name" : "method.request.body.petstore.pets[0].name",
}
...
```

**Map Integration Response Data to Method Response Headers**

Method response header parameters can be mapped from any integration response header or integration response body, 
$context variables, or static values.

**Method response header mapping expressions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mapped Data Source</th>
<th>Mapping expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Integration response header</td>
<td>integration.response.header.PARAM_NAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integration response body</td>
<td>integration.response.body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integration response body (JsonPath)</td>
<td>integration.response.body.JSONPath_EXPRESSION</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Mapped Data Source

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mapped Data Source</th>
<th>Mapping expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage variable</td>
<td>stageVariables.VARIABLE_NAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context variable</td>
<td>context.VARIABLE_NAME that must be one of the supported context variables (p. 189).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static value</td>
<td>'STATIC_VALUE'. The STATIC_VALUE is a string literal and must be enclosed within a pair of single quotes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example data mapping from integration response in Swagger

The following example shows a Swagger snippet that maps 1) the integration response's redirect.url JSONPath field into the request response's location header; and 2) the integration response's x-app-id header to the method response's id header.

```json
... "responseParameters" : {
    "method.response.header.location" : "integration.response.body.redirect.url",
    "method.response.header.id" : "integration.response.header.x-app-id",
} ...
```

### Map Request and Response Payloads between Method and Integration

API Gateway uses Velocity Template Language (VTL) engine to process body mapping templates (p. 166) for the integration request and integration response. The mapping templates translate method request payloads to the corresponding integration request payloads and translate integration response bodies to the method response bodies.

The VTL templates use JSONPath expressions, other parameters such as calling contexts and stage variables, and utility functions to process the JSON data.

If a model is defined to describe the data structure of a payload, API Gateway can use the model to generate a skeletal mapping template for an integration request or integration response. You can use the skeletal template as an aid to customize and expand the mapping VTL script. However, you can create a mapping template from scratch without defining a model for the payload's data structure.

### Select a VTL Mapping Template

API Gateway uses the following logic to select a mapping template, in Velocity Template Language (VTL), to map the payload from a method request to the corresponding integration request or to map the payload from an integration response to the corresponding method response.

For a request payload, API Gateway uses the request's Content-Type header value as the key to select the mapping template for the request payload. For a response payload, API Gateway uses the incoming request's Accept header value as the key to select the mapping template.

When the Content-Type header is absent in the request, API Gateway assumes that its default value is application/json. For such a request, API Gateway uses application/json as the default key.
to select the mapping template, if one is defined. When no template matches this key, API Gateway passes the payload through unmapped if the passthroughBehavior property is set to WHEN_NO_MATCH or WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES.

When the Accept header is not specified in the request, API Gateway assumes that its default value is application/json. In this case, API Gateway selects an existing mapping template for application/json to map the response payload. If no template is defined for application/json, API Gateway selects the first existing template and uses it as the default to map the response payload. Similarly, API Gateway uses the first existing template when the specified Accept header value does not match any existing template key. If no template is defined, API Gateway simply passes the response payload through unmapped.

For example, suppose that an API has a application/json template defined for a request payload and has a application/xml template defined for the response payload. If the client sets the "Content-Type : application/json", and "Accept : application/xml" headers in the request, both the request and response payloads will be processed with the corresponding mapping templates. If the Accept:application/xml header is absent, the application/xml mapping template will be used to map the response payload. To return the response payload unmapped instead, you must set up an empty template for application/json.

Only the MIME type is used from the Accept and Content-Type headers when selecting a mapping template. For example, a header of "Content-Type: application/json; charset=UTF-8" will have a request template with the application/json key selected.

Integration Passthrough Behaviors

With non proxy integrations, when a method request carries a payload and either the Content-Type header does not match any specified mapping template or no mapping template is defined, you can choose to pass the client supplied request payload through the integration request to the backend without transformation. The process is known as integration passthrough.

For proxy integrations (p. 120), API Gateway passes entire request through to backend and you do not have any option to modify the passthrough behaviors.

The actual passthrough behavior of an incoming request is determined by the option you choose for a specified mapping template, during integration request set-up (p. 160), and the Content Type header that a client set in the incoming request. The following examples illustrate the possible passthrough behaviors.

Example 1: One mapping template is defined in the integration request for the application/json content type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content-Type header \Selected passthrough option</th>
<th>WHEN_NO_MATCH</th>
<th>WHEN_NO_TEMPLATE</th>
<th>NEVER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None (default to application/json)</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application/json</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application/xml</td>
<td>The request payload is not transformed and is sent to the backend as-is.</td>
<td>The request is rejected with an HTTP 415 Unsupported Media Type response.</td>
<td>The request is rejected with an HTTP 415 Unsupported Media Type response.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example 2: One mapping template is defined in the integration request for the application/xml content type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content-Type header \Selected passthrough option</th>
<th>WHEN_NO_MATCH</th>
<th>WHEN_NO_TEMPLATE</th>
<th>NEVER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None (default to application/json)</td>
<td>The request payload is not transformed and is sent to the backend as-is.</td>
<td>The request is rejected with an HTTP 415 Unsupported Media Type response.</td>
<td>The request is rejected with an HTTP 415 Unsupported Media Type response.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application/json</td>
<td>The request payload is not transformed and is sent to the backend as-is.</td>
<td>The request is rejected with an HTTP 415 Unsupported Media Type response.</td>
<td>The request is rejected with an HTTP 415 Unsupported Media Type response.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application/xml</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
<td>The request payload is transformed using the template.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

API Gateway Mapping Template Reference

Amazon API Gateway defines a set of variables and functions for working with models and mapping templates. This document describes those functions and provides examples for working with input payloads.

Topics

- Accessing the $context Variable (p. 189)
- Accessing the $input Variable (p. 192)
- Accessing the $stageVariables Variable (p. 195)
- Accessing the $util Variable (p. 195)

Accessing the $context Variable

The $context variable holds all the contextual information of your API call.

$context Variable Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$context.apiId</td>
<td>The identifier API Gateway assigns to your API.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.authorizer.claims.property</td>
<td>A property of the claims returned from the Amazon Cognito user pool after the method caller is successfully authenticated. Note Calling $context.authorizer.claims returns null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.authorizer.principalId</td>
<td>The principal user identification associated with the token sent by the client and returned from an API Gateway custom authorizer Lambda function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.authorizer.&lt;property&gt;</td>
<td>The stringified value of the specified key-value pair of the context map returned from an API Gateway custom authorizer Lambda function. For example, if the authorizer returns the following context map:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;context&quot; : {</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;key&quot;: &quot;value&quot;,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;numKey&quot;: 1,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;boolKey&quot;: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calling $context.authorizer.key returns the &quot;value&quot; string, calling $context.authorizer.numKey returns the &quot;1&quot; string, and calling $context.authorizer.boolKey returns the &quot;true&quot; string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.httpMethod</td>
<td>The HTTP method used. Valid values include: DELETE, GET, HEAD, OPTIONS, PATCH, POST, and PUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.error.message</td>
<td>A string of a customizable API Gateway error message. This variable can only be used for simple variable substitution in a GatewayResponse body-mapping template, which is not processed by the Velocity Template Language engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.error.responseType</td>
<td>A type of GatewayResponse. This variable can only be used for simple variable substitution in a GatewayResponse body-mapping template, which is not processed by the Velocity Template Language engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.accountId</td>
<td>The AWS account ID associated with the request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.apiKey</td>
<td>The API owner key associated with key-enabled API request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.apiKeyId</td>
<td>The API key ID associated with the key-enabled API request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.caller</td>
<td>The principal identifier of the caller making the request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.cognitoAuthenticationProvider</td>
<td>The Amazon Cognito authentication provider used by the caller making the request. Available only if the request was signed with Amazon Cognito credentials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For information related to this and the other Amazon Cognito $context variables, see Using Federated Identities in the Amazon Cognito Developer Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.cognitoAuthenticationType</td>
<td>The Amazon Cognito authentication type of the caller making the request. Available only if the request was signed with Amazon Cognito credentials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.cognitoIdentityId</td>
<td>The Amazon Cognito identity ID of the caller making the request. Available only if the request was signed with Amazon Cognito credentials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.cognitoIdentityPoolId</td>
<td>The Amazon Cognito identity pool ID of the caller making the request. Available only if the request was signed with Amazon Cognito credentials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.sourceIp</td>
<td>The source IP address of the TCP connection making the request to API Gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.user</td>
<td>The principal identifier of the user making the request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.userAgent</td>
<td>The User Agent of the API caller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.identity.userArn</td>
<td>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the effective user identified after authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.path</td>
<td>The request path. For example, for the non-proxy request URI of https://{rest-api-id.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com/{stage}/root/child, The $context.path value is /{stage}/root/child.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.protocol</td>
<td>The request protocol, for example, HTTP/1.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.requestId</td>
<td>An automatically generated ID for the API call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.requestTime</td>
<td>The CLF-formatted request time (dd/MMM/yyyy:HH:mm:ss +-hhmm).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.requestTimeEpoch</td>
<td>The Epoch-formatted request time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.resourceId</td>
<td>The identifier API Gateway assigns to your resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.resourcePath</td>
<td>The path to your resource. For example, for the non-proxy request URI of https://{rest-api-id.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com/{stage}/root/child, The $context.resourcePath value is /root/child. For more information, see Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.responseLength</td>
<td>The response payload length, available for access logging only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.status</td>
<td>The response status, available for access logging only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$context.stage</td>
<td>The deployment stage of the API call (for example, Beta or Prod).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example

You may want to use the $context variable if you’re using AWS Lambda as the target backend that the API method calls. For example, you may want to perform two different actions depending on whether the stage is in Beta or in Prod.

Context Variables Template Example

The following example shows how to get context variables:

```
{
  "stage" : "$context.stage",
  "request_id" : "$context.requestId",
  "api_id" : "$context.apiId",
  "resource_path" : "$context.resourcePath",
  "resource_id" : "$context.resourceId",
  "http_method" : "$context.httpMethod",
  "source_ip" : "$context.identity.sourceIp",
  "user-agent" : "$context.identity.userAgent",
  "account_id" : "$context.identity.accountId",
  "api_key" : "$context.identity.apiKey",
  "caller" : "$context.identity.caller",
  "user" : "$context.identity.user",
  "user_arn" : "$context.identity.userArn"
}
```

Accessing the $input Variable

The $input variable represents the input payload and parameters to be processed by your template. It provides four functions:

Function Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable and Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$input.body</td>
<td>Returns the raw payload as a string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$input.json(x)</td>
<td>This function evaluates a JSONPath expression and returns the results as a JSON string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example, $input.json('$.pets') will return a JSON string representing the pets structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information about JSONPath, see JSONPath or JSONPath for Java.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$input.params()</td>
<td>Returns a map of all the request parameters of your API call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$input.params(x)</td>
<td>Returns the value of a method request parameter from the path, query string, or header value (in that order) given a parameter name string x.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$input.path(x)</td>
<td>Takes a JSONPath expression string (x) and returns an object representation of the result. This allows you to access and manipulate elements of the payload natively in Apache Velocity Template Language (VTL).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example, $input.path('$.pets').size()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

You may want to use the $input variable to get query strings and the request body with or without using models. You may also want to get the parameter and the payload, or a subsection of the payload, into your AWS Lambda function. The examples below show how to do this.

Example JSON Mapping Template

The following example shows how to use a mapping to read a name from the query string and then include the entire POST body in an element:

```json
{
    "name" : "$input.params('name')",
    "body" : $input.json('$')
}
```

If the JSON input contains unescaped characters that cannot be parsed by JavaScript, a 400 response may be returned. Applying $util.escapeJavaScript($input.json('$')) above will ensure that the JSON input can be parsed properly.

Example Inputs Mapping Template

The following example shows how to pass a JSONPath expression to the json() method. You could also read a specific property of your request body object by using a period (.), followed by your property name:

```json
{
    "name" : "$input.params('name')",
    "body" : $input.json('$.mykey')
}
```

If a method request payload contains unescaped characters that cannot be parsed by JavaScript, you may get 400 response. In this case, you need to call $util.escapeJavaScript() function in the mapping template, as shown as follows:

```json
{
    "name" : "$input.params('name')",
    "body" : $util.escapeJavaScript($input.json('$.mykey'))
}
```

Param Mapping Template Example

The following parameter-mapping example passes all parameters, including path, querystring and header, through to the integration endpoint via a JSON payload

```java
#set($allParams = $input.params())
{
    "params" : {
        #foreach($type in $allParams.keySet())
        #set($params = $allParams.get($type))
        "$type" : {
            #foreach($paramName in $params.keySet())
            "$paramName" : "$util.escapeJavaScript($params.get($paramName))"
        }
    }
}
```
In effect, this mapping template outputs all the request parameters in the payload as outlined as follows:

```
{
  "parameters" : {
    "path" : {
      "path_name" : "path_value",
      ...
    },
    "header" : {
      "header_name" : "header_value",
      ...
    },
    "querystring" : {
      "querystring_name" : "querystring_value",
      ...
    }
  }
}
```

**Example Request and Response**

Here's an example that uses all three functions:

**Request Template:**

Resource: /things/{id}

With input template:

```
{  
  "id" : "$input.params('id')",
  "count" : "$input.path('$.things').size()",
  "things" : $util.escapeJavaScript($input.json('$.things'))
}
```

POST /things/abc

```
{  
  "things" : {
    "1" : {},
    "2" : {},
    "3" : {}
  }
}
```

**Response:**

```
{
  "id": "abc",
  "count": "3",
  "things": {  
    "1": {},
    "2": {},
    "3": {}
  }
}
```
For more mapping examples, see Create Models and Mapping Templates for Request and Response Mappings (p. 162)

**Accessing the $stageVariables Variable**

The syntax for inserting a stage variable looks like this: $stageVariables.

### $stageVariables Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$stageVariables.&lt;variable_name&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;variable_name&gt; represents a stage variable name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$stageVariables['&lt;variable_name&gt;']</td>
<td>&lt;variable_name&gt; represents any stage variable name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${stageVariables['&lt;variable_name&gt;']}</td>
<td>&lt;variable_name&gt; represents any stage variable name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Accessing the $util Variable**

The $util variable contains utility functions for use in mapping templates.

**Note**

Unless otherwise specified, the default character set is UTF-8.

### $util Variable Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$util.escapeJavaScript()</td>
<td>Escapes the characters in a string using JavaScript string rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This function will turn any regular single quotes (‘) into escaped ones (\’).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>However, the escaped single quotes are not valid in JSON. Thus, when the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>output from this function is used in a JSON property, you must turn any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>escaped single quotes (\’) back to regular single quotes (‘). This is shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the following example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$util.escapeJavaScript(data).replaceAll(&quot;&quot;,&quot;&quot;&quot;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| $util.parseJson()           | Takes "stringified" JSON and returns an object representation of the result.|
|                            | You can use the result from this function to access and manipulate elements |
|                            | of the payload natively in Apache Velocity Template Language (VTL). For     |
|                            | example, if you have the following payload:                                 |
|                            |     \{"errorMessage":{"key1":"var1","key2":{"arr":[1,2,3]}}\} \}  |
Support Binary Payloads in API Gateway

In API Gateway, the API request and response can have a text or binary payload. A text payload is a UTF-8-encoded JSON string, and a binary payload is anything other than a text payload. The binary payload can be, for example, a JPEG file, a GZip file, or an XML file.

By default, API Gateway treats the message body as a text payload and applies any preconfigured mapping template to transform the JSON string. If no mapping template is specified, API Gateway can pass the text payload through to or from the integration endpoint without modification, provided that the passthrough behavior is enabled on the API method. For a binary payload, API Gateway simply passes through the message as-is.

For API Gateway to pass binary payloads, you add the media types to the binaryMediaTypes list of the RestApi resource or set the contentHandling properties on the Integration and the IntegrationResponse resources. The contentHandling value can be CONVERT_TO_BINARY, CONVERT_TO_TEXT, or undefined. Depending on the contentHandling value, and whether the Content-Type header of the response or the Accept header of the incoming request matches an entry in the binaryMediaTypes list, API Gateway can encode the raw binary bytes as a Base64-encoded string, decode a Base64-encoded string back to its raw bytes, or pass the body through without modification.

You must configure the API as follows to support binary payloads for your API in API Gateway:

- Add the desired binary media types to the binaryMediaTypes list on the RestApi resource. If this property and the contentHandling property are not defined, the payloads are handled as UTF-8 encoded JSON strings.
- Set the contentHandling property of the Integration resource to CONVERT_TO_BINARY to have the request payload converted from a Base64-encoded string to its binary blob, or set the property to CONVERT_TO_TEXT to have the request payload converted from a binary blob to a Base64-encoded string. If this property is not defined, API Gateway passes the payload through without modification.
This occurs when the `Content-Type` header value matches one of the `binaryMediaTypes` entries and the `passthrough behaviors (p. 188)` are also enabled for the API.

- Set the `contentHandling` property of the `IntegrationResponse` resource to `CONVERT_TO_BINARY` to have the response payload converted from a Base64-encoded string to its binary blob, or set the property to `CONVERT_TO_TEXT` to have the response payload converted from a binary blob to a Base64-encoded string. If `contentHandling` is not defined, and if the `Content-Type` header of the response and the `Accept` header of the original request match an entry of the `binaryMediaTypes` list, API Gateway passes through the body. This occurs when the `Content-Type` header and the `Accept` header are the same; otherwise, API Gateway converts the response body to the type specified in the `Accept` header.

### Topics
- Content Type Conversions in API Gateway (p. 197)
- Enable Binary Support Using the API Gateway Console (p. 199)
- Enable Binary Support Using API Gateway REST API (p. 202)
- Import and Export Content Encodings (p. 206)
- Examples of Binary Support (p. 206)

## Content Type Conversions in API Gateway

The following table shows how API Gateway converts the request payload for specific configurations of a request's `Content-Type` header, the `binaryMediaTypes` list of a `RestApi` resource, and the `contentHandling` property value of the `Integration` resource.

### API Request Content Type Conversions in API Gateway

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method request payload</th>
<th>Request <code>Content-Type</code> header</th>
<th><code>binaryMediaTypes</code></th>
<th><code>contentHandling</code></th>
<th>Integration request payload</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>Any data type</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>UTF8-encoded string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>Any data type</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_BINARY</td>
<td>Base64-decoded binary blob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>Any data type</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_TEXT</td>
<td>UTF8-encoded string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A text data type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>Text data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A text data type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_BINARY</td>
<td>Base64-decoded binary blob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A text data type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_TEXT</td>
<td>Text data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A binary data type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>Binary data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A binary data type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_BINARY</td>
<td>Binary data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A binary data type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_TEXT</td>
<td>Base64-encoded string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following table shows how API Gateway converts the response payload for specific configurations of a request's `Accept` header, the `binaryMediaTypes` list of a `RestApi` resource, and the `contentHandling` property value of the `IntegrationResponse` resource.

### API Gateway Response Content Type Conversions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Integration response payload</th>
<th>Request Accept header</th>
<th>binaryMediaTypes</th>
<th>contentHandling</th>
<th>Method response payload</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text or binary data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>UTF8-encoded string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text or binary data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_BINARY</td>
<td>Base64-decoded blob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text or binary data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_TEXT</td>
<td>UTF8-encoded string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>Text data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_BINARY</td>
<td>Base64-decoded blob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_TEXT</td>
<td>UTF8-encoded string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A binary type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>Base64-decoded blob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A binary type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_BINARY</td>
<td>Base64-decoded blob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text data</td>
<td>A binary type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_TEXT</td>
<td>UTF8-encoded string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>Base64-encoded string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_BINARY</td>
<td>Binary data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A text type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_TEXT</td>
<td>Base64-encoded string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A binary type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>Binary data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A binary type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_BINARY</td>
<td>Binary data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary data</td>
<td>A binary type</td>
<td>Set with matching media types</td>
<td>CONVERT_TO_TEXT</td>
<td>Base64-encoded string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tip**

When a request contains multiple media types in its `Accept` header, API Gateway only honors the first `Accept` media type. In the situation where you cannot control the order of the `Accept` media types and the media type of your binary content is not the first in the list, you can add the first `Accept` media type in the `binaryMediaTypes` list of your API, API Gateway will return your content as binary. For example, to send a JPEG file using an `<img>` element in a browser,
the browser might send `Accept:image/webp,image/*,*/*;q=0.8` in a request. By adding `image/webp` to the `binaryMediaTypes` list, the endpoint will receive the JPEG file as binary.

When converting a text payload to a binary blob, API Gateway assumes that the text data is a Base64-encoded string and outputs the binary data as a Base64-decoded blob. If the conversion fails, it returns a 500 response indicating an API configuration error. You do not provide a mapping template for such a conversion, although you must enable the passthrough behaviors (p. 188) on the API.

When converting a binary payload to a text string, API Gateway always applies a Base64 encoding on the binary data. You can define a mapping template for such a payload, but can only access the Base64-encoded string in the mapping template through `$input.body`, as shown in the following excerpt of an example mapping template.

```json
{
  "data": "$input.body"
}
```

To have the binary payload passed through without modification, you must enable the `passthrough behaviors` (p. 188) on the API.

Enable Binary Support Using the API Gateway Console

The section explains how to enable binary support using the API Gateway console. As an example, we use an API integrated with Amazon S3. We focus on the tasks to set the supported media types and to specify how the payload should be handled. For detailed information on how to create an API integrated with Amazon S3, see Create an API as an Amazon S3 Proxy (p. 502).

To enable binary support using the API Gateway console

1. Set binary media types for the API:
   a. Create a new API or choose an existing API. For this example, we name the API `FileMan`.
   b. Choose Binary Support under the API.
   c. In the Binary Support pane, choose Edit.
   d. Choose Add binary media types and type a MIME type to be supported for your API.
   e. Choose Save.

2. Set how message payloads are handled for the API method:
a. Create a new or choose an existing resource in the API. For this example, we use the /{folder}/{item} resource.

b. Create a new or choose an existing method on the resource. As an example, we use the GET /{folder}/{item} method integrated with the Object GET action in Amazon S3.

c. In Content Handling, choose an option.

Choose **Passthrough** if you do not want to convert the body when the client and backend accepts the same binary format. Choose **Convert to text (if needed)** to convert the binary body to a Base64-encoded string when, for example, the backend requires that a binary request payload is passed in as a JSON property. And choose **Convert to binary (if needed)** when the client submits a Base64-encoded string and the backend requires the original binary format, or when the endpoint returns a Base64-encoded string and the client accepts only the binary output.

d. Preserve the incoming request's `Accept` header in the integration request. You should do this if you've set `contentHandling` to `passthrough` and want to override that setting at run time.
e. Enable the passthrough behavior on the request body.

f. For conversion to text, define a mapping template to put the Base64-encoded binary data into the required format.
Enable Binary Support Using API Gateway REST API

The following tasks show how to enable binary support using the API Gateway REST API calls.

Topics
- Add and Update Supported Binary Media Types to an API (p. 202)
- Configure Request Payload Conversions (p. 203)
- Configure Response Payload Conversions (p. 203)
- Convert Binary Data to Text Data (p. 204)
- Convert Text Data to a Binary Payload (p. 204)
- Pass through a Binary Payload (p. 205)

Add and Update Supported Binary Media Types to an API

To enable API Gateway to support a new binary media type, you must add the binary media type to the binaryMediaTypes list of the RestApi resource. For example, to have API Gateway handle JPEG images, submit a PATCH request to the RestApi resource:
PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>
{
    "patchOperations": [
        {
            "op": "add",
            "path": "/binaryMediaTypes/image~1jpeg"
        }
    ]
}

The MIME type specification of image/jpeg that is part of the path property value is escaped as image~1jpeg.

To update the supported binary media types, replace or remove the media type from the binaryMediaTypes list of the RestApi resource. For example, to change binary support from JPEG files to raw bytes, submit a PATCH request to the RestApi resource, as follows:

PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>
{
    "patchOperations": [
        {
            "op": "replace",
            "path": "/binaryMediaTypes/image~1jpeg",
            "value": "application/octet-stream"
        },
        {
            "op": "remove",
            "path": "/binaryMediaTypes/image~1jpeg"
        }
    ]
}

Configure Request Payload Conversions

If the endpoint requires a binary input, set the contentHandling property of the Integration resource to CONVERT_TO_BINARY. To do so, submit a PATCH request, as shown next:

PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>/resources/<resource_id>/methods/<http_method>/integration
{
    "patchOperations": [
        {
            "op": "replace",
            "path": "/contentHandling",
            "value": "CONVERT_TO_BINARY"
        }
    ]
}

Configure Response Payload Conversions

If the client accepts the result as a binary blob instead of a Base64-encoded payload returned from the endpoint, set the contentHandling property of the IntegrationResponse resource to CONVERT_TO_BINARY by submitting a PATCH request, as shown next:

PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>/resources/<resource_id>/methods/<http_method>/integration/responses/<status_code>
{
    "patchOperations": [
        {
            "op": "replace",
            "path": "/contentHandling",
            "value": "CONVERT_TO_BINARY"
        }
    ]
}
Convert Binary Data to Text Data

To send binary data as a JSON property of the input to AWS Lambda or Kinesis through API Gateway, do the following:

1. Enable the binary payload support of the API by adding the new binary media type of application/octet-stream to the API's binaryMediaTypes list.

   ```json
   PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>
   {
     "patchOperations": [
       {
         "op": "add",
         "path": "/binaryMediaTypes/application~1octet-stream"
       }
     ]
   }
   
   204
   
   2. Set CONVERT_TO_TEXT on the contentHandling property of the Integration resource and provide a mapping template to assign the Base64-encoded string of the binary data to a JSON property. In the following example, the JSON property is body and $input.body holds the Base64-encoded string.

   ```json
   PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>/resources/<resource_id>/methods/<http_method>/integration
   {
     "patchOperations": [
       {
         "op": "replace",
         "path": "/contentHandling",
         "value": "CONVERT_TO_TEXT"
       },
       {
         "op": "add",
         "path": "/requestTemplates/application~1octet-stream",
         "value": "\"body\": \"$input.body\""
       }
     ]
   }
   
   Convert Text Data to a Binary Payload

   Suppose a Lambda function returns an image file as a Base64-encoded string. To pass this binary output to the client through API Gateway, do the following:

   1. Update the API's binaryMediaTypes list by adding the binary media type of application/octet-stream, if it is not already in the list.

   ```json
   PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>
   {
     "patchOperations": [
       {
         "op": "add",
         "path": "/binaryMediaTypes/application~1octet-stream",
       }
     ]
   }
   ```
2. Set the `contentHandling` property on the `Integration` resource to `CONVERT_TO_BINARY`. Do not define a mapping template. When you do not define a mapping template, API Gateway invokes the passthrough template to return the Base64-decoded binary blob as the image file to the client.

```
PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>/resources/<resource_id>/methods/<http_method>/integration/responses/<status_code>
{
  "patchOperations" : [ 
    { "op" : "replace", 
      "path" : "/contentHandling", 
      "value" : "CONVERT_TO_BINARY"
    }
  ]
}
```

### Pass through a Binary Payload

To store an image in an Amazon S3 bucket using API Gateway, do the following:

1. Update the API's `binaryMediaTypes` list by adding the binary media type of `application/octet-stream`, if it is not already in the list.

```
PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>
{
  "patchOperations" : [ { 
    "op" : "add", 
    "path" : "/binaryMediaTypes/application/octet-stream"
  } ]
}
```

2. On the `contentHandling` property of the `Integration` resource, set `CONVERT_TO_BINARY`. Set `WHEN_NO_MATCH` as the `passthroughBehavior` property value without defining a mapping template. This enables API Gateway to invoke the passthrough template.

```
PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>/resources/<resource_id>/methods/<http_method>/integration/
{
  "patchOperations" : [ 
    { "op" : "replace", 
      "path" : "/contentHandling", 
      "value" : "CONVERT_TO_BINARY"
    },
    { "op" : "replace", 
      "path" : "/passthroughBehaviors", 
      "value" : "WHEN_NO_MATCH"
    }
  ]
}
```
**Import and Export Content Encodings**

To import the `binaryMediaTypes` list on a `RestApi`, use the following API Gateway extension to the API's Swagger definition file. The extension is also used to export the API settings.

- `x-amazon-apigateway-binary-media-types Property (p. 469)`

To import and export the `contentHandling` property value on an `Integration` or `IntegrationResponse` resource, use the following API Gateway extensions to the Swagger definitions:

- `x-amazon-apigateway-integration Object (p. 473)`
- `x-amazon-apigateway-integration.response Object (p. 479)`

**Examples of Binary Support**

The following example demonstrates how to access a binary file in Amazon S3 or AWS Lambda through an API Gateway API. The sample API is presented in a Swagger file. The code example uses the API Gateway REST API calls.

**Topics**

- Access Binary Files in Amazon S3 through an API Gateway API (p. 206)
- Access Binary Files in Lambda Using an API Gateway API (p. 209)

**Access Binary Files in Amazon S3 through an API Gateway API**

The following examples show the Swagger file used to access images in Amazon S3, how to download an image from Amazon S3, and how to upload an image to Amazon S3.

**Topics**

- Swagger File of a Sample API to Access Images in Amazon S3 (p. 206)
- Download an Image from Amazon S3 (p. 208)
- Upload an Image to Amazon S3 (p. 209)

**Swagger File of a Sample API to Access Images in Amazon S3**

The following Swagger file shows a sample API that illustrates downloading an image file from Amazon S3 and uploading an image file to Amazon S3. This API exposes the `GET /s3?key={file-name}` and `PUT /s3?key={file-name}` methods for downloading and uploading a specified image file. The `GET` method returns the image file as a Base64-encoded string as part of a JSON output, following the supplied mapping template, in a 200 OK response. The `PUT` method takes a raw binary blob as input and returns a 200 OK response with an empty payload.

```json
{
  "swagger": "2.0",
  "info": {
    "version": "2016-10-21T17:26:28Z",
    "title": "ApiName"
  },
  "host": "abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
  "basePath": "/v1",
  "schemes": ["https"
]
}
```
"paths": {
  "/s3": {
    "get": {
      "produces": [
        "application/json"
      ],
      "parameters": [
        {
          "name": "key",
          "in": "query",
          "required": false,
          "type": "string"
        }
      ],
      "responses": {
        "200": {
          "description": "200 response",
          "schema": {
            "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
          }
        },
        "500": {
          "description": "500 response"
        }
      },
      "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
        "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/binarySupportRole",
        "responses": {
          "default": {
            "statusCode": "500"
          },
          "2\d{2}": {
            "statusCode": "200"
          }
        },
        "requestParameters": {
          "integration.request.path.key": "method.request.querystring.key"
        },
        "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/{key}",
        "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
        "httpMethod": "GET",
        "type": "aws"
      }
    },
    "put": {
      "produces": [
        "application/json", "application/octet-stream"
      ],
      "parameters": [
        {
          "name": "key",
          "in": "query",
          "required": false,
          "type": "string"
        }
      ],
      "responses": {
        "200": {
          "description": "200 response",
          "schema": {
            "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
          }
        },
        "500": {
          "description": "500 response"
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {  "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/binarySupportRole",  "responses": {  "default": {  "statusCode": "500"  },  "2\d{2}": {  "statusCode": "200"  }  },  "requestParameters": {  "integration.request.path.key": "method.request.querystring.key"  },  "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/{key}",  "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",  "httpMethod": "PUT",  "type": "aws",  "contentHandling" : "CONVERT_TO_BINARY"  }
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-binary-media-types" : ["application/octet-stream", "image/jpeg"],
"definitions": {  "Empty": {  "type": "object",  "title": "Empty Schema"  }  }
}

Download an Image from Amazon S3

To download an image file (image.jpg) as a binary blob from Amazon S3:

```
GET /v1/s3?key=image.jpg HTTP/1.1
Host: abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/octet-stream
```

The successful response looks like this:

```
200 OK HTTP/1.1

[raw bytes]
```

The raw bytes are returned because the `Accept` header is set to a binary media type of `application/octet-stream` and binary support is enabled for the API.

Alternatively, to download an image file (image.jpg) as a Base64-encoded string, formatted as a JSON property, from Amazon S3, add a response template to the 200 integration response like this, as shown in the bold-faced Swagger definition block below:

```
```
"responseTemplates": {
   "application/json": "{"image": "$input.body"}"
},

The request to download the image file looks like this:

```
GET /v1/s3?key=image.jpg HTTP/1.1
Host: abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json
```

The successful response looks like this:

```
200 OK HTTP/1.1
{
   "image": "W3JhdyBieXRlc10=
}
```

### Upload an Image to Amazon S3

To upload an image file (`image.jpg`) as a binary blob to Amazon S3:

```
PUT /v1/s3?key=image.jpg HTTP/1.1
Host: abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/octet-stream
Accept: application/json

[raw bytes]
```

The successful response looks like this:

```
200 OK HTTP/1.1

```

To upload an image file (`image.jpg`) as a Base64-encoded string to Amazon S3:

```
PUT /v1/s3?key=image.jpg HTTP/1.1
Host: abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json

W3JhdyBieXRlc10=
```

Notice that the input payload must be a Base64-encoded string, because the `Content-Type` header value is set to `application/json`. The successful response looks like this:

```
200 OK HTTP/1.1
```

### Access Binary Files in Lambda Using an API Gateway API

The following example demonstrates how to access a binary file in AWS Lambda through an API Gateway API. The sample API is presented in a Swagger file. The code example uses the API Gateway REST API calls.

**Topics**
Examples of Binary Support

- Swagger File of a Sample API to Access Images in Lambda (p. 210)
- Download an Image from Lambda (p. 211)
- Upload an Image to Lambda (p. 212)

Swagger File of a Sample API to Access Images in Lambda

The following Swagger file shows an example API that illustrates downloading an image file from Lambda and uploading an image file to Lambda.

```json
{
   "swagger": "2.0",
   "info": {
      "version": "2016-10-21T17:26:28Z",
      "title": "ApiName"
   },
   "host": "abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
   "basePath": "/v1",
   "schemes": ["https"],
   "paths": {
      "/lambda": {
         "get": {
            "produces": ["application/json"],
            "parameters": [
               {
                  "name": "key",
                  "in": "query",
                  "required": false,
                  "type": "string"
               }
            ],
            "responses": {
               "200": {
                  "description": "200 response",
                  "schema": {
                     "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
                  }
               },
               "500": {
                  "description": "500 response"
               }
            },
            "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
               "type": "AWS",
               "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/Lambda",
               "httpMethod": "POST",
               "requestTemplates": {
                  "application/json": "{\n                     imageKey": "$input.params('key')\\n                  }"},
               "responses": {
                  "default": {
                     "statusCode": "500"
                  },
                  "200": {
                     "statusCode": "200",
                     "responseTemplates": {
                        "application/json": "{\n                           image": "$input.body\\n                        }"}
                  }
               }
            }
         }
      }
   }
}
```
Download an Image from Lambda

To download an image file (image.jpg) as a binary blob from Lambda:

GET /v1/s3?key=image.jpg HTTP/1.1
Examples of Binary Support

Host: abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/octet-stream

The successful response looks like this:

200 OK HTTP/1.1
[raw bytes]

To download an image file (image.jpg) as a Base64-encoded string, formatted as a JSON property, from Lambda:

GET /v1/s3?key=image.jpg HTTP/1.1
Host: abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json

The successful response looks like this:

200 OK HTTP/1.1
{
  "image": "W3JhdyBieXRlc10=
}

Upload an Image to Lambda

To upload an image file (image.jpg) as a binary blob to Lambda:

PUT /v1/s3?key=image.jpg HTTP/1.1
Host: abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/octet-stream
Accept: application/json
[raw bytes]

The successful response looks like this:

200 OK

To upload an image file (image.jpg) as a Base64-encoded string to Lambda:

PUT /v1/s3?key=image.jpg HTTP/1.1
Host: abcdefghi.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json
W3JhdyBieXRlc10=

The successful response looks like this:

200 OK
Enable Payload Compression for an API

API Gateway allows your client to call your API with compressed payloads using one of the supported content codings (p. 215). By default, API Gateway supports decompression of the method request payload. However, you must configure your API to enable compression of the method response payload.

To enable compression on an API, set the minimumCompressionSize property to a non-negative integer between 0 and 10485760 (10M bytes) when you create the API or after you've created the API. To disable compression on the API, set the minimumCompressionSize to null or remove it altogether. You can enable or disable compression for an API by using the API Gateway console, the AWS CLI, or the API Gateway REST API.

If you want the compression applied on a payload of any size, set the minimumCompressionSize value to zero. However, compressing data of a small size might actually increase the final data size. Furthermore, compression in API Gateway and decompression in the client might increase overall latency and require more computing times. You should run test cases against your API to determine an optimal value.

The client can submit an API request with a compressed payload and an appropriate Content-Encoding header for API Gateway to decompress the method request payload and apply applicable mapping templates, before passing the request to the integration endpoint. After the compression is enabled and the API is deployed, the client can receive an API response with a compressed payload if it specifies an appropriate Accept-Encoding header in the method request.

When the integration endpoint expects and returns uncompressed JSON payloads, any mapping template that’s configured for an uncompressed JSON payload is applicable to the compressed payload. For a compressed method request payload, API Gateway decompresses the payload, applies the mapping template, and passes the mapped request to the integration endpoint. For an uncompressed integration response payload, API Gateway applies the mapping template, compresses the mapped payload, and returns the compressed payload to the client.

Topics
- Enable Compression for an API (p. 213)
- Call an API Method with a Compressed Payload (p. 215)
- Receive an API Response with a Compressed Payload (p. 216)

Enable Compression for an API

Topics
- Enable Compression for an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 213)
- Enable Compression for an API Using AWS CLI (p. 214)
- Enable Compression for an API Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 214)
- Content Codings Supported by API Gateway (p. 215)

Enable Compression for an API Using the API Gateway Console

The following procedure describes how to enable payload compression for an API.

To enable payload compression by using the API Gateway console

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Choose an existing API or create a new one.
3. In the primary navigation pane, choose Settings under the API you chose or the one you created.
4. Under the **Content Encoding** section in the **Settings** pane, select the **Content Encoding enabled** option to enable payload compression. Type a number for the minimum compression size (in bytes) next to **Minimum body size required for compression**. To disable the compression, clear the **Content Encoding enabled** option.

5. Choose **Save Changes**.

**Enable Compression for an API Using AWS CLI**

To use the AWS CLI to create a new API and enable compression, call the `create-rest-api` command as follows:

```bash
aws apigateway create-rest-api \
--name "My test API" \
--minimumCompressionSize 0
```

To use the AWS CLI to enable compression on an existing API, call the `update-rest-api` command as follows:

```bash
aws apigateway update-rest-api \
--rest-api-id 1234567890 \
--patch-operations op=replace,path=/minimumCompressionSize,value=0
```

The `minimumCompressionSize` property has a non-negative integer value between 0 and 10485760 (10M bytes). It measures the compression threshold. If the payload size is smaller than this value, compression or decompression are not applied on the payload. Setting it to zero allows compression for any payload size.

To use the AWS CLI to disable compression, call the `update-rest-api` command as follows:

```bash
aws apigateway update-rest-api \
--rest-api-id 1234567890 \
--patch-operations op=replace,path=/minimumCompressionSize,value=
```

You can also set `value` to an empty string "" or omit the `value` property altogether in the preceding call.

**Enable Compression for an API Using the API Gateway REST API**

To use the API Gateway REST API to enable compression on a new API, call `restapi:create` as follows:

```
POST /restapis
Host: apigateway.{region}.amazonaws.com
Authorization: apigateway.{region}.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: ...

{
  "name" : "My test API",
  "minimumCompressionSize": 0
}
```

To use the API Gateway REST API to enable compression on an existing API, call `restapi:update` as follows:

```
PATCH /restapis/{restapi_id}
Host: apigateway.{region}.amazonaws.com
```
The `minimumCompressionSize` property has a non-negative integer value between 0 and 10485760 (10M bytes). It measures the compression threshold. If the payload size is smaller than this value, compression or decompression are not applied on the payload. Setting it to zero allows compression for any payload size.

To disable compression by using the API Gateway REST API, call `restapi:update` as follows:

```
PATCH /restapis/{restapi_id}
Host: apigateway.{region}.amazonaws.com
Authorization: ...
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: ...

{  
  "patchOperations" : [ {  
    "op" : "replace",
    "path" : "/minimumCompressionSize",
    "value" : "0"
  } ]
}
```

You can also set value to an empty string "" or omit the value property altogether in the preceding call.

**Content Codings Supported by API Gateway**

API Gateway supports the following content codings:

- deflate
- gzip
- identity

API Gateway also supports the following `Accept-Encoding` header format, according to the RFC 7231 specification:

```
• Accept-Encoding: deflate,gzip
• Accept-Encoding:
• Accept-Encoding: *
• Accept-Encoding:deflate;q=0.5,gzip=1.0
• Accept-Encoding:gzip;q=1.0,identity;q=0.5,*;q=0
```

**Call an API Method with a Compressed Payload**

To make an API request with a compressed payload, the client must set the `Content-Encoding` header with one of the supported content codings (p. 215).
Suppose that you're an API client and want to call the PetStore API method (POST /pets). Don't call the method by using the following JSON output:

```json
POST /pets
Host: {petstore-api-id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com
{
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 249.99
}
```

Instead, you can call the method with the same payload compressed by using the GZIP coding:

```json
POST /pets
Host: {petstore-api-id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com
Content-Encoding:gzip
###RPP*#,HU#RPJ#OW##e&###L,#,-y#j
```

When API Gateway receives the request, it verifies if the specified content coding is supported. Then, it attempts to decompress the payload with the specified content coding. If the decompression is successful, it dispatches the request to the integration endpoint. If the specified coding isn't supported or the supplied payload isn't compressed with specified coding, API Gateway returns the 415 Unsupported Media Type error response.

**Receive an API Response with a Compressed Payload**

When making a request on a compression-enabled API, the client can choose to receive a compressed response payload by specifying an `Accept-Encoding` header with a supported content coding (p. 215).

API Gateway only compresses the response payload when the following conditions are satisfied:

- The incoming request has the `Accept-Encoding` header with a supported content coding and format.
- The `minimumCompressionSize` is set on the API to enable compression.
- The integration response doesn't have a `Content-Encoding` header.
- The size of an integration response payload, after the applicable mapping template is applied, is greater than or equal to the specified `minimumCompressionSize` value.

API Gateway applies any mapping template that's configured for the integration response before compressing the payload. If the integration response contains a `Content-Encoding` header, API Gateway assumes that the integration response payload is already compressed and skips the compression processing.

An example is the PetStore API example and the following request:

```http
GET /pets
Host: {petstore-api-id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com
Accept: application/json
```

The backend responds to the request with an uncompressed JSON payload that's similar to the following:

```json
200 OK
[
  {
```
Enable Request Validation in API Gateway

You can configure API Gateway to perform basic validation of an API request before proceeding with the integration request. When the validation fails, API Gateway immediately fails the request, returns a 400 error response to the caller, and publishes the validation results in CloudWatch Logs. This reduces unnecessary calls to the backend. More importantly, it lets you focus on the validation efforts specific to your application.

Topics
- Overview of Basic Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 217)
- Set up Basic Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 218)
- Test Basic Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 222)
- Swagger Definitions of a Sample API with Basic Request Validation (p. 225)

Overview of Basic Request Validation in API Gateway

API Gateway can perform the basic validation. This enables you, the API developer, to focus on app-specific deep validation in the backend. For the basic validation, API Gateway verifies either or both of the following conditions:
• The required request parameters in the URI, query string, and headers of an incoming request are included and non-blank.
• The applicable request payload adheres to the configured JSON-Schema request model (p. 168) of the method.

To enable basic validation, you specify validation rules in a request validator, add the validator to the API's map of request validators, and assign the validator to individual API methods.

Note
Request body validation and request body passthrough (p. 188) are two separate issues. When a request payload cannot be validated because no model schema can be matched, you can choose to passthrough or block the original payload. For example, when you enable request validation with a mapping template for the application/json media type, you may want to pass an XML payload through to the backend even though the enabled request validation will fail. This may be the case if you expect to support the XML payload on the method in the future. To fail the request with an XML payload, you must explicitly choose the NEVER option for the content passthrough behavior.

Set up Basic Request Validation in API Gateway

You can set up request validators in an API's Swagger definition file and then import the Swagger definitions into API Gateway. You can also set them up in the API Gateway console or by calling the API Gateway REST API, AWS CLI, or one of the AWS SDKs. Here, we show how to do this with a Swagger file, in the console, and using the API Gateway REST API.

Topics
• Set up Basic Request Validation by Importing API Swagger Definition (p. 218)
• Set up Request Validators Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 220)
• Set up Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway Console (p. 221)

Set up Basic Request Validation by Importing API Swagger Definition

The following steps describe how to enable basic request validation by importing a Swagger file.

To enable request validation by importing a Swagger file into API Gateway

1. Declare request validators in Swagger by specifying a set of the x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators.requestValidator Object (p. 483) objects in the x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators Object (p. 482) map at the API level. For example, the sample API Swagger file (p. 225) contains the x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators map, with the validators' names as the keys.

```json
{
    "swagger": "2.0",
    "info": {
        "title": "ReqValidation Sample",
        "version": "1.0.0"
    },
    "schemes": ["https"],
    "basePath": "/v1",
    "produces": ["application/json"],
    "x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators" : {
```
You select a validator's name when enabling the validator on the API or on a method, as shown in the next step.

2. To enable a request validator on all methods of an API, specify an `x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator` property at the API level of the API Swagger definition file. To enable a request validator on an individual method, specify the `x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator` property at the method level. For example, the following `x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator` property enables the `params-only` validator on all API methods, unless otherwise overridden.

```
{
    "swagger": "2.0",
    "info": {
        "title": "ReqValidation Sample",
        "version": "1.0.0"
    },
    "schemes": [
        "https"
    ],
    "basePath": "/v1",
    "produces": [
        "application/json"
    ],
    ...
    "x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator": "params-only",
    ...
}
```

To enable a request validator on an individual method, specify the `x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator` property at the method level. For example, the following `x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator` property enables the `all` validator on the `POST /validation` method. This overrides the `params-only` validator that is inherited from the API.

```
{
    "swagger": "2.0",
    "info": {
        "title": "ReqValidation Sample",
        "version": "1.0.0"
    },
    "schemes": [
        "https"
    ],
    "basePath": "/v1",
    "produces": [
        "application/json"
    ],
    ...
    "paths": {
        "/validation": {
            "post": {
            "x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator": "all",
            ...
```
3. In API Gateway, create the API with request validators enabled by importing this Sample API Swagger Definition (p. 225):

   POST /restapis?mode=import&failonwarning=true HTTP/1.1
   Content-Type: application/json
   Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
   X-Amz-Date: 20170306T234936Z
   Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={access_key_ID}/20170306/us-east-1/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature={sig4_hash}

   Copy the JSON object from this API Swagger Definition (p. 225) and paste it here.

4. Deploy the newly created API (fjd6crafxc) to a specified stage (testStage).

   POST /restapis/fjd6crafxc/deployments HTTP/1.1
   Content-Type: application/json
   Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
   X-Amz-Date: 20170306T234936Z
   Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={access_key_ID}/20170306/us-east-1/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature={sig4_hash}

   { "stageName" : "testStage",  
     "stageDescription" : "Test stage",  
     "description" : "First deployment",  
     "cacheClusterEnabled" : "false"
   }

For instructions on how to test the request validation using the API Gateway REST API, see Test Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 222). For instructions on how to test using the API Gateway console, see Test Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway Console (p. 225).

## Set up Request Validators Using the API Gateway REST API

In the API Gateway REST API, a request validator is represented by a RequestValidator resource. To have an API support the same request validators as the Sample API (p. 225), add to the RequestValidators collection a parameters-only validator with `params-only` as the key, and add a full validator with `all` as its key.

**To enable the basic request validation using the API Gateway REST API**

We assume that you have an API similar to the sample API (p. 225), but have not set up the request validators. If your API already has request validators enabled, call the appropriate requestvalidator:update or method:put action instead of requestvalidator:create or method:put.

1. To set up the params-only request validator, call the requestvalidator:create action as follows:

   POST /restapis/restapi-id/requestvalidators HTTP/1.1
Set up Basic Request Validation in API Gateway

2. To set up the all request validator, call the requestvalidator:create action as follows:

```json
{
    "name" : "all",
    "validateRequestBody" : "true",
    "validateRequestParameters" : "true"
}
```

If the preceding validator keys already exist in the RequestValidators map, call the requestvalidator:update action instead to reset the validation rules.

3. To apply the all request validator to the POST method, call method:put to enable the specified validator (as identified by the requestValidatorId property) or call method:update to update the enabled validator.

```json
{
    "authorizationType" : "NONE",
    ...
    "requestValidatorId" : "all"
}
```

Set up Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway Console

The API Gateway console lets you set up the basic request validation on a method using one of the three validators:

- **Validate body**: This is the body-only validator.
- **Validate query string parameters and headers**: This is the parameters-only validator.
- **Validate body, query string parameters, and headers**: This validator is for both body and parameters validation.
When you choose one of the above validators to enable it on an API method, the API Gateway console will add the validator to the API's RequestValidators map, if the validator has not already been added to the validators map of the API.

**To enable a request validator on a method**

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console, if not already logged in.
2. Create a new or choose an existing API.
3. Create a new or choose an existing resource of the API.
4. Create a new or choose an existing method the resource.
5. Choose **Method Request**.
6. Choose the pencil icon of **Request Validator** under **Settings**.
7. Choose **Validate body**, **Validate query string parameters and headers** or **Validate body, query string parameters, and headers** from the **Request Validator** drop-down list and then choose the check mark icon to save your choice.

To test and use the request validator in the console, follow the instructions in **Test Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway Console** (p. 225).

**Test Basic Request Validation in API Gateway**

Choose one of the following topics for instructions on testing the basic request validation against the sample API (p. 225).

**Topics**

- Test Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 222)
- Test Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway Console (p. 225)

**Test Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway REST API**

To see the invocation URL of the deployed API, you can export the API from the stage, making sure to include the `Accept: application/json` or `Accept: application/yaml` header:

```
GET /restapis/fjd6crafxc/stages/testStage/exports/swagger?extensions=validators HTTP/1.1
Accept: application/json
Content-Type: application/json
```
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
X-Amz-Date: 20170306T234936Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={access_key_ID}/20170306/us-east-1/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature={sig4_hash}

You can ignore the ?extensions=validators query parameter, if you do not want to download the Swagger specifications related to the request validation.

To test request validation using the API Gateway REST API calls

1. Call GET /validation?q1=cat.

```
GET /testStage/validation?q1=cat HTTP/1.1
Host: fjd6crafxc.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json
```

Because the required parameter of q1 is set and not blank, the request passes the validation. API Gateway returns the following 200 OK response:

```
[
  {
    "id": 1,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 249.99
  },
  {
    "id": 2,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 124.99
  },
  {
    "id": 3,
    "type": "cat",
    "price": 0.99
  }
]
```

2. Call GET /validation.

```
GET /testStage/validation HTTP/1.1
Host: fjd6crafxc.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json
```

Because the required parameter of q1 is not set, the request fails to pass the validation. API Gateway returns the following 400 Bad Request response:

```
{
  "message": "Missing required request parameters: [q1]"
}
```

3. Call GET /validation?q1=

```
GET /testStage/validation?q1= HTTP/1.1
Host: fjd6crafxc.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json
```

223
Because the required parameter of q1 is blank, the request fails to pass the validation. API Gateway returns the same 400 Bad Request response as in the previous example.

4. Call POST /validation.

```
POST /testStage/validation HTTP/1.1
Host: fjd6crafxc.beta.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json
h1: v1
{
  "name": "Marco",
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 260
}
```

Because the required header parameter of h1 is set and not blank and the payload format adheres to the RequestDataModel required properties and associated constraints, the request passes the validation. API Gateway returns the following successful response.

```
{
  "pet": {
    "name": "Marco",
    "type": "dog",
    "price": 260
  },
  "message": "success"
}
```

5. Call POST /validation, without specifying the h1 header or setting its value blank.

```
POST /testStage/validation HTTP/1.1
Host: fjd6crafxc.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json
{
  "name": "Marco",
  "type": "dog",
  "price": 260
}
```

Because the required header parameter of h1 is missing or set to blank, the request fails to pass the validation. API Gateway returns the following 400 Bad Request response:

```
{
  "message": "Missing required request parameters: [h1]"
}
```

6. Call POST /validation, setting the type property of the payload to bird.

```
POST /testStage/validation HTTP/1.1
Host: fjd6crafxc.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Accept: application/json
X-Amz-Date: 20170309T000215Z
h1: v1
{
}
```
Because the type property value is not a member of the enumeration of ["dog", "cat", "fish"], the request fails to pass the validation. API Gateway returns the following 400 Bad Request response:

```json
{
  "message": "Invalid request body"
}
```

Setting price to 501 violates the constraint on the property. This causes the validation to fail and the same 400 Bad Request response is returned.

### Test Basic Request Validation Using the API Gateway Console

The following steps describe how to test basic request validation in the API Gateway console.

**To test the request validation on a method using TestInvoke in the API Gateway console**

While signed in to the API Gateway console, do the following:

1. Choose Resources for the API for which you have configured a request validators map.
2. Choose a method for which you have enabled the request validation with a specified request validator.
3. Under Method Execution, in the Client box, choose Test.
4. Try different values for required request parameter or applicable body, and then choose Test to see the response.

When the method call passes validation, you should get expected responses. If validation fails, the following error message returns if the payload is not the correct format:

```json
{
  "message": "Invalid request body"
}
```

If the request parameters are not valid, the following error message returns:

```json
{
  "message": "Missing required request parameters: [p1]"
}
```

### Swagger Definitions of a Sample API with Basic Request Validation

The following Swagger definition defines a sample API with request validation enabled. The API is a subset of the PetStore API. It exposes a POST method to add a pet to the pets collection and a GET method to query pets by a specified type.

There are two request validators declared in the x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators map at the API level. The params-only validator is enabled on the API and inherited by the GET method. This validator allows API Gateway to verify that the required query parameter (q1) is included and not
The all validator is enabled on the POST method. This validator verifies that the required header parameter (h1) is set and not blank. It also verifies that the payload format adheres to the specified RequestBodyModel schema. This model requires that the input JSON object contains the name, type, and price properties. The name property can be any string, type must be one of the specified enumeration fields ("dog", "cat", "fish"), and price must range between 25 and 500. The id parameter is not required.

For more information about the behavior of this API, see Enable Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 217).

```json
{
    "swagger": "2.0",
    "info": {
        "title": "ReqValidators Sample",
        "version": "1.0.0"
    },
    "schemes": [
        "https"
    ],
    "basePath": "/v1",
    "produces": [
        "application/json"
    ],
    "x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators": {
        "all": {
            "validateRequestBody": true,
            "validateRequestParameters": true
        },
        "params-only": {
            "validateRequestBody": false,
            "validateRequestParameters": true
        }
    },
    "x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator": "params-only",
    "paths": {
        "/validation": {
            "post": {
                "x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator": "all",
                "parameters": [
                    {
                        "in": "header",
                        "name": "h1",
                        "required": true
                    },
                    {
                        "in": "body",
                        "name": "RequestBodyModel",
                        "required": true,
                        "schema": {
                            "$ref": "/definitions/RequestBodyModel"
                        }
                    }
                ],
                "responses": {
                    "200": {
                        "schema": {
                            "type": "array",
                            "items": {
                                "$ref": "/definitions/Error"
                            }
                        },
                        "headers": {
                            "test-method-response-header": {
                                "test": "value"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```
"type" : "string"}
}
},
"security" : [{
 "api_key" : []}
}],
"x-amazon-apigateway-auth" : {
 "type" : "none"
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration" : {
 "type" : "http",
 "httpMethod" : "POST",
 "requestParameters": {
 "integration.request.header.custom_h1": "method.request.header.h1"
 },
 "responses" : {
 "2\d2" : {
 "statusCode" : "200"
 },
 "default" : {
 "statusCode" : "400",
 "responseParameters" : {
 "method.response.header.test-method-response-header" : "'static value'"
 },
 "responseTemplates" : {
 "application/json" : "json 400 response template",
 "application/xml" : "xml 400 response template"
 }

 },
 },
 "get": {
 "parameters": [
 { "name" : "q1",
 "in" : "query",
 "required" : true
 }
 ],
 "responses" : {
 "200": {
 "schema": {
 "type": "array",
 "items": {
 "$ref": "/definitions/Error"
 }
 },
 "headers" : {
 "test-method-response-header" : {
 "type" : "string"
 }
 }
 }
 },
 "security" : [{
 "api_key" : []}
 }],
 "x-amazon-apigateway-auth" : {
 "type" : "none"
 },
 "x-amazon-apigateway-integration" : {
 "type" : "http",
}
Update and Maintain an API in Amazon API Gateway

Maintaining an API amounts to viewing, updating and deleting the existing API setups. You can maintain an API using the API Gateway console, AWS CLI, an SDK or the API Gateway REST API.

**Topics**
- Update an API Endpoint Type in API Gateway (p. 228)
- Maintain an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 231)

**Update an API Endpoint Type in API Gateway**

Updating an API endpoint type requires you to update the API's configuration. You can update an existing API type from edge-optimized to regional, and vice-versa, using the API Gateway console, AWS CLI, an SDK or the API Gateway REST API.
CLI, an AWS SDK for API Gateway, or the API Gateway REST API. The update operation may take up to 60 seconds to complete.

An edge-optimized API may have different behaviors than a regional API. For example, an edge-optimized API removes the Content-MD5 header. Any MD5 hash value passed to the backend can be expressed in a request string parameter or a body property. However, the regional API passes this header through, although it may remap the header name to some other name. Understanding the differences helps you decide how to update an edge-optimized API to a regional one or from a regional API to an edge-optimized one.

**Topics**
- Use the API Gateway Console to Update an API Endpoint (p. 229)
- Use the AWS CLI to Update an API Endpoint (p. 230)
- Use the API Gateway REST API to Update an API Endpoint (p. 230)

### Use the API Gateway Console to Update an API Endpoint

1. Sign in to the console and choose **APIs** in the primary navigation pane.
2. Choose the settings (gear icon) of an API under **+ Create API**.
3. Change the **Endpoint Type** option under **Endpoint Configuration** from Edge Optimized to Regional or from Regional to Edge Optimized.
4. Choose **Save** to start the update.
Use the AWS CLI to Update an API Endpoint

To use the AWS CLI commands to update an edge-optimized API of \{api-id\}, call the `restapi:update` as follows:

```
aws apigateway update-rest-api \
  --rest-api-id \{api-id\} \
  --patch-operations op=replace,path=/endpointConfiguration/types/EDGE,value=REGIONAL
```

The successful response has a status code of `200 OK` and a payload similar to the following:

```
{
    "createdDate": "2017-10-16T04:09:31Z",
    "description": "Your first API with Amazon API Gateway. This is a sample API that integrates via HTTP with our demo Pet Store endpoints",
    "endpointConfiguration": {
        "types": "REGIONAL"
    },
    "id": "Ogsnjtjck8",
    "name": "PetStore imported as edge-optimized"
}
```

Conversely, update a regional API to an edge-optimized API as follows:

```
aws apigateway update-rest-api \
  --rest-api-id \{api-id\} \
  --patch-operations op=replace,path=/endpointConfiguration/types/REGIONAL,value=EDGE
```

Because `put-rest-api` is for updating API definitions, it is not applicable to updating an API endpoint type.

Use the API Gateway REST API to Update an API Endpoint

To use the API Gateway REST API to update an edge-optimized API of \{api-id\}, call the `restapi:update` as follows:

```
PATCH /restapis/{api-id}
{
    "patchOperations" : [{
        "op" : "replace",
        "path" : "/endpointConfiguration/types/EDGE",
        "value" : "REGIONAL"
    }]
}
```

The successful response has a status code of `200 OK` and a payload similar to the following:

```
{
    "createdDate": "2017-10-16T04:09:31Z",
    "description": "Your first API with Amazon API Gateway. This is a sample API that integrates via HTTP with our demo Pet Store endpoints",
    "endpointConfiguration": {
        "types": "REGIONAL"
    },
    "id": "Ogsnjtjck8",
    "name": "PetStore imported as edge-optimized"
}
```
Conversely, to update a regional API to an edge-optimized API, call the `restapi:update` as follows:

```
PATCH /restapis/{api-id}
{
   "patchOperations" : [{
      "op" : "replace",
      "path" : "/endpointConfiguration/types/REGIONAL",
      "value" : "EDGE"
   }]
}
```

Because `restapi:put` is for updating API definitions, it is not applicable to updating an API endpoint type.

## Maintain an API Using the API Gateway Console

### Topics
- View a List of APIs in API Gateway (p. 231)
- Delete an API in API Gateway (p. 231)
- Delete a Resource in API Gateway (p. 232)
- View a Methods List in API Gateway (p. 232)
- Delete a Method in API Gateway (p. 232)

### View a List of APIs in API Gateway

Use the API Gateway console to view a list of APIs.

#### View a List of APIs with the API Gateway Console

You must have an API available in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Creating an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 79).

2. The list of APIs is displayed.

### Delete an API in API Gateway

Use the API Gateway console to delete an API.

#### Warning
Deleting an API means that you can no longer call it. This action cannot be undone.

#### Delete an API with the API Gateway Console

You must have deployed the API at least once. Follow the instructions in Deploying an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 350).

2. In the box that contains the name of the API you want to delete, choose Resources.
3. Choose Delete API.
4. When prompted to delete the API, choose Ok.
Delete a Resource in API Gateway

Use the API Gateway console to delete a resource.

**Warning**
When you delete a resource, you also delete its child resources and methods. Deleting a resource may cause part of the corresponding API to be unusable. Deleting a resource cannot be undone.

Delete a Resource with the API Gateway Console

2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the resource you want to delete, choose Resources.
3. In the Resources pane, choose the resource, and then choose Delete Resource.
4. When prompted, choose Delete.

View a Methods List in API Gateway

Use the API Gateway console to view a list of methods for a resource.

View a Methods List with the API Gateway Console

You must have methods available in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42).

2. In the box that contains the name of the API, choose Resources.
3. The list of methods is displayed in the Resources pane.
   
   **Tip**
   You may need to choose the arrow next to one or more resources to display all of the available methods.

Delete a Method in API Gateway

Use the API Gateway console to delete a method.

**Warning**
Deleting a method may cause part of the corresponding API to become unusable. Deleting a method cannot be undone.

Delete a Method with the API Gateway Console

2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the method, choose Resources.
3. In the Resources pane, choose the arrow next to the resource for the method.
4. Choose the method, and then choose Delete Method.
5. When prompted, choose Delete.

Import an API into API Gateway

You can use the API Gateway Import API feature to import an API from an external definition file into API Gateway. Currently, the Import API feature supports Swagger v2.0 definition files.
With the Import API, you can either create a new API by submitting a POST request that includes a Swagger definition in the payload and endpoint configuration, or you can update an existing API by using a PUT request that contains a Swagger definition in the payload. You can update an API by overwriting it with a new definition, or merge a definition with an existing API. You specify the options using a mode query parameter in the request URL.

**Note**
For RAML API definitions, you can continue to use API Gateway Importer.

Besides making explicit calls to the REST API, as described below, you can also use the Import API feature in the API Gateway console. For a quick start to using the Import API feature from the API Gateway console, see Build an API Gateway API from an Example (p. 9).

**Topics**
- Import an Edge-Optimized API into API Gateway (p. 233)
- Import a Regional API into API Gateway (p. 234)
- Import a Swagger File to Update an Existing API Definition (p. 235)
- Set the Swagger basePath Property (p. 236)
- Errors and Warnings during Import (p. 238)

## Import an Edge-Optimized API into API Gateway

You can import an API Swagger definition file to create a new edge-optimized API by specifying the EDGE endpoint type as an additional input, besides the Swagger file, to the import operation. You can do so using the API Gateway console, AWS CLI, an AWS SDK, or the API Gateway REST API.

**Topics**
- Import an Edge-Optimized API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 233)
- Import an Edge-Optimized API Using the AWS CLI (p. 233)
- Import an Edge-Optimized API Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 234)

## Import an Edge-Optimized API Using the API Gateway Console

To import an API of an edge-optimized API endpoint type using the API Gateway console, do the following:

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose **+ Create API**.
2. Select the **Import from Swagger** option under **Create new API**.
3. Copy an API Swagger definition and paste it into the code editor, or choose **Select Swagger File** to load a Swagger file from a local drive.
4. Under **Settings**, for **Endpoint Type**, choose **Edge optimized**.
5. Choose **Import** to start importing the Swagger definitions.

## Import an Edge-Optimized API Using the AWS CLI

To import an API from a Swagger definition file to create a new edge-optimized API using the AWS CLI, use the `import-rest-api` command as follows:

```
aws apigateway import-rest-api \
  --fail-on-warnings \
```

![Page 233](image.png)
Import a Regional API

or with an explicit specification of the endpointConfigurationTypes query string parameter to EDGE:

```
aws apigateway import-rest-api \
  --endpointConfigurationTypes 'EDGE' \ 
  --fail-on-warnings \
  --body 'file://path/to/API_Swagger_template.json'
```

Import an Edge-Optimized API Using the API Gateway REST API

To use the API Gateway REST API to create a regional API by importing a Swagger definition file, call the following restapi:import link-relation:

```
POST /restapis?mode=import&failonwarnings=true
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type:application/json
Content-Length: ...

{
  //API Swagger definition
}
```

or with an explicit specification of the endpointConfigurationTypes query string parameter to EDGE:

```
POST /restapis?mode=import&failonwarnings=true&endpointConfigurationTypes=EDGE
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type:application/json
Content-Length: ...

{
  //API Swagger definition
}
```

Import a Regional API into API Gateway

When importing an API, you can choose the regional endpoint configuration for the API. You can use the API Gateway console, AWS CLI, an AWS SDK, or the API Gateway REST API.

When you export an API, the API endpoint configuration is not included in the exported API definitions.

Import a Regional API Using the API Gateway Console

To import an API of a regional endpoint using the API Gateway console, do the following:

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose + Create API.
2. Select the Import from Swagger option under Create new API.
3. Copy an API Swagger definition and paste it into the code editor, or choose Select Swagger File to load a Swagger file from a local drive.
4. Under Settings, for Endpoint Type, choose Regional..
5. Choose Import to start importing the Swagger definitions.
Import a Regional API Using the AWS CLI

To import an API from a Swagger definition file using the AWS CLI, use the `import-rest-api` command:

```
aws apigateway import-rest-api
    --endpointConfigurationTypes 'REGIONAL' 
    --fail-on-warnings 
    --body 'file://path/to/API_Swagger_template.json'
```

Import a Regional API Using the API Gateway REST API

To use the API Gateway REST API to create a regional API by importing a Swagger definition file, call the following `restapi:import` link-relation:

```
POST /restapis?mode=import&failonwarnings=true&endpointConfigurationTypes=REGIONAL
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type:application/json
Content-Length: ...

{
    //API Swagger definition
}
```

Import a Swagger File to Update an Existing API Definition

You can import API definitions only to update an existing API, without changing its endpoint configuration, as well as stages and stage variables, or references to API Keys.

The import-to-update operation can occur in two modes: merge or overwrite. Merging an API is useful when you have decomposed your external API definitions into multiple, smaller parts and only want to apply changes from one of those parts at a time. For example, this might occur if multiple teams are responsible for different parts of an API and have changes available at different rates. In this mode, items from the existing API that are not specifically defined in the imported definition will be left alone.

Overwriting an API is useful when an external API definition contains the complete definition of an API. In this mode, items from an existing API that are not specifically defined in the imported definition will be deleted.

To merge an API, submit a PUT request to `https://apigateway.<region>.amazonaws.com/restapis/<restapi_id>?mode=merge`. The `restapi_id` path parameter value specifies the API to which the supplied API definition will be merged.

The following code snippet shows an example of the PUT request to merge a Swagger API definition in JSON, as the payload, with the specified API already in API Gateway.

```
PUT /restapis/<restapi_id>?mode=merge
Host:apigateway.<region>.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: ...

A Swagger API definition in JSON (p. 498)
```
The merging update operation takes two complete API definitions and merges them together. For a small and incremental change, you can use the resource update operation.

To overwrite an API, submit a PUT request to https://apigateway.<region>.amazonaws.com/restapis/<restapi_id>?mode=overwrite. The restapi_id path parameter specifies the API that will be overwritten with the supplied API definitions.

The following code snippet shows an example of an overwriting request with the payload of a JSON-formatted Swagger definition:

```
PUT /restapis/<restapi_id>?mode=overwrite
Host:apigateway.<region>.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: ...

A Swagger API definition in JSON (p. 498)
```

When the mode query parameter is not specified, merge is assumed.

**Note**
The PUT operations are idempotent, but not atomic. That means if a system error occurs part way through processing, the API can end up in a bad state. However, repeating the operation will put the API into the same final state as if the first operation had succeeded.

---

### Set the Swagger `basePath` Property

In Swagger, you can use the `basePath` property to provide one or more path parts that precede each path defined in the paths property. Because API Gateway has several ways to express a resource’s path, the Import API feature provides three options for interpreting the `basePath` property during an import:

**ignore**

If the Swagger file has a `basePath` value of `/a/b/c` and the `paths` property contains `/e` and `/f`, the following POST or PUT request:

```
POST /restapis?mode=import&basePath=ignore
```

will result in the following resources in the API:

- `/`
- `/e`
- `/f`

The effect is to treat the `basePath` as if it was not present, and all of the declared API resources are served relative to the host. This can be used, for example, when you have a custom domain name with an API mapping that does not include a `Base Path` and a `Stage` value that refers to your production stage.

**Note**

API Gateway will automatically create a root resource for you, even if it is not explicitly declared in your definition file.
When unspecified, `basePath` takes `ignore` by default.

**prepend**

If the Swagger file has a `basePath` value of `/a/b/c` and the `paths` property contains `/e` and `/f`, the following POST or PUT request:

```
POST /restapis?mode=import&basePath=prepend
PUT /restapis/api_id?basePath=prepend
```

will result in the following resources in the API:

- `/`
- `/a`
- `/a/b`
- `/a/b/c`
- `/a/b/c/e`
- `/a/b/c/f`

The effect is to treat the `basePath` as specifying additional resources (without methods) and to add them to the declared resource set. This can be used, for example, when different teams are responsible for different parts of an API and the `basePath` could reference the path location for each team's API part.

**Note**

API Gateway will automatically create intermediate resources for you, even if they are not explicitly declared in your definition.

**split**

If the Swagger file has a `basePath` value of `/a/b/c` and the `paths` property contains `/e` and `/f`, the following POST or PUT request:

```
POST /restapis?mode=import&basePath=split
PUT /restapis/api_id?basePath=split
```

will result in the following resources in the API:

- `/`
- `/b`
- `/b/c`
- `/b/c/e`
- `/b/c/f`

The effect is to treat top-most path part, "/a", as the beginning of each resource's path, and to create additional (no method) resources within the API itself. This could, for example, be used when "a" is a stage name that you want to expose as part of your API.
Errors and Warnings during Import

Errors during Import

During the import, errors can be generated for major issues like an invalid Swagger document. Errors are returned as exceptions (e.g., BadRequestException) in an unsuccessful response. When an error occurs, the new API definition is discarded and no change is made to the existing API.

Warnings during Import

During the import, warnings can be generated for minor issues like a missing model reference. If a warning occurs, the operation will continue if the failonwarnings=false query expression is appended to the request URL. Otherwise, the updates will be rolled back. By default, failonwarnings is set to false. In such cases, warnings are returned as a field in the resulting RestApi resource. Otherwise, warnings are returned as a message in the exception.
Controlling Access to an API in API Gateway

API Gateway supports multiple mechanisms of access control, including metering or tracking API uses by clients using API keys. The standard AWS IAM roles and policies offer flexible and robust access controls that can be applied to an entire API set or individual methods. Custom authorizers and Amazon Cognito user pools provide customizable authorization and authentication solutions.

Topics
- Control Access to an API with IAM Permissions (p. 239)
- Enable CORS for an API Gateway Resource (p. 252)
- Use API Gateway Custom Authorizers (p. 257)
- Use Amazon Cognito User Pools (p. 269)
- Use Client-Side SSL Certificates for Authentication by the Backend (p. 276)
- API Gateway-Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integrations (p. 280)
- Create and Use API Gateway Usage Plans (p. 296)

Control Access to an API with IAM Permissions

You control access to Amazon API Gateway with IAM permissions by controlling access to the following two API Gateway component processes:

- To create, deploy, and manage an API in API Gateway, you must grant the API developer permissions to perform the required actions supported by the API management component of API Gateway.
- To call a deployed API or to refresh the API caching, you must grant the API caller permissions to perform required IAM actions supported by the API execution component of API Gateway.

The access control for the two processes involves different permissions models, explained next.

API Gateway Permissions Model for Creating and Managing an API

To allow an API developer to create and manage an API in API Gateway, you must create IAM permissions policies that allow a specified API developer to create, update, deploy, view, or delete required API entities. You attach the permissions policy to an IAM user representing the developer, to an IAM group containing the user, or to an IAM role assumed by the user.

In this IAM policy document, the IAM Resource element contains a list of API Gateway API entities, including API Gateway resources and API Gateway link-relations. The IAM Action element contains the required API Gateway API-managing actions. These actions are declared in the apigateway:HTTP_VERB format, where apigateway designates the underlying API management component of API Gateway, and HTTP_VERB represents HTTP verbs supported by API Gateway.

For more information on how to use this permissions model, see Control Access for Managing an API (p. 241).
API Gateway Permissions Model for Invoking an API

To allow an API caller to invoke the API or refresh its caching, you must create IAM policies that permit a specified API caller to invoke the API method for which the IAM user authentication is enabled. The API developer sets the method’s authorizationType property to AWS_IAM to require that the caller submit the IAM user’s access keys to be authenticated. Then, you attach the policy to an IAM user representing the API caller, to an IAM group containing the user, or to an IAM role assumed by the user.

In this IAM permissions policy statement, the IAM Resource element contains a list of deployed API methods identified by given HTTP verbs and API Gateway resource paths. The IAM Action element contains the required API Gateway API executing actions. These actions include execute-api:Invoke or execute-api:InvalidateCache, where execute-api designates the underlying API execution component of API Gateway.

For more information on how to use this permissions model, see Control Access for Invoking an API (p. 243).

When an API is integrated with an AWS service (for example, AWS Lambda) in the back end, API Gateway must also have permissions to access integrated AWS resources (for example, invoking a Lambda function) on behalf of the API caller. To grant these permissions, create an IAM role of the Amazon API Gateway type. This role contains the following IAM trust policy that declares API Gateway as a trusted entity that is permitted to assume the role:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
}
```

You must also attach to this role IAM permissions policies for calling integrated AWS services. For example, if the backend is Lambda, the IAM permissions policy must include the following permissions policy statement:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "lambda:InvokeFunction",
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

Note that Lambda supports resource-based access policy, which combines both trust and permissions policies. When integrating an API with a Lambda function using the API Gateway console, you are not asked to set this IAM role explicitly, because the console sets the resource-based permissions on the Lambda function for you, with your consent.

**Note**

To enact access control to an AWS service, you can use either the caller-based permissions model, where a permissions policy is directly attached to the caller’s IAM user or group, or
Control Access for Managing an API

In this section, you will learn how to write up IAM policy statements to control who can or cannot create, deploy and update an API in API Gateway. You'll also find the policy statements reference, including the formats of the Action and Resource fields related to the API managing service.

Control Who Can Create and Manage an API Gateway API with IAM Policies

To control who can or cannot create, deploy and update your API using the API managing service of API Gateway, create an IAM policy document with required permissions as shown in the following policy template:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": ["apigateway:*"],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:apigateway:region::resource1-path",
                "arn:aws:apigateway:region::resource2-path",
                ...
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Here, **Permission** can be **Allow** or **Deny** to grant or revoke, respectively, the access rights as stipulated by the policy statement. For more information, see AWS IAM permissions.

**HTTP_VERB** can be any of the API Gateway-supported HTTP verbs (p. 242). * can be used to denote any of the HTTP verbs.

**Resource** contains a list of ARNs of the affected API entities, including RestApi, Resource, Method, Integration, DocumentationPart, Model, Authorizer, UsagePlan, etc. For more information, see Resource Format of Permissions for Managing API in API Gateway (p. 243).

By combining different policy statements, you can customize the access permissions for individual users, groups or roles to access selected API entities and to perform specified actions against those entities. For example, you can create the following policy to grant your documentation team the permissions to create, publish, update and delete the documentation parts of a specified API as well as to view the API entities.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": ["apigateway:*"],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:apigateway:region::resource1-path",
                "arn:aws:apigateway:region::resource2-path",
                ...
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```
For your API core development team who is responsible for all operations, you can create the following IAM policy to grant the team much broader access permissions.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["apigateway:*"],
      "Resource": ["arn:aws:apigateway:*::/*"]
    }
  ]
}
```

### Statement Reference of IAM Policies for Managing API in API Gateway

The following information describes the `Action` and `Resource` element format used in an IAM policy statement to grant or revoke permissions for managing API Gateway API entities.

#### Action Format of Permissions for Managing API in API Gateway

The API-managing `Action` expression has the following general format:

```
apigateway:action
```

where `action` is one of the following API Gateway actions:

- *
- `GET`, which is used to get information about resources.
- `POST`, which is primarily used to create child resources.
- `PUT`, which is primarily used to update resources (and, although not recommended, can be used to create child resources).
- `DELETE`, which is used to delete resources.
• **PATCH**, which can be used to update resources.
• **HEAD**, which is the same as GET but does not return the resource representation. HEAD is used primarily in testing scenarios.
• **OPTIONS**, which can be used by callers to get information about available communication options for the target service.

Some examples of the **Action** expression include:
• `apigateway:*` for all API Gateway actions.
• `apigateway:GET` for just the GET action in API Gateway.

**Resource Format of Permissions for Managing API in API Gateway**

The API-managing **Resource** expression has the following general format:

```
arn:aws:apigateway:region::resource-path-specifier
```

where `region` is a target AWS region (such as `us-east-1` or `*` for all supported AWS regions), and `resource-path-specifier` is the path to the target resources.

Some example resource expressions include:

• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/*` for all resources, methods, models, and stages in the AWS region of `region`.
• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/api-id/*` for all resources, methods, models, and stages in the API with the identifier of `api-id` in the AWS region of `region`.
• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/api-id/resources/resource-id/*` for all resources and methods in the resource with the identifier `resource-id`, which is in the API with the identifier of `api-id` in the AWS region of `region`.
• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/api-id/resources/resource-id/methods/*` for all of the methods in the resource with the identifier `resource-id`, which is in the API with the identifier of `api-id` in the AWS region of `region`.
• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/api-id/resources/resource-id/methods/GET` for just the GET method in the resource with the identifier `resource-id`, which is in the API with the identifier of `api-id` in the AWS region of `region`.
• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/api-id/models/*` for all of the models in the API with the identifier of `api-id` in the AWS region of `region`.
• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/api-id/models/model-name` for the model with the name of `model-name`, which is in the API with the identifier of `api-id` in the AWS region of `region`.
• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/api-id/stages/*` for all of the stages in the API with the identifier of `api-id` in the AWS region of `region`.
• `arn:aws:apigateway:region::/restapis/api-id/stages/stage-name` for just the stage with the name of `stage-name` in the API with the identifier of `api-id` in the AWS region of `region`.

**Control Access for Invoking an API**

In this section you will learn how to write up IAM policy statements to control who can or cannot call a deployed API in API Gateway. Here, you will also find the policy statement reference, including the formats of **Action** and **Resource** fields related to the API execution service.
Control Access for Invoking an API

Control Who Can Call an API Gateway API Method with IAM Policies

To control who can or cannot call a deployed API with IAM permissions, create an IAM policy document with required permissions. A template for such a policy document is shown as follows.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Permission",
            "Action": ["execute-api:Execution-operation"],
        }
    ]
}
```

Here, `Permission` is to be replaced by `Allow` or `Deny` depending on whether you want to grant or revoke the included permissions. `Execution-operation` is to be replaced by the operations supported by the API execution service. `METHOD_HTTP_VERB` stands for a HTTP verb supported by the specified resources. `Resource-path` is the placeholder for the URL path of a deployed API Resource instance supporting the said `METHOD_HTTP_VERB`. For more information, see Statement Reference of IAM Policies for Executing API in API Gateway (p. 245).

**Note**

For IAM policies to be effective, you must have enabled IAM authentication on API methods by setting `AWS_IAM` for the methods' `authorizationType` property. Failing to do so will make these API methods effectively public accessible.

When AWS identity and access management is enabled on a specific resource, IAM users from different AWS accounts cannot access that resource unless the caller is allowed to assume the resource owner's role, because API Gateway does not currently support cross-account authentication.

For example, to grant a user the permission to view a list of pets exposed by a specified API, but to deny the user the permission to add a pet to the list, you could create the following policy statement:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": ["execute-api:Invoke"],
            "Resource": ["arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:account-id:api-id/*/GET/pets"]
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Deny",
            "Action": ["execute-api:Invoke"],
            "Resource": ["arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:account-id:api-id/*/POST/pets"]
        }
    ]
}
```
For a developer team testing APIs, you can create the following policy statement to allow the team to call any method on any resource of any API by any developer in the test stage.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "execute-api:Invoke",
        "execute-api:InvalidateCache"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:execute-api:*:*:*/*
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

**Statement Reference of IAM Policies for Executing API in API Gateway**

The following information describes the Action and Resource format of IAM policy statements of access permissions for executing an API.

**Action Format of Permissions for Executing API in API Gateway**

The API-executing Action expression has the following general format:

`execute-api:action`

where `action` is an available API-executing action:

- `*`, which represents all of the following actions.
- `Invoke`, used to invoke an API upon a client request.
- `InvalidateCache`, used to invalidate API cache upon a client request.

**Resource Format of Permissions for Executing API in API Gateway**

The API-executing Resource expression has the following general format:


where:

- `region` is the AWS region (such as `us-east-1` or `*` for all AWS regions) that corresponds to the deployed API for the method.
- `account-id` is the 12-digit AWS account Id of the REST API owner.
- `api-id` is the identifier API Gateway has assigned to the API for the method. (`*` can be used for all APIs, regardless of the API's identifier.)
- `stage-name` is the name of the stage associated with the method (* can be used for all stages, regardless of the stage's name.)
• **HTTP-VERB** is the HTTP verb for the method. It can be one of the following: GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, PATCH, HEAD, OPTIONS.

• **resource-path-specifier** is the path to the desired method. (⋆ can be used for all paths).

Some example resource expressions include:

• `arn:aws:execute-api:*:*:*` for any resource path in any stage, for any API in any AWS region. (This is equivalent to ⋆).

• `arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:*:*:` for any resource path in any stage, for any API in the AWS region of us-east-1.

• `arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:*:api-id/*` for any resource path in any stage, for the API with the identifier of api-id in the AWS region of us-east-1.

• `arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:*:api-id/test/*` for resource path in the stage of test, for the API with the identifier of api-id in the AWS region of us-east-1.

• `arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:*:api-id/test/*/mydemoresource/*` for any resource path along the path of mydemoresource, for any HTTP method in the stage of test, for the API with the identifier of api-id in the AWS region of us-east-1.

• `arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:*:api-id/test/GET/mydemoresource/*` for GET methods under any resource path along the path of mydemoresource, in the stage of test, for the API with the identifier of api-id in the AWS region of us-east-1.

### IAM Policy Examples for Managing API Gateway APIs

The following example policy documents shows various use cases to set access permissions for managing API resources in API Gateway. For permissions model and other background information, see [Control Who Can Create and Manage an API Gateway API with IAM Policies](p. 241).

#### Topics

- Simple Read Permissions (p. 246)
- Read-Only Permissions on any APIs (p. 247)
- Full Access Permissions for any API Gateway Resources (p. 248)
- Full-Access Permissions for Managing API Stages (p. 249)
- Block Specified Users from Deleting any API Resources (p. 249)

#### Simple Read Permissions

The following policy statement gives the user permission to get information about all of the resources, methods, models, and stages in the API with the identifier of a123456789 in the AWS region of us-east-1:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": ["apigateway:GET"],
            "Resource": ["arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/a123456789/*"]
        }
    ]
}
```
The following example policy statement gives the IAM user permission to list information for all resources, methods, models, and stages in any region. The user also has permission to perform all available API Gateway actions for the API with the identifier of a123456789 in the AWS region of us-east-1:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["apigateway:GET"],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:apigateway:*::/restapis/*"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["apigateway:*"],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/a123456789/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

Read-Only Permissions on any APIs

The following policy document will permit attached entities (users, groups or roles) to retrieve any of the APIs of the caller's AWS account. This includes any of the child resources of an API, such as method, integration, etc.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "Stmt1467321237000",
      "Effect": "Deny",
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::*/*"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Sid": "Stmt1467321341000",
      "Effect": "Deny",
      "Action": ["apigateway:GET", "apigateway:HEAD", "apigateway:OPTIONS"],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```
The first Deny statement explicitly prohibits any calls of POST, PUT, PATCH, DELETE on any resources in API Gateway. This ensures that such permissions will not be overridden by other policy documents also attached to the caller. The second Deny statement blocks the caller to query the root (/) resource, account information (/account), client certificates (/clientcertificates), custom domain names (/domainnames) and API keys (/apikeys). Together, the three statements ensure that the caller can only query API-related resources. This can be useful in API testing when you do not want the tester to modify any of the code.

To restrict the above read-only access to specified APIs, replace the Resource property of Allow statement by the following:


### Full Access Permissions for any API Gateway Resources

The following example policy document grants the full access to any of the API Gateway resource of the AWS account.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "Stmt1467321765000",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["apigateway:*"],
      "Resource": ["*"]
    }
  ]
}
```

In general, you should refrain from using such a broad and open access policy. It may be necessary to do so for your API development core team so that they can create, deploy, update, and delete any API Gateway resources.
Full-Access Permissions for Managing API Stages

The following example policy documents grants full-access permissions on Stage related resources of any API in the caller's AWS account.

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": [
            "apigateway:*"
         ],
         "Resource": [
            "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/*/stages",
            "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/*/stages/*"
         ]
      }
   ]
}
```

The above policy document grants full access permissions only to the stages collection and any of the contained stage resources, provided that no other policies granting more accesses have been attached to the caller. Otherwise, you must explicitly deny all the other accesses.

Using the above policy, caller must find out the REST API's identifier beforehand because the user cannot call GET /restapis to query the available APIs. Also, if `arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/*/stages` is not specified in the Resource list, the Stages resource becomes inaccessible. In this case, the caller will not be able to create a stage nor get the existing stages, although he or she can still view, update or delete a stage, provided that he stage's name is known.

To grant permissions for a specific API's stages, simply replace the `restapis/*` portion of the Resource specifications by `restapis/restapi_id`, where `restapi_id` is the identifier of the API of interest.

Block Specified Users from Deleting any API Resources

The following example IAM policy document blocks a specified user from deleting any API resources in API Gateway.

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Sid": "Stmt1467331998000",
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": [
            "apigateway:GET",
            "apigateway:HEAD",
            "apigateway:OPTIONS",
            "apigateway:PATCH",
            "apigateway:POST",
            "apigateway:PUT"
         ],
         "Resource": [
            "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/*"
         ]
      },
      {
         "Sid": "Stmt1467332141000",
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Resource": [
            "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/*"
         ]
      }
   ]
}
```
This IAM policy grants full access permission to create, deploy, update and delete API for attached users, groups or roles, except for the specified user (johndoe), who cannot delete any API resources. It assumes that no other policy document granting Allow permissions on the root, API keys, client certificates or custom domain names has been attached to the caller.

To block the specified user from deleting specific API Gateway resources, e.g., a specific API or an API's resources, replace the Resource specification above by this:

```
"Resource": [ "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/restapi_id_1",
             "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/restapi_id_2/resources"
]
```

### IAM Policy Examples for API Execution Permissions

For permissions model and other background information, see [Control Access for Invoking an API](#)

The following policy statement gives the user permission to call any POST method along the path of mydemoresource, in the stage of test, for the API with the identifier of a123456789, assuming the corresponding API has been deployed to the AWS region of us-east-1:

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [ {
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [ "execute-api:Invoke" ],
    "Resource": [ "arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:*:a123456789/test/POST/mydemoresource/*" ]
  }
}
```

The following example policy statement gives the user permission to call any method on the resource path of petstorewalkthrough/pets, in any stage, for the API with the identifier of a123456789, in any AWS region where the corresponding API has been deployed:

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [ {
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [ "execute-api:Invoke" ],
    "Resource": [ "arn:aws:execute-api:*:*:a123456789/petstorewalkthrough/pets/*" ]
  }
}
Create and Attach a Policy to an IAM User

To enable a user to call the API managing service or the API execution service, you must create an IAM policy for an IAM user, which controls access to the API Gateway entities, and then attach the policy to the IAM user. The following steps describe how to create your IAM policy.

**To create your own IAM policy**

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the IAM console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/.
2. Choose **Policies**, and then choose **Create Policy**. If a **Get Started** button appears, choose it, and then choose **Create Policy**.
3. Next to **Create Your Own Policy**, choose **Select**.
4. For **Policy Name**, type any value that is easy for you to refer to later. Optionally, type descriptive text in **Description**.
5. For **Policy Document**, type a policy statement with the following format, and then choose **Create Policy**:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": ["execute-api:Invoke"],
            "Resource": ["arn:aws:execute-api::*::*:a123456789/*/*/petstorewalkthrough/pets"]
        }
    ]
}
```

In this statement, substitute `action-statement` and `resource-statement` as needed, and add other statements to specify the API Gateway entities you want to allow the IAM user to manage, the API methods the IAM user can call, or both. By default, the IAM user does not have permissions unless there is an explicit corresponding `Allow` statement.

6. To enable the policy for a user, choose **Users**.
7. Choose the IAM user to whom you want to attach the policy.
You have just created an IAM policy. It won’t have any effect until you attach it to an IAM user, to an IAM group containing the user, or to an IAM role assumed by the user.

**To attach an IAM policy to an IAM user**

1. For the chosen user, choose the Permissions tab, and then choose Attach Policy.
2. Under Grant permissions, choose Attach existing policies directly.
3. Choose the policy document just created from the displayed list and then choose Next: Review.
4. Under Permissions summary, choose Add permissions.

Alternatively, you can add the user to an IAM group, if the user is not already a member, and attach the policy document to the group so that the attached policies are applicable to all group members. It is helpful to manage and update policy configurations on a group of IAM users. In the following, we highlight how to attach the policy to an IAM group, assuming that you have already created the group and added the user to the group.

**To attach an IAM policy document to an IAM group**

1. Choose Groups from the main navigation pane.
2. Choose the Permissions tab under the chosen group.
3. Choose Attach policy.
4. Choose the policy document that you previously created, and then choose Attach policy.

For API Gateway to call other AWS services on your behalf, create an IAM role of the Amazon API Gateway type.

**To create an Amazon API Gateway type of role**

1. Choose Roles from the main navigation pane.
2. Choose Create New Role.
3. Type a name for Role name and then choose Next Step.
4. Under Select Role Type, in AWS Service Roles, choose Select next to Amazon API Gateway.
5. Choose an available managed IAM permissions policy, for example, AmazonAPIGatewayPushToCloudWatchLog if you want API Gateway to log metrics in CloudWatch, under Attach Policy and then choose Next Step.
6. Under Trusted Entities, verify that apigateway.amazonaws.com is listed as an entry, and then choose Create Role.
7. In the newly created role, choose the Permissions tab and then choose Attach Policy.
8. Choose the previously created custom IAM policy document and then choose Attach Policy.

### Enable CORS for an API Gateway Resource

When your API’s resources receive requests from a domain other than the API’s own domain, you must enable cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) for selected methods on the resource. This amounts to having your API respond to the OPTIONS preflight request with at least the following CORS-required response headers:

- Access-Control-Allow-Methods
- Access-Control-Allow-Headers
- Access-Control-Allow-Origin

252
In API Gateway you enable CORS by setting up an OPTIONS method with the mock integration type to return the preceding response headers (with static values discussed in the following) as the method response headers. In addition, the actual CORS-enabled methods must also return the `Access-Control-Allow-Origin: request-originating server addresses` header in at least its 200 response. You can replace the static value of specific `request-originating server addresses` with * to indicate any servers. However, you should be careful of enabling such a broad support and do so only when you fully understand the consequences.

With Lambda, AWS or HTTP integrations, you can leverage API Gateway to set up the required headers using the method response and integration response. For Lambda or HTTP proxy integrations (p. 120), you can still set up the required OPTIONS response headers in API Gateway. However, you must rely on the back end to return the `Access-Control-Allow-Origin` headers because the integration response is disabled for the proxy integration.

**Tip**
You must set up an OPTIONS method to handle preflight requests to support CORS. However, OPTIONS methods are optional if 1) an API resource exposes only the GET, HEAD or POST methods and 2) the request payload content type is application/x-www-form-urlencoded, multipart/form-data or text/plain and 3) the request does not contain any custom headers. When possible, we recommend to use OPTIONS method to enable CORS in your API.

This section describes how to enable CORS for a method in API Gateway using the API Gateway console or the API Gateway Import an API into API Gateway (p. 232).

**Topics**
- Prerequisites (p. 253)
- Enable CORS on a Resource Using the API Gateway Console (p. 253)
- Enable CORS for a Resource Using the API Gateway Import API (p. 255)

**Prerequisites**
- You must have the method available in API Gateway. For instructions on how to create and configure a method, see Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42).

**Enable CORS on a Resource Using the API Gateway Console**

2. In the API Gateway console, choose an API under APIs.
3. Choose a resource under Resources. This will enable CORS for all the methods on the resource.
   
   Alternatively, you could choose a method under the resource to enable CORS for just this method.
4. Choose Enable CORS from the Actions drop-down menu.
5. In the Enable CORS form, do the following:

a. In the **Access-Control-Allow-Headers** input field, type a static string of a comma-separated list of headers that the client must submit in the actual request of the resource. Use the console-provided header list of 'Content-Type,X-Amz-Date,Authorization,X-API-Key,X-Amz-Security-Token' or specify your own headers.

b. Use the console-provided value of '*' as the **Access-Control-Allow-Origin** header value to allow access requests from all domains, or specify a named domain to all access requests from the specified domain.

c. Choose **Enable CORS and replace existing CORS headers**.
Note
When applying the above instructions to the ANY method in a proxy integration, any applicable CORS headers will not be set. Instead, you rely on the integration backend to return the applicable CORS headers, such as Access-Control-Allow-Origin.

6. In Confirm method changes, choose Yes, overwrite existing values to confirm the new CORS settings.

After CORS is enabled on the GET method, an OPTIONS method is added to the resource, if it is not already there. The 200 response of the OPTIONS method is automatically configured to return the three Access-Control-Allow-* headers to fulfill preflight handshakes. In addition, the actual (GET) method is also configured by default to return the Access-Control-Allow-Origin header in its 200 response as well. For other types of responses, you will need to manually configure them to return Access-Control-Allow-Origin' header with '*' or specific origin domain names, if you do not want to return the Cross-origin access error.

As with any updates of your API, you must deploy or redeploy the API for the new settings to take effect.

Enable CORS for a Resource Using the API Gateway Import API

If you are using the API Gateway Import API (p. 232), you can set up CORS support using a Swagger file. You must first define an OPTIONS method in your resource that returns the required headers.

Note
Web browsers expect Access-Control-Allow-Headers, and Access-Control-Allow-Origin headers to be set up in each API method that accepts CORS requests. In addition, some browsers first make an HTTP request to an OPTIONS method in the same resource, and then expect to receive the same headers.

The following example creates an OPTIONS method and specifies mock integration. For more information, see Set up Mock Integrations in API Gateway (p. 150).

```
/users
  options:
    summary: CORS support
    description: |
    Enable CORS by returning correct headers
```
consumes:
- application/json

produces:
- application/json

tags:
  - CORS

x-amazon-apigateway-integration:
  type: mock
  requestTemplates:
    application/json:
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
      |
Use API Gateway Custom Authorizers

An Amazon API Gateway custom authorizer is a Lambda function that you provide to control access to your API methods. A custom authorizer uses bearer token authentication strategies, such as OAuth or SAML. It can also use information described by headers, paths, query strings, stage variables, or context variables request parameters.

**Note**
Path parameters can be used to grant or deny permissions to invoke a method, but they cannot be used to define identity sources, which can be used as parts of an authorization policy caching key. Only headers, query strings, stage variables, and context variables can be set as identity sources.

When a client calls your API, API Gateway verifies whether a custom authorizer is configured for the API method. If so, API Gateway calls the Lambda function. In this call, API Gateway supplies the authorization token that is extracted from a specified request header for the token-based authorizer, or passes in the incoming request parameters as the input (for example, the `event` parameter) to the request parameters-based authorizer function.

You can implement various authorization strategies, such as JSON Web Token (JWT) verification and OAuth provider callout. You can also implement a custom scheme based on incoming request parameter values, to return IAM policies that authorize the request. If the returned policy is invalid or the permissions are denied, the API call does not succeed. For a valid policy, API Gateway caches the returned policy, associated with the incoming token or identity source request parameters. It then uses the cached policy for the current and subsequent requests, over a pre-configured time-to-live (TTL) period of up to 3600 seconds. You can set the TTL period to zero seconds to disable the policy caching. The default TTL value is 300 seconds. Currently, the maximum TTL value of 3600 seconds cannot be increased.

**Topics**
- Types of API Gateway Custom Authorizers (p. 258)
- Create an API Gateway Custom Authorizer Lambda Function (p. 258)
- Input to an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer (p. 261)
- Output from an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer (p. 263)
Types of API Gateway Custom Authorizers

API Gateway supports custom authorizers of the **TOKEN** and **REQUEST** types:

- Custom authorizers of the **TOKEN** type grant a caller permissions to invoke a given request using an authorization token passed in a header. The token could be, for example, an OAuth token.
- Custom authorizers of the **REQUEST** type grant a caller permissions to invoke a given request using request parameters, including headers, query strings, stage variables, or context parameters.

Create an API Gateway Custom Authorizer Lambda Function

Before creating an API Gateway custom authorizer, you must first create the AWS Lambda function that implements the logic to authorize and, if necessary, to authenticate the caller. You can do so in the Lambda console, using the code template available from the API Gateway Custom Authorizer blueprint. Or you can create one from scratch, following this [example in awslabs](https://github.com/aws-samples/aws-lambda-api-gateway-proxy). For illustration purposes, we explain how to create a simple Lambda function from scratch without using a blueprint. In production code, you should follow the API Gateway Custom Authorizer blueprint to implement your authorizer Lambda function.

When creating the Lambda function for your API Gateway custom authorizer, you assign an execution role for the Lambda function if it calls other AWS services. For the following example, the basic [AWSLambdaRole](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/execute-api/latest/developerguide/lambda-execution-role.html) suffices. For more involved use cases, follow the instructions to grant permissions in an execution role for the Lambda function.

Create a Lambda Function of a Custom Authorizer of the **TOKEN** type

In the code editor of the Lambda console, enter the following Node.js code as an example of the API Gateway custom authorizer of the **TOKEN** type.

```javascript
// A simple TOKEN authorizer example to demonstrate how to use an authorization token
// to allow or deny a request. In this example, the caller named 'user' is allowed to
// invoke
// a request if the client-supplied token value is 'allow'. The caller is not allowed to
// invoke
// the request if the token value is 'deny'. If the token value is 'Unauthorized', the
function
// returns the 'Unauthorized' error with an HTTP status code of 401. For any other token
value,
// the authorizer returns an 'Invalid token' error.
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
  var token = event.authorizationToken;
  switch (token.toLowerCase()) {
    case 'allow':
      callback(null, generatePolicy('user', 'Allow', event.methodArn));
      break;
    case 'deny':
      callback(null, generatePolicy('user', 'Deny', event.methodArn));
  }
}
```

The function uses a `generatePolicy` method to create the policy for the request based on the token value. The policy includes the necessary actions and conditions to determine whether the request should be allowed or denied.
break;
case 'unauthorized':
    callback("Unauthorized"); // Return a 401 Unauthorized response
    break;
default:
    callback("Error: Invalid token");
}
);

// Help function to generate an IAM policy
var generatePolicy = function(principalId, effect, resource) {
    var authResponse = {
    authResponse.principalId = principalId;
    if (effect && resource) {
        var policyDocument = {
        policyDocument.Version = '2012-10-17';
        policyDocument.Statement = [
        var statementOne = {
        statementOne.Action = 'execute-api:Invoke';
        statementOne.Effect = effect;
        statementOne.Resource = resource;
        policyDocument.Statement[0] = statementOne;
        authResponse.policyDocument = policyDocument;
        }
    }
    // Optional output with custom properties of the String, Number or Boolean type.
    authResponse.context = {
    "stringKey": "stringval",
    "numberKey": 123,
    "booleanKey": true
    }
    return authResponse;
}

For custom authorizers of the TOKENT type, API Gateway passes the source token to the Lambda function as the event.authorizationToken. Based on the value of this token, the preceding authorizer function returns an allow IAM policy on a specified method if the token value is 'allow'. This permits a caller to invoke the specified method. The caller receives a 200 OK response. The authorizer function returns a Deny policy against the specified method if the authorization token has a 'deny' value. This blocks the caller from calling the method. The client receives a 403 Forbidden response. If the token is 'unauthorized', the client receives a 401 Unauthorized response. If the token is 'fail' or anything else, the client receives a 500 Internal Server Error response. In both of the last two cases, no IAM policy is generated and the calls fail.

**Note**

In production code, you may need to authenticate the user before granting authorizations. If so, you can add authentication logic in the Lambda function as well. Consult the provider-specific documentation for instructions on how to call such an authentication provider.

In addition to returning an IAM policy, the custom authorizer function must also return the caller's principal identifier. It can optionally return a key-value map named context, containing additional information that can be passed into the integration backend. For more information about the authorizer's output format, see Output from an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer (p. 263).

You can use the context map to return cached credentials from the authorizer to the backend, using an integration request mapping template. This enables the backend to provide an improved user experience by using the cached credentials to reduce the need to access the secret keys and open the authorization tokens for every request.

For the Lambda proxy integration, API Gateway passes the context object from a custom authorizer directly to the backend Lambda function as part of the input event. You can retrieve the context key-
value pairs in the Lambda function by calling $event.requestContext.authorizer.key. For the
preceding custom authorizer example, key is stringKey, numberKey, or booleanKey. Their values are
stringified, for example, "stringval", "123", or "true", respectively.

Before going further, you may want to test the Lambda function from within the Lambda console. To
do this, configure the sample event to provide an input as described in Input to an Amazon API Gateway
Custom Authorizer (p. 261) and verify the result by examining the output compatible with Output from
an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer (p. 263). The next subsection explains how to create a
Lambda function of the Request authorizer.

Create a Lambda Function of a Custom Authorizer of the
REQUEST type

In the code editor of the Lambda console, enter the following Node.js code for a simplified Lambda
function as an example of the API Gateway custom authorizers of the REQUEST type.

```javascript
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
    console.log('Received event:', JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));

    // A simple REQUEST authorizer example to demonstrate how to use request
    // parameters to allow or deny a request. In this example, a request is
    // authorized if the client-supplied HeaderAuth1 header, QueryString1 query parameter,
    // stage variable of StageVar1 and the accountId in the request context all match
    // specified values of 'headerValue1', 'queryValue1', 'stageValue1', and
    // '123456789012', respectively.
    // Retrieve request parameters from the Lambda function input:
    var headers = event.headers;
    var queryStringParameters = event.queryStringParameters;
    var pathParameters = event.pathParameters;
    var stageVariables = event.stageVariables;
    var requestContext = event.requestContext;

    // Parse the input for the parameter values
    var tmp = event.methodArn.split(':');
    var apiGatewayArnTmp = tmp[5].split('/');
    var awsAccountId = tmp[4];
    var region = tmp[3];
    var restApiId = apiGatewayArnTmp[0];
    var stage = apiGatewayArnTmp[1];
    var method = apiGatewayArnTmp[2];
    var resource = '/'; // root resource
    if (apiGatewayArnTmp[3]) {
        resource += apiGatewayArnTmp[3];
    }

    // Perform authorization to return the Allow policy for correct parameters and
    // the 'Unauthorized' error, otherwise.
    var authResponse = {};
    var condition = {};
    condition.IpAddress = {};
    if (headers.HeaderAuth1 === "headerValue1"
    && queryStringParameters.QueryString1 === "queryValue1"
    && stageVariables.StageVar1 === "stageValue1"
    && requestContext.accountId === "123456789012") {
        callback(null, generateAllow('me', event.methodArn));
    } else {
        callback("Unauthorized");
    }
}
```
This Lambda function of the REQUEST authorizer verifies the input request parameters to return an Allow IAM policy on a specified method if all the required parameter (HeaderAuth1, QueryString1, StageVar1, and accountId) values match the pre-configured ones. This permits a caller to invoke the specified method. The caller receives a 200 OK response. Otherwise, the authorizer function returns an Unauthorized error, without generating any IAM policy.

The above example authorizer function in Node.js illustrates the programming flow to create a custom authorizer of the REQUEST type, including parsing the input which is similar to parsing the Lambda function input in the Lambda proxy integration (p. 130). You can extend the implementation to other languages supported by Lambda, such as Java or Python. For example to parse the input to a custom REQUEST authorizer in Java, see the section called “Java Function for an API with Lambda Proxy Integration” (p. 20).

Before going further, you may want to test the Lambda function from within the Lambda console. To do this, configure the sample event to provide the input and verify the result by examining the output. The next two sections explain the Input to an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer (p. 261) and Output from an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer (p. 263).

Input to an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer

For a custom authorizer of the TOKEN type, you must specify a custom header as the Token Source when you configure the authorizer for your API. The API client must pass the required authorization token in the incoming request. Upon receiving the incoming method request, API Gateway extracts the token from the custom header. It then passes the token as the authorizationToken property of the event object of the Lambda function, in addition to the method ARN as the methodArn property:
In this example, the type property specifies the authorizer type, which is a **TOKEN** authorizer. The `<caller-supplied-token>` originates from the custom authorization header in a client request. The methodArn is the ARN of the incoming method request and is populated by API Gateway in accordance with the custom authorizer configuration.

For the example **TOKEN** authorizer Lambda function shown in the preceding section, the `<caller-supplied-token>` string is allow, deny, unauthorized, or any other string value. An empty string value is the same as unauthorized. The following shows an example of such an input to obtain an Allow policy on the GET method of an API (ymy8tbxw7b) of the AWS account (123456789012) in any stage (*).

```
{
  "type": "TOKEN",
  "authorizationToken": "allow",
  "methodArn": "arn:aws:execute-api:us-west-2:123456789012:ymy8tbxw7b/*/GET/"
}
```

For a custom authorizer of the REQUEST type, API Gateway passes the required request parameters to the authorizer Lambda function as part of the event object. The affected request parameters include headers, path parameters, query string parameters, stage variables, and some of request context variables. The API caller can set the path parameters, headers, and query string parameters. The API developer must set the stage variables during the API deployment and API Gateway provides the request context at run time.

The following example shows an input to a REQUEST authorizer for an API method (GET /request) with a proxy integration:

```
{
  "type": "REQUEST",
  "methodArn": "arn:aws:execute-api:us-east-1:123456789012:s4x3opwd6i/test/GET/request",
  "resource": "/request",
  "path": "/request",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "headers": {
    "X-Amz-Date": "20170718T062915Z",
    "Accept": "*/*",
    "HeaderAuth1": "headerValue1",
    "CloudFront-Viewer-Country": "US",
    "CloudFront-Forwarded-Proto": "https",
    "CloudFront-Is-Tablet-Viewer": "false",
    "CloudFront-Is-Mobile-Viewer": "false",
    "User-Agent": "...",
    "X-Forwarded-Proto": "https",
    "CloudFront-Is-SmartTV-Viewer": "false",
    "Host": "....execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
    "Accept-Encoding": "gzip, deflate",
    "X-Forwarded-Port": "443",
    "X-Amzn-Trace-Id": "...",
    "Via": "...cloudfront.net (CloudFront)",
    "X-Amz-Cf-Id": "...",
    "X-Forwarded-For": "...", ...
    "Postman-Token": "...",
    "cache-control": "no-cache",
    "CloudFront-Is-Desktop-Viewer": "true",
    "Content-Type": "application/x-www-form-urlencoded"
  }
}
```
The requestContext is a map of key-value pairs and corresponds to the $context (p. 189) variable. Its outcome is API-dependent. API Gateway may add new keys to the map. For more information about the Lambda function input in a proxy integration, see Input Format of a Lambda Function for Proxy Integration (p. 130).

Output from an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer

The custom authorizer's Lambda function returns an output that must include the principal identifier (principalId) and a policy document (policyDocument) containing a list of policy statements. The output can also include a context map containing key-value pairs. If the API has a usage plan enacted, the method requires an API key, and the apiKeySource is set to AUTHORIZER, the custom authorizer Lambda function must also return an API key of the usage plan as the UsageIdentifierKey property value.

The following shows an example of this output.

```json
{
   "principalId": "yyyyyyyy", // The principal user identification associated with the token sent by the client.
   "policyDocument": {
      "Version": "2012-10-17",
      "Statement": [
         {
            "Action": "execute-api:Invoke",
            "Effect": "Allow|Deny",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:execute-api:{regionId}:{accountId}:{appId}/{stage}/{httpVerb}/[{{resource}}/{httpVerb}]/[...]]"
         }
      ],
      "context": {
         "stringKey": "value",
         "numberKey": "1",
         "booleanKey": "true"
      },
      "UsageIdentifierKey": "{api-key}"  
   }
}
Here, a policy statement stipulates whether to allow or deny (Effect) the API Gateway execution service to invoke (Action) the specified API method (Resource). You can use a wild card (*) to specify a resource type (method). For information about setting valid policies for calling an API, see Statement Reference of IAM Policies for Executing API in API Gateway (p. 245).

For an authorization-enabled method AR, e.g., `arn:aws:execute-api:{region-id}:{account-id}:{api-id}/{stage-id}/{method}/{resource}/(path)`, the maximum length is 1600 bytes. The path parameter values, the size of which are determined at run time, can cause the ARN length to exceed the limit. When this happens, the API client will receive a 414 Request URI too long response.

In addition, the Resource ARN, as shown in the policy statement output by the authorizer, is currently limited to 512 characters long. For this reason, you must not use URI with a JWT token of a significant length in a request URI. You can safely pass the JWT token in a request header, instead.

You can access the `principalId` value in a mapping template using the `$context.authorizer.principalId` variable. This is useful if you want to pass the value to the backend. For more information, see Accessing the $context Variable (p. 189).

You can access the `stringKey`, `numberKey`, or `booleanKey` value (for example, "value", "1", or "true") of the `context` map in a mapping template by calling `$context.authorizer.stringKey`, `$context.authorizer.numberKey`, or `$context.authorizer.booleanKey`, respectively. The returned values are all stringified. Notice that you cannot set a JSON object or array as a valid value of any key in the `context` map.

{api-key} stands for an API key of the usage plan associated with the API stage. For more information, see the section called “Use API Gateway Usage Plans” (p. 296).

The following shows example output from the example custom authorizer. The example output contains a policy statement to block (Deny) calls to the GET method in an API (`ymy8tbxw7b`) of an AWS account (123456789012) in any stage (*).

```json
{
  "principalId": "user",
  "policyDocument": {
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
      {
        "Action": "execute-api:Invoke",
        "Effect": "Deny",
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

## Configure Custom Authorizer Using the API Gateway Console

After you create the Lambda function and verify that it works, use the following steps to configure the API Gateway custom authorizer in the API Gateway console.

**To enable a custom authorizer on API methods**

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Create a new or select an existing API and choose Authorizers under that API.
4. For Create Authorizer, type an authorizer name in the Name input field.
5. For Type, choose the Lambda option.
6. For Lambda Function, choose a region and then choose an available custom authorizer's Lambda function.
7. Leave Lambda Execution Role blank to let the API Gateway console set a resource-based policy. The policy grants API Gateway permissions to invoke the authorizer Lambda function. You can also choose to type the name of an IAM role to allow API Gateway to invoke the authorizer Lambda function. For an example of such a role, see Set Up an IAM Role and Policy for an API to Invoke Lambda Functions (p. 486).

If you choose to let the API Gateway console set the resource-based policy, the Add Permission to Lambda Function dialog is displayed. Choose OK. After the custom authorization is created, you can test it with appropriate authorization token values to verify that it works as expected.

8. For Lambda Event Payload, choose either Token for a TOKEN authorizer or Request for a REQUEST authorizer. (This is the same as setting the type property to TOKEN or REQUEST.)

9. Depending on the choice of the previous step, do one of the following:
   a. For the Token options, do the following:
      - Type the name of a header in Token Source. The API client must include a header of this name to send the authorization token to the custom authorizer.
      - Optionally, provide a RegEx statement in Token Validation input field. API Gateway performs initial validation of the input token against this expression and invokes the authorizer upon successful validation. This helps reduce chances of being charged for invalid tokens.
      - For Authorization Caching, select or clear the Enabled option, depending on whether you want to cache the authorization policy generated by the authorizer or not. When policy caching is enabled, you can choose to modify the TTL value from the default (300). Setting TTL=0 disables policy caching. When policy caching is enabled, the header name specified in Token Source becomes the cache key.
   b. For the Request option, do the following:
      - For Identity Sources, type a request parameter name of a chosen parameter type. Supported parameter types are Header, Query String, Stage Variable, and Context. To add more identity sources, choose Add Identity Source.

      API Gateway uses the specified identity sources as the request authorizer caching key. When caching is enabled, API Gateway calls the authorizer's Lambda function only after successfully verifying that all the specified identity sources are present at runtime. If a specified identity source is missing, null, or empty, API Gateway returns a 401 Unauthorized response without calling the authorizer Lambda function.

      When multiple identity sources are defined, they all used to derive the authorizer's cache key. Changing any of the cache key parts causes the authorizer to discard the cached policy document and generate a new one.
      - For Authorization Caching, select or deselect the Enabled option, depending on whether you want to cache the authorization policy generated by the authorizer or not. When policy caching is enabled, you can choose to modify the TTL value from the default (300). Setting TTL=0 disables policy caching.

      When caching is disabled, it is not necessary to specify an identity source. API Gateway does not perform any validation before invoking the authorizer's Lambda function.
Note
To enable caching, your authorizer must return a policy that is applicable to all methods across an API. To enforce method-specific policy, you can set the TTL value to zero to disable policy caching for the API.

10. Choose Create to create the new custom authorizer for the chosen API.

11. After the authorizer is created for the API, you can optionally test invoking the authorizer before it is configured on a method.

For the TOKEN authorizer, type a valid token in the Identity token input text field and the choose Test. The token will be passed to the Lambda function as the header you specified in the Identity token source setting of the authorizer.

For the REQUEST authorizer, type the valid request parameters corresponding to the specified identity sources and then choose Test.

In addition to using the API Gateway console, you can use AWS CLI or an AWS SDK for API Gateway to test invoking an authorizer. To do so using the AWS CLI, see test-invoke-authorizer.

Note
Test-invoke for method executions test-invoke for authorizers are independent processes. To test invoking a method using the API Gateway console, see Use the Console to Test a Method (p. 438). To test invoking a method using the AWS CLI, see test-invoke-method.

To test invoking a method and a configured authorizer, deploy the API, and then use cURL or Postman to call the method, providing the required token or request parameters.

The next procedure shows how to configure an API method to use the custom authorizer.

To configure an API method to use a custom authorizer

1. Go back to the API. Create a new method or choose an existing method. If necessary, create a new resource.

2. In Method Execution, choose the Method Request link.

3. Under Settings, expand the Authorization drop-down list to select the custom authorizer you just created (for example, myTestApiAuthorizer), and then choose the check mark icon to save the choice.

4. Optionally, while still on the Method Request page, choose Add header if you also want to pass the custom authorization token to the backend. In Name, type a custom header name that matches the Token Source name you specified when you created the custom authorizer for the API. Then, choose the check mark icon to save the settings. This step does not apply to REQUEST authorizers.

5. Choose Deploy API to deploy the API to a stage. Note the Invoke URL value. You need it when calling the API. For a REQUEST authorizer using stage variables, you must also define the required stage variables and specify their values while in Stage Editor.

Call an API with API Gateway Custom Authorizers

Having configured the custom authorizer and deployed the API, you should test the API with the custom authorizer enabled. For this, you need a REST client, such as cURL. Postman. For the following examples, we use Postman.

Note
When calling an authorizer-enabled method, API Gateway does not log the call to CloudWatch if the required token for the TOKEN authorizer is not set, null, or invalidated by the specified Token validation expression. Similarly, API Gateway does not log the call to CloudWatch if any of the required identity sources for the REQUEST authorizer are not set, null or empty.
In the following, we show how to use Postman to call or test the API with the previously described custom **TOKEN** authorizer enabled. The method can be applied to calling an API with a custom **REQUEST** authorizer, if you specify the required path, header, or query string parameters explicitly.

**To call an API with the custom **TOKEN** authorizer**

1. Open **Postman**, choose the **GET** method, and paste the API's **Invoke URL** into the adjacent URL field.

   Add the custom authorization token header and set the value to **allow**. Choose **Send**.

   ![Postman screenshot](image)

   The response shows that the API Gateway custom authorizer returns a **200 OK** response and successfully authorizes the call to access the HTTP endpoint (http://httpbin.org/get) integrated with the method.

2. Still in Postman, change the custom authorization token header value to **deny**. Choose **Send**.
The response shows that the API Gateway custom authorizer returns a **403 Forbidden** response without authorizing the call to access the HTTP endpoint.

3. In Postman, change the custom authorization token header value to **unauthorized** and choose **Send**.

The response shows that API Gateway returns a **401 Unauthorized** response without authorizing the call to access the HTTP endpoint.

4. Now, change the custom authorization token header value to **fail**. Choose **Send**.
The response shows that API Gateway returns a **500 Internal Server Error** response without authorizing the call to access the HTTP endpoint.

### Use Amazon Cognito User Pools

In addition to using IAM roles and policies (p. 239) or custom authorizers (p. 257), you can use an Amazon Cognito user pool to control who can access your API in Amazon API Gateway.

To use an Amazon Cognito user pool with your API, you must first create an authorizer of the `COGNITO_USER_POOLS` type and then configure an API method to use that authorizer. After the API is deployed, the client must first sign the user in to the user pool, obtain an identity or access token for the user, and then call the API method with one of the tokens, which are typically set to the request's `Authorization` header. The API call succeeds only if the required token is supplied and the supplied token is valid, otherwise, the client isn't authorized to make the call because the client did not have credentials that could be authorized.

The identity token is used to authorize API calls based on identity claims of the signed-in user. The access token is used to authorize API calls based on the custom scopes of specified access-protected resources. For more information, see Using Tokens with User Pools and Resource Server and Custom Scopes.

To create and configure an Amazon Cognito user pool for your API, you perform the following tasks:

- Use the Amazon Cognito console, CLI/SDK, or API to create a user pool—or use one that's owned by another AWS account.
- Use the API Gateway console, CLI/SDK, or API to create an API Gateway authorizer with the chosen user pool.
- Use the API Gateway console, CLI/SDK, or API to enable the authorizer on selected API methods.

To call any API methods with a user pool enabled, your API clients perform the following tasks:

- Use the Amazon Cognito CLI/SDK or API to sign a user in to the chosen user pool, and obtain an identity token or access token.
- Use a client-specific framework to call the deployed API Gateway API and supply the appropriate token in the `Authorization` header.
As the API developer, you must provide your client developers with the user pool ID, a client ID, and possibly the associated client secrets that are defined as part of the user pool.

**Note**
To let a user sign in using Amazon Cognito credentials and also obtain temporary credentials to use with the permissions of an IAM role, use Amazon Cognito Federated Identities. Set the authorization type of your API to `AWS_IAM`.

In this section, we describe how to create a user pool, how to integrate an API Gateway API with the user pool, and how to invoke an API that's integrated with the user pool.

**Topics**
- Obtain Permissions to Create User Pool Authorizers (p. 270)
- Create an Amazon Cognito User Pool (p. 271)
- Integrate an API with a User Pool (p. 272)
- Call an API Integrated with a User Pool (p. 276)

## Obtain Permissions to Create User Pool Authorizers

To create an authorizer with an Amazon Cognito user pool, you must have `Allow` permissions to create or update an authorizer with the chosen Amazon Cognito user pool. The following IAM policy document shows an example of such permissions:

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "apigateway:POST"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:apigateway:*::/restapis/*/authorizers",
      "Condition": {
        "ArnLike": {
          "apigateway:CognitoUserPoolProviderArn": [
            "arn:aws:cognito-idp:us-east-1:123456789012:userpool/us-east-1_aD06NQmjO",
            "arn:aws:cognito-idp:us-east-1:234567890123:userpool/us-east-1_xJ1MQtPEN"
          ]
        }
      }
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "apigateway:PATCH"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:apigateway:*::/restapis/*/authorizers/*",
      "Condition": {
        "ArnLike": {
          "apigateway:CognitoUserPoolProviderArn": [
            "arn:aws:cognito-idp:us-east-1:123456789012:userpool/us-east-1_aD06NQmjO",
            "arn:aws:cognito-idp:us-east-1:234567890123:userpool/us-east-1_xJ1MQtPEN"
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
```
Make sure that the policy is attached to your IAM user, an IAM group that you belong to, or an IAM role that you're assigned to.

In the preceding policy document, the apigateway:POST action is for creating a new authorizer, and the apigateway:PATCH action is for updating an existing authorizer. You can restrict the policy to a specific region or a particular API by overriding the first two wildcard (*) characters of the Resource values, respectively.

The Condition clauses that are used here are to restrict the Allowed permissions to the specified user pools. When a Condition clause is present, access to any user pools that don't match the conditions is denied. When a permission doesn't have a Condition clause, access to any user pool is allowed.

You have the following options to set the Condition clause:

- You can set an ArnLike or ArnEquals conditional expression to permit creating or updating COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizers with the specified user pools only.
- You can set an ArnNotLike or ArnNotEquals conditional expression to permit creating or updating COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizers with any user pool that isn't specified in the expression.
- You can omit the Condition clause to permit creating or updating COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizers with any user pool, of any AWS account, and in any region.

For more information on the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) conditional expressions, see Amazon Resource Name Condition Operators. As shown in the example, apigateway:CognitoUserPoolProviderArn is a list of ARNs of the COGNITO_USER_POOLS user pools that can or can't be used with an API Gateway authorizer of the COGNITO_USER_POOLS type.

Create an Amazon Cognito User Pool

Before integrating your API with a user pool, you must create the user pool in Amazon Cognito. For instructions on how to create a user pool, see Setting up User Pools in the Amazon Cognito Developer Guide.

**Note**

Note the user pool ID, client ID, and any client secret. The client must provide them to Amazon Cognito for the user to register with the user pool, to sign in to the user pool, and to obtain an identity or access token to be included in requests to call API methods that are configured with the user pool. Also, you must specify the user pool name when you configure the user pool as an authorizer in API Gateway, as described next.

If you're using access tokens to authorize API method calls, be sure to configure the app integration with the user pool to set up the custom scopes that you want on a given resource server. For more information, see Defining Resource Servers for Your User Pool.

Note the configured resource server identifiers and custom scope names. You need them to construct the access scope full names for OAuth Scopes, which is used by the COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer.
Integrate an API with a User Pool

After creating an Amazon Cognito user pool, in API Gateway, you must then create a COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer that uses the user pool. The following procedure walks you through the steps to do this using the API Gateway console.

**To create a COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer by using the API Gateway console**

1. Create a new API, or select an existing API in API Gateway.
2. From the main navigation pane, choose **Authorizers** under the specified API.
3. Under **Authorizers**, choose **Create New Authorizer**.
4. To configure the new authorizer to use a user pool, do the following:
   a. Type an authorizer name in **Name**.
   b. Select the **Cognito** option.
   c. Choose a region under **Cognito User Pool**.
   d. Select an available user pool. You must have created a user pool for the selected region in Amazon Cognito for it to show up in the drop-down list.
   e. For **Token source**, type **Authorization** as the header name to pass the identity or access token that's returned by Amazon Cognito when a user signs in successfully.
   f. Optionally, type a regular expression in the **Token validation** field to validate the token before you authorize with Amazon Cognito.
   g. To finish integrating the user pool with the API, choose **Create**.
5. After creating the COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer, you can optionally test invoke it by supplying an identity token that's provisioned from the user pool. You can obtain this identity token by calling the Amazon Cognito Identity SDK to perform user sign-in. Make sure to use the returned identity token, not the access token.
The preceding procedure creates a COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer that uses the newly created Amazon Cognito user pool. Depending on how you enable the authorizer on an API method, you can use either an identity token or an access token that's provisioned from the integrated user pool. The next procedure walks you through the steps to configure the authorizer on an API method.

To configure a COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer on methods

1. Choose (or create) a method of your API.
2. Choose Method Request.
3. Under Settings, choose the pencil icon next to Authorization.
4. Choose one of the available Amazon Cognito user pool authorizers from the drop-down list.
5. To save the settings, choose the check mark icon.
6. To use an identity token, do the following:
   a. Leave the OAuth Scopes option unspecified (as NONE).
   b. If needed, choose Integration Request to add the
      $context.authorizer.claims['property-name'] or
      #context.authorizer.claims.property-name expressions in a body-mapping template
to pass the specified identity claims property from the user pool to the backend. For simple
property names, such as sub or custom-sub, the two notations are identical. For complex
property names, such as custom:role, you can't use the dot notation. For example, the
following mapping expressions pass the claim's standard fields of sub and email to the
backend:

      ```json
      { 
        "context" : { 
          "sub" : "#context.authorizer.claims.sub",
          "email" : "#context.authorizer.claims.email"
        }
      }
      ```

If you declared a custom claim field when you configured a user pool, you can follow the same pattern to access the custom fields. The following example gets a custom role field of a claim:

```json
{ 
  "context" : { 
    "role" : "#context.authorizer.claims.role"
  }
}
```

If the custom claim field is declared as custom:role, use the following example to get the claim's property:

```json
{ 
  "context" : { 
    "role" : "#context.authorizer.claims['custom:role']"
  }
}
```

7. To use an access token, do the following:
   a. Choose the pencil icon next to OAuth Scopes.
   b. Type one or more full names of a scope—for example, com.hamuta.movies/drama.view.
      Use a single space to separate multiple scopes.
At runtime, the method call succeeds if any scope that's specified on the method in this step matches a scope that's claimed in the incoming token. Otherwise, the call fails with a 401 Unauthorized response.

c. To save the setting, choose the check mark icon.

8. Repeat these steps for other methods that you choose.

With the COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer, if the OAuth Scopes option isn't specified, API Gateway treats the supplied token as an identity token and verifies the claimed identity against the one from the user pool. Otherwise, API Gateway treats the supplied token as an access token and verifies the access scopes that are claimed in the token against the authorization scopes declared on the method.

Instead of using the API Gateway console, you can also enable an Amazon Cognito user pool on a method by specifying a Swagger definition file and importing the API definition into API Gateway.

**To import a COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer with a Swagger definition file**

1. Create (or export) a Swagger definition file for your API.

2. Specify the COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer (MyUserPool) definition as part of the securityDefinitions:

```
"securityDefinitions": {
  "MyUserPool": {
    "type": "apiKey",
    "name": "Authorization",
    "in": "header",
    "x-amazon-apigateway-authtype": "cognito_user_pools",
    "x-amazon-apigateway-authorizer": {
      "type": "cognito_user_pools",
      "providerARNs": [
        "arn:aws:cognito-idp:{region}:{account_id}:userpool/{user_pool_id}"
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

3. To use the identity token for method authorization, add `{ "MyUserPool": [] }` to the security definition of the method, as shown in the following GET method on the root resource.

```
"paths": {
  "/": {
    "get": {
      "consumes": [
        "application/json"
      ],
      "produces": [
        "text/html"
      ],
      "responses": {
        "200": {
          "description": "200 response",
          "headers": {
            "Content-Type": {
              "type": "string"
            }
          }
        }
      },
      "security": [
        {
          "MyUserPool": []
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```
4. To use the access token for method authorization, change the above security definition to

```
{ "MyUserPool": [resource-server/scope, ...] }
```

```
"paths": {
  "/": {
    "get": {
      "consumes": [
        "application/json"
      ],
      "produces": [
        "text/html"
      ],
      "responses": {
        "200": {
          "description": "200 response",
          "headers": {
            "Content-Type": {
              "type": "string"
            }
          }
        }
      },
      "security": [
        {
        }
      ],
      "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
        "type": "mock",
        "responses": {
          "default": {
            "statusCode": "200",
            "responseParameters": {
              "method.response.header.Content-Type": "text/html"
            }
          }
        },
        "requestTemplates": {
          "application/json": "{"statusCode": 200}"
        },
        "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match"
      }
    }
  }
```

275
5. If needed, you can set other API configuration settings by using the appropriate Swagger definitions or extensions. For more information, see API Gateway Extensions to Swagger (p. 464).

### Call an API Integrated with a User Pool

To call a method with a user pool authorizer configured, the client must do the following:

- Enable the user to sign up with the user pool.
- Enable the user to sign in to the user pool.
- Obtain an identity token of the signed-in user from the user pool.
- Include the identity token in the Authorization header (or another header you specified when you created the authorizer).

You can use one of the AWS SDKs to perform these tasks. For example:

- To use the Android SDK, see Setting up the AWS Mobile SDK for Android to Work with User Pools.
- To use the iOS SDK, see Setting Up the AWS Mobile SDK for iOS to Work with User Pools.
- To use JavaScript, see Setting up the AWS SDK for JavaScript in the Browser to Work with User Pools.

The following procedure outlines the steps to perform these tasks. For more information, see the blog posts on Using Android SDK with Amazon Cognito User Pools and Using Amazon Cognito User Pool for iOS.

#### To call an API that's integrated with a user pool

1. Sign up a first-time user to a specified user pool.
2. Sign in a user to the user pool.
3. Get the user's identity token.
4. Call API methods that are configured with a user pool authorizer, and supply the unexpired token in the Authorization header or another header of your choosing.
5. When the token expires, repeat steps 2–4. Identity tokens provisioned by Amazon Cognito expire within an hour.

For code examples, see an Android Java sample and an iOS Objective-C sample.

### Use Client-Side SSL Certificates for Authentication by the Backend

You can use API Gateway to generate an SSL certificate and use its public key in the backend to verify that HTTP requests to your backend system are from API Gateway. This allows your HTTP backend to control and accept only requests originating from Amazon API Gateway, even if the backend is publicly accessible.

**Note**

Some backend servers may not support SSL client authentication as API Gateway does and could return an SSL certificate error. For a list of incompatible backend servers, see Known Issues (p. 562).
The SSL certificates that are generated by API Gateway are self-signed and only the public key of a certificate is visible in the API Gateway console or through the APIs.

Topics
- Generate a Client Certificate Using the API Gateway Console (p. 277)
- Configure an API to Use SSL Certificates (p. 277)
- Test Invoke (p. 278)
- Configure Backend to Authenticate API (p. 280)

Generate a Client Certificate Using the API Gateway Console

1. In the main navigation pane, choose **Client Certificates**.
2. From the **Client Certificates** pane, choose **Generate Client Certificate**.
3. Optionally, for **Edit**, choose to add a descriptive title for the generated certificate and choose **Save** to save the description. API Gateway generates a new certificate and returns the new certificate GUID, along with the PEM-encoded public key.

You are now ready to configure an API to use the certificate.

Configure an API to Use SSL Certificates

These instructions assume you already completed Generate a Client Certificate Using the API Gateway Console (p. 277).

1. In the API Gateway console, create or open an API for which you want to use the client certificate. Make sure the API has been deployed to a stage.
2. Choose **Stages** under the selected API and then choose a stage.
3. In the **Stage Editor** panel, select a certificate under the **Client Certificate** section.
4. To save the settings, choose **Save Changes**.
After a certificate is selected for the API and saved, API Gateway uses the certificate for all calls to HTTP integrations in your API.

**Test Invoke**

1. Choose an API method. In Client, choose **Test**.
2. From **Client Certificate**, choose **Test** to invoke the method request.
Method Execution  / - GET - Method Test

Make a test call to your method with the provided input

Path

No path parameters exist for this resource. You can define path parameters by using the syntax `{myPathParam}` in a resource path.

Query Strings

No query string parameters exist for this method. You can add them via Method Request.

Headers

No header parameters exist for this method. You can add them via Method Request.

Stage Variables

No stage variables exist for this method.

Client Certificate

```
my first client cert generated by api gate
```

Request Body

Request Body is not supported for GET methods.
API Gateway presents the chosen SSL certificate for the HTTP backend to authenticate the API.

Configure Backend to Authenticate API

These instructions assume you already completed Generate a Client Certificate Using the API Gateway Console (p. 277) and Configure an API to Use SSL Certificates (p. 277).

When receiving HTTPS requests from API Gateway, your backend can authenticate your API using the PEM-encoded certificate generated by API Gateway, provided that the backend is properly configured. Most Web servers can be easily configured to do so.

For example, in Node.js you can use the HTTPS module to create an HTTPS backend and use the client-certificate-auth modules to authenticate client requests with PEM-encoded certificates. For more information, see HTTPS on the Node.js.org website and see client-certificate-auth on the https://www.npmjs.com/ website.

API Gateway-Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integrations

The following list shows the certificate authorities supported by API Gateway for HTTP and HTTP Proxy integrations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alias name</th>
<th>MD5</th>
<th>SHA256</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Alias name: mozillacert44.pem
Alias name: mozillacert108.pem
Alias name: mozillacert95.pem
Alias name: keynectaRootCA.pem
Alias name: equifaxsecureglobalbusinessca.pem
Alias name: affirmtrustpremiumca.pem
Alias name: baltimorecodesigningca.pem
Alias name: verisignc1g1.pem
Alias name: affirmtrustpremiumca.pem
Alias name: mozillacert148.pem
Alias name: affirmtrustpremiumca.pem
Alias name: verisignc1g1.pem
Alias name: mozillacert7.pem
Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration

Alias name: mozillacert73.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: swissignsilverg2ca
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert11.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert129.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert62.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert126.pem
MD5: 77:0D:19:B1:21:FD:00:42:9C:3E:0C:AE:5D:DB:02:8B
SHA256:

Alias name: securetrustca
SHA256:

Alias name: soneraclass1ca
MD5: 77:0D:19:B1:21:FD:00:42:9C:3E:0C:AE:5D:DB:02:8B
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert29.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert137.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert11.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert18.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert115.pem
SHA256:

Alias name: verisignclass3g5ca
SHA256:

Alias name: utnuserfirsthardwareca
SHA256:

Alias name: addtrustqualifiedca
SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert40.pem
Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration

Alias name: mozillacert58.pem
Alias name: verisignclass3ca.pem
Alias name: mozillacert104.pem
Alias name: mozillacert91.pem
Alias name: thawtepersonalfreemailca.pem
Alias name: certplusclass3pprimaryca.pem
Alias name: starfieldclass2ca.pem
Alias name: mozillacert36.pem
Alias name: mozillacert3.pem
Alias name: globalsignr2ca.pem
284
Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration

Alias name: mozillacert87.pem
Alias name: mozillacert133.pem
Alias name: mozillacert25.pem
Alias name: verisignclass1g2ca
Alias name: mozillacert122.pem
Alias name: mozillacert14.pem
Alias name: equifaxsecureca
MD5: 67:CB:1C:3D:24:1A:82:9B:2B:17:1E:DF:1B:1C
Alias name: mozillacert65.pem
Alias name: mozillacert111.pem
Alias name: certumtrustednetworkca
Alias name: mozillacert129.pem
Alias name: mozillacert54.pem
Alias name: mozillacert100.pem
Alias name: gd-class2-root.pem
MD5: 8F:5D:77:06:27:C4:98:3C:5B:93:78:E7:D7:7D:9B:CC
Alias name: gd-class2-root.pem
### Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration

<p>| Alias name: quovadisrootca | MD5: 27:DE:36:FE:72:00:03:00:9D:F4:F0:1E:6C:04:24 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alias name: verisignroot.pem</th>
<th>MD5: 8E:AD:B5:01:AA:4D:81:E4:8C:1D:D1:E1:14:00:95:19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>mozillacert147.pem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>camerfirmachambersca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>mozillacert21.pem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>mozillacert39.pem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>mozillacert72.pem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>geotrustuniversalca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>mozillacert136.pem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>affirmtrustnetworkingca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>affirmtrustcommercialca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>affirmtrustcommercialca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name:</td>
<td>mozillacert125.pem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD5:</td>
<td>D6:A5:C3:ED:5D:DD:3B:00:Cl:3D:87:92:11:1D:3F:CE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration

Alias name: mozillacert17.pem

Alias name: mozillacert50.pem

Alias name: mozillacert66.pem

Alias name: starfieldrootg2ca

Alias name: buypassclass3ca

Alias name: verisignc2g3.pem

Alias name: verisignclass2g3ca

Alias name: mozillacert103.pem

Alias name: mozillacert90.pem

Alias name: verisignc3g3.pem

Alias name: mozillacert46.pem

Alias name: godaddyclass2ca

Alias name: verisignc4g3.pem

Alias name: mozillacert97.pem

Alias name: mozillacert143.pem
Alias name: mozillacert35.pem
Alias name: mozillacert2.pem
Alias name: utnuserfirstobjectca
Alias name: mozillacert86.pem
Alias name: mozillacert132.pem
Alias name: addtrustclassica
Alias name: mozillacert24.pem
Alias name: verisigncloud
Alias name: mozillacert9.pem
Alias name: amzninternalrootca
Alias name: mozillacert75.pem
Alias name: entrustevca
MD5: D6:A5:C3:ED:5D:DD:3E:00:C1:3D:87:92:1F:1D:3F:EB
Alias name: secomscrootca3
Alias name: camerfirmachambersignca
Alias name: secomscrootca1
SHA256: 289
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alias name</th>
<th>MD5</th>
<th>SHA256</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert93.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: quovadisrootca3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: soneraClass2CA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert31.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert49.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert62.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: baltimorecybertrustca</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert20.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert38.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert5.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD5: A1:0B:44:B3:CA:10:D8:00:6E:9D:0F:D8:0F:92:OA:D1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert71.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: verisignclass3g4ca</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert89.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias name: mozillacert135.pem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration

Alias name: camerfirmachamberscommerceca
  SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert27.pem
  SHA256:

Alias name: verisignclg6.pem
  SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert60.pem
  SHA256:

Alias name: mozillacert78.pem
  SHA256:

Alias name: gd_bundle-g2.pem
  SHA256:

Alias name:(certumca
  SHA256:

Alias name: secomevrootca1
  SHA256:

Alias name: aolrootca2
  SHA256:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHA256</th>
<th>Alias name</th>
<th>MD5:</th>
<th>SHA256</th>
<th>Alias name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration

Alien name: mozillacert96.pem
SHA256:

Alien name: mozillacert142.pem
SHA256:

Alien name: mozillacert34.pem
SHA256:

Alien name: thawteprimaryrootca
SHA256:

Alien name: mozillacert1.pem
SHA256:

Alien name: verisignc1g2.pem
SHA256:

Alien name: geotrustprimaryca
SHA256:

Alien name: mozillacert23.pem
SHA256:

Alien name: geotrustglobalca
SHA256:
Supported Certificate Authorities for HTTP and HTTP Proxy Integration

Alias name: mozillacert138.pem
Alias name: mozillacert12.pem
Alias name: comodoaaca
Alias name: mozillacert63.pem
Alias name: certplusclass2primaryca
Alias name: mozillacert127.pem
Alias name: tteleseeglobalrootclass2ca
MD5: 2B:9B:9E:84:7B:6C:1F:00:72:1A:CC:C1:77:79:DF:6A
Alias name: mozillacert19.pem
Alias name: digicerthighassuranceevrootca
Alias name: amzninternalinfoseccag3
Alias name: mozillacert52.pem
Alias name: mozillacert116.pem
Alias name: globalsignca
Alias name: mozillacert41.pem
Alias name: mozillacert59.pem
MD5: 8E:AD:B5:01:AA:4D:81:E4:8C:1D:D1:E1:14:00:95:19
Alias name: mozillacert105.pem

295
Create and Use API Gateway Usage Plans

After you create, test, and deploy your APIs, you can use API Gateway usage plans to extend them as product offerings for your customers. You can provide usage plans to allow specified customers to access selected APIs at agreed-upon request rates and quotas that can meet their business requirements and budget constraints.

What Is a Usage Plan?

A usage plan prescribes who can access one or more deployed API stages—and also how much and how fast the caller can access the APIs. The plan uses an API key to identify an API client and meters access to an API stage with the configurable throttling and quota limits that are enforced on individual client API keys.

The throttling prescribes the request rate limits that are applied to each API key. The quotas are the maximum number of requests with a given API key submitted within a specified time interval. You can configure individual API methods to require API key authorization based on usage plan configuration. An API stage is identified by an API identifier and a stage name.

**Note**
Throttling and quota limits apply to requests for individual API keys that are aggregated across all API stages within a usage plan.

You can generate an API key in API Gateway, or import it into API Gateway from an external source. For more information, see the section called “Set Up API Keys Using the API Gateway Console” (p. 298).
Expose API Key Source

When you enact a usage plan for an API and enable API keys on API methods, the incoming request must come with an appropriate API key. API Gateway reads this API key from an incoming request and verifies it against the key in the usage plan. If the keys match, API Gateway throttles the requests according to the plan’s request limit and quota. Otherwise, it throws an InvalidKeyParameter exception. As a result, the caller receives a 403 Forbidden response.

There are two sources that API Gateway receives an API key from. You can distribute the key to client developers and ask the client to pass the API key as the X-API-Key header of an incoming request when you require API keys on API methods. This is known as the HEADER source because API Gateway reads it from the header. Alternatively, you can have a custom authorizer return the API key as part of the custom authorization response. For more information on the custom authorization response, see the section called “Output from an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer” (p. 263). This is known as the AUTHORIZER source because API Gateway reads it from the authorizer output.

To choose an API key source using the API Gateway console, follow the instructions below:

To choose an API key source for an API by using the API Gateway console:

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Choose an existing API or create a new one.
3. In the primary navigation pane, choose Settings under the chosen or newly created API.
4. Under the API Key Source section in the Settings pane, choose HEADER or AUTHORIZER from the drop-down list.
5. Choose Save Changes.

To choose an API key source for an API by using the AWS CLI, call the update-rest-api command as follows:

```bash
aws apigateway update-rest-api --rest-api-id 1234123412 --patch-operations 
   op=replace,path=/apiKeySource,value=AUTHORIZER
```

To have the client submit an API key, set the value to HEADER in the above CLI command.

To choose an API key source for an API by using the API Gateway REST API, call restapi:update as follows:

```bash
PATCH /restapis/fugvjdxtri/ HTTP/1.1
Content-Type: application/json
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
X-Amz-Date: 20160603T205348Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={access_key_ID}/20160603/us-east-1/
apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, 
   Signature={sig4_hash}
{
   "patchOperations" : [
     {
       "op" : "replace",
       "path" : "/apiKeySource",
       "value" : "HEADER"
     }
   ]
}
```
To have an authorizer return an API key, set the value to AUTHORIZER in the previous patchOperations input.

## How to Configure a Usage Plan?

The following steps outline how you, as the API owner, configure a usage plan for your customers.

**To configure a usage plan**

1. Create one or more APIs, configure the methods to require an API key, and deploy the APIs in stages.
2. Generate API keys and distribute the keys to app developers (your customers) by using your APIs.
3. Create the usage plan with the desired throttle and quota limits.
4. Associate selected API stages and API keys to the usage plan.

Callers of the API must supply an assigned API key in the x-api-key header in requests to the API.

**Note**

To include API methods in a usage plan, you must configure individual API methods to require an API key (p. 298). For user authentication and authorization, don't use API keys. Use an IAM role, a custom authorizer (p. 257), or an Amazon Cognito user pool (p. 269).

The following sections provide detailed instructions for these tasks.

### Set Up API Keys Using the API Gateway Console

To set up API keys, do the following:

- Configure API methods to require an API key.
- Create or import an API key for the API in a region.

Before setting up API keys, you must have created an API and deployed it to a stage.

For instructions on how to create and deploy an API by using the API Gateway console, see Creating an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 79) and Deploying an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 350), respectively.

**Topics**

- Require API Key on a Method (p. 298)
- Create an API Key (p. 299)
- Import API Keys (p. 300)

### Require API Key on a Method

The following procedure describes how to configure an API method to require an API key.

**To configure an API method to require an API key**

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the API Gateway console at [https://console.aws.amazon.com/apigateway/](https://console.aws.amazon.com/apigateway/).
2. In the API Gateway main navigation pane, choose Resources.
3. Under Resources, create a new method or choose an existing one.
4. Choose **Method Request**.

5. Under the **Authorization Settings** section, choose **true** for **API Key Required**.

6. Select the checkmark icon to save the settings.

7. Deploy or redeploy the API for the requirement to take effect.

   If the **API Key Required** option is set to **false** and you don’t execute the previous steps, any API key that’s associated with an API stage isn’t used for the method.

**Create an API Key**

If you've already created or imported API keys for use with usage plans, you can skip this and the next procedure.

**To create an API key**

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the API Gateway console at [https://console.aws.amazon.com/apigateway/](https://console.aws.amazon.com/apigateway/).

2. In the API Gateway main navigation pane, choose **API Keys**.

3. From the **Actions** drop-down menu, choose **Create API Key**.

4. In **Create API Key**, do the following:
a. Type an API key name (for example, **MyFirstKey**) in the **Name** input field.
b. Choose **Auto Generate** to have API Gateway generate the key value, or choose **Custom** to enter the key manually.
c. Choose **Save**.

5. Repeat the preceding steps to create more API keys, if needed.

**Import API Keys**

The following procedure describes how to import API keys to use with usage plans.

**To import API keys**

1. In the main navigation pane, choose **API Keys**.
2. From the **Actions** drop-down menu, choose **Import API keys**.
3. To load a comma-separated key file, choose **Select CSV File**. You can also type the keys manually. For information about the file format, see [API Gateway API Key File Format](#) (p. 308).
4. Choose **Fail on warnings** to stop the import when there's an error, or choose **Ignore warnings** to continue to import valid key entries when there's an error.

5. To start importing the selected API keys, choose **Import**.

Now that you've set up the API key, you can proceed to create and use a usage plan (p. 301).

### Create, Configure, and Test Usage Plans with the API Gateway Console

Before creating a usage plan, make sure that you've set up the desired API keys. For more information, see Set Up API Keys Using the API Gateway Console (p. 298).

This section describes how to create and use a usage plan by using the API Gateway console.

**Topics**
- Migrate to Default Usage Plans (p. 301)
- Create Usage Plans (p. 302)
- Test a Usage Plan (p. 304)
- Maintain Plan Usage (p. 304)

### Migrate to Default Usage Plans

If you start to use API Gateway after the Usage Plans feature was rolled out on August 11, 2016, you will automatically have usage plans enabled for you in all supported regions.

If you started to use API Gateway before then, you're prompted with the **Enable Usage Plans** option before using **Usage Plans** for the first time in the selected region. When you enable this option, you...
have default usage plans created for every unique API stage that's associated with existing API keys. In the default usage plan, no throttle and quota limits are set initially, existing API keys are converted to a collection of UsagePlanKey resources, and existing API keys are converted to API stage IDs. The API behaves the same as before. However, you must use the UsagePlan apiStages property to associate specified API stage values (apiId and stage) with included API keys (via UsagePlanKey), instead of using the ApiKey stageKeys property.

Create Usage Plans

The following procedure describes how to create a usage plan.

To create a usage plan

1. In the Amazon API Gateway main navigation pane, choose Usage Plans, and then choose Create.
2. Under Create Usage Plan, do the following:
   a. For Name, type a name for your plan (for example, Plan_A).
   b. For Description, type a description for your plan.
   c. Select Enable throttling, and set Rate (for example, 100) and Burst (for example, 200).
   d. Choose Enable quota, and set its limit (for example, 5000) for a selected time interval (for example, Month).
   e. Choose Save.
3. To add a stage to the plan, do the following in the Associated API Stages pane:
   a. Choose Add API Stage.
   b. Choose an API (for example, PetStore) from the API drop-down list.
   c. Choose a stage (for example, Stage_1) from the Stage drop-down list.
   d. Choose the checkmark icon to save.
   e. Choose Next.
4. To add a key to the plan, do the following in the **Usage Plan API Keys** pane:
   
   a. To use an existing key, choose **Add API Key to Usage Plan**.
   b. For **Name**, type a name for the key you want to add (for example, **MyFirstKey**).
   c. Choose the checkmark icon to save.
   d. As needed, repeat the preceding steps to add other existing API keys to this usage plan.

5. To finish creating the usage plan, choose **Done**.
6. If you want to add more API stages to the usage plan, choose Add API Stage to repeat the preceding steps.

Test a Usage Plan

To test the usage plan, you can use an AWS SDK, AWS CLI, or a REST API client like Postman. For an example of using Postman to test the usage plan, see Test Usage Plans (p. 307).

Maintain Plan Usage

Maintaining a usage plan involves monitoring the used and remaining quotas over a given time period and extending the remaining quotas by a specified amount. The following procedures describe how to monitor and extend quotas.

To monitor used and remaining quotas

1. In the API Gateway main navigation pane, choose Usage Plans.
2. Choose a usage plan from the list of the usage plans in the secondary navigation pane in the middle.
3. From within the specified plan, choose API Keys.
4. Choose an API key, and then choose Usage to view Subscriber’s Traffic from the plan you’re monitoring.
5. Optionally, choose Export, choose a From date and a To date, choose JSON or CSV for the exported data format, and then choose Export.

The following example shows an exported file.

```
{
  "thisPeriod": {
    "px1KW6...qBazOJH": [
      [0, 5000],
      [0, 5000],
      [0, 10]
    ],
    "startDate": "2016-08-01",
    "endDate": "2016-08-03"
  }
}
```

The usage data in the example shows the daily usage data for an API client, as identified by the API key (px1KW6...qBazOJH), between August 1, 2016 and August 3, 2016. Each daily usage data shows used and remaining quotas. In this example, the subscriber hasn’t used any allotted quotas yet, and the API owner or administrator has reduced the remaining quota from 5000 to 10 on the third day.

To extend the remaining quotas

1. Repeat steps 1–3 of the previous procedure.
2. On the usage plan page, choose Extension from the usage plan window.
3. Type a number for the Remaining request quotas.
4. Choose Save.

Set Up API Keys Using the API Gateway REST API

To set up API keys, do the following:

- Configure API methods to require an API key.
- Create or import an API key for the API in a region.

Before setting up API keys, you must have created an API and deployed it to a stage.

For the REST API calls to create and deploy an API, see restapi:create and deployment:create, respectively.

Topics
- Require an API Key on a Method (p. 305)
- Create or Import API Keys (p. 305)

Require an API Key on a Method

To require an API key on a method, do one of the following:

- Call method:put to create a method. Set apiKeyRequired to true in the request payload.
- Call method:update to set apiKeyRequired to true.

Create or Import API Keys

To create or import an API key, do one of the following:

- Call apikey:create to create an API key.
- Call apikey:import to import an API key from a file. For the file format, see API Gateway API Key File Format (p. 308).

With the API key created, you can now proceed to Create, Configure, and Test Usage Plans Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 305).

Create, Configure, and Test Usage Plans Using the API Gateway REST API

Before configuring a usage plan, you must have already done the following: set up methods of a selected API to require API keys, deployed or redeployed the API to a stage, and created or imported one or more API keys. For more information, see Set Up API Keys Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 305).

To configure a usage plan by using the API Gateway REST API, use the following instructions, assuming that you’ve already created the APIs to be added to the usage plan.

Topics
Migrate to Default Usage Plans

When creating a usage plan the first time, you can migrate existing API stages that are associated with selected API keys to a usage plan by calling `account:update` with the following body:

```
{
    "patchOperations" : [ { 
        "op" : "add",
        "path" : "/features",
        "value" : "UsagePlans"
    } ]
}
```

For more information about migrating API stages associated with API keys, see Migrate to Default Usage Plans in the API Gateway Console (p. 301).

Create a Usage Plan

The following procedure describes how to create a usage plan.

**To create a usage plan with the REST API**

1. Call `usageplan:create` to create a usage plan. In the payload, specify the name and description of the plan, associated API stages, rate limits, and quotas.

   Make note of the resultant usage plan identifier. You need it in the next step.

2. Do one of the following:

   a. Call `usageplankey:create` to add an API key to the usage plan. Specify `keyId` and `keyType` in the payload.

      To add more API keys to the usage plan, repeat the previous call, one API key at a time.

   b. Call `apikey:import` to add one or more API keys directly to the specified usage plan. The request payload should contain API key values, the associated usage plan identifier, the Boolean flags to indicate that the keys are enabled for the usage plan, and, possibly, the API key names and descriptions.

   The following example of the `apikey:import` request adds three API keys (as identified by key, name, and description) to one usage plan (as identified by `usageplanIds`):

```
POST /apikeys?mode=import&format=csv&failonwarnings=false HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: text/csv
Authorization: ...

key,name, description, enabled, usageplanIds
abcdef1234ghijklmnop9012345678, importedKey_1, firstone, true, n371pt
abcdef1234ghijklmnop90123455789, importedKey_2, secondone, true, n371pt
abcdef1234ghijklmnop9012345678, importedKey_3, , true, n371pt
```

As a result, three UsagePlanKey resources are created and added to the UsagePlan.
You can also add API keys to more than one usage plan this way. To do this, change each usageplanIds column value to a comma-separated string that contains the selected usage plan identifiers, and is enclosed within a pair of quotes ("n371pt,m282qa" or 'n371pt,m282qa').

Manage a Usage Plan

The following procedure describes how to manage a usage plan.

To manage a usage plan with the REST API

1. Call usageplan:by-id to get a usage plan of a given plan ID. To see the available usage plans, call apigateway:usage-plans.
2. Call usageplan:update to add a new API stage to the plan, replace an existing API stage in the plan, remove an API stage from the plan, or modify the rate limits or quotas.
3. Call usage:get to query the usage data in a specified time interval.
4. Call usage:update to grant an extension to the current usage in a usage plan.

Test Usage Plans

As an example, let's use the PetStore API, which was created in Build an API Gateway API from an Example (p. 9). Assume that the API is configured to use an API key of Hiorr45VR...c4GJc. The following steps describe how to test a usage plan.

To test your usage plan

- Make a GET request on the Pets resource (/pets), with the ?type=...&page=... query parameters, of the API (for example, xbvx1pijch) in a usage plan:

```
GET /testStage/pets?type=dog&page=1 HTTP/1.1
x-api-key: Hiorr45VR...c4GJc
Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded
Host: xbvx1pijch.execute-api.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com
X-Amz-Date: 20160803T001845Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={access_key_ID}/20160803/ap-southeast-1/execute-api/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date;x-api-key,
Signature={sigv4_hash}
```

Note

You must submit this request to the execute-api component of API Gateway and provide the required API key (for example, Hiorr45VR...c4GJc) in the required x-api-key header.

The successful response returns a 200 OK status code and a payload that contains the requested results from the backend. If you forget to set the x-api-key header or set it with an incorrect key, you get a 403 Forbidden response. However, if you didn't configure the method to require an API key, you will likely get a 200 OK response whether you set the x-api-key header correctly or not, and the throttle and quota limits of the usage plan are bypassed.

Occasionally, when an internal error occurs where API Gateway is unable to enforce usage plan throttling limits or quotas for the request, API Gateway serves the request without applying the throttling limits or quotas as specified in the usage plan. But, it logs an error message of Usage Plan check failed due to an internal error in your CloudWatch logs. You can ignore such occasional errors.
API Gateway API Key File Format

API Gateway can import API keys from external files of a comma-separated value (CSV) format, and then associate the imported keys with one or more usage plans. The imported file must contain the Name and Key columns. The column header names aren't case sensitive, and columns can be in any order, as shown in the following example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apikey1234abcdefghij0123456789</td>
<td>MyFirstApiKey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Key value must be between 30 and 128 characters.

An API key file can also have the Description, Enabled, or UsagePlanIds column, as shown in the following example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name, key, description, Enabled, usageplanIds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MyFirstApiKey, apikey1234abcdefghij0123456789</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a key is associated with more than one usage plan, the UsagePlanIds value is a comma-separated string of the usage plan IDs, enclosed with a pair of double or single quotes, as shown in the following example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enabled, Name, key, UsageplanIds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>true, MyFirstApiKey, apikey1234abcdefghij0123456789, &quot;c7y23b, glvrsr&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unrecognized columns are permitted, but are ignored. The default value is an empty string or a true Boolean value.

The same API key can be imported multiple times, with the most recent version overwriting the previous one. Two API keys are identical if they have the same key value.
Documenting an API Gateway API

To help customers understand and use your API, you should document the API. To help you document your API, API Gateway lets you add and update the help content for individual API entities as an integral part of your API development process. API Gateway stores the source content and enables you to archive different versions of the documentation. You can associate a documentation version with an API stage, export a stage-specific documentation snapshot to an external Swagger file, and distribute the file as a publication of the documentation.

To document your API, you can call the API Gateway REST API, use one of the AWS SDKs or AWS CLI for API Gateway, or use the API Gateway console. In addition, you can import or export the documentation parts defined in an external Swagger file. Before explaining how to document your API, we'll show how API documentation is represented in API Gateway.

Topics
- Representation of API Documentation in API Gateway (p. 309)
- Document an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 317)
- Document an API Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 325)
- Publish API Documentation (p. 340)
- Import API Documentation (p. 346)
- Control Access to API Documentation (p. 348)

Representation of API Documentation in API Gateway

API Gateway API documentation consists of individual documentation parts associated with specific API entities that include API, resource, method, request, response, message parameters (i.e., path, query, header), as well as authorizers and models.

In API Gateway, a documentation part is represented by a DocumentationPart resource. The API documentation as a whole is represented by the DocumentationParts collection.

Documenting an API involves creating DocumentationPart instances, adding them to the DocumentationParts collection, and maintaining versions of the documentation parts as your API evolves.

Topics
- Documentation Parts (p. 309)
- Documentation Versions (p. 316)

Documentation Parts

A DocumentationPart resource is a JSON object that stores the documentation content applicable to an individual API entity. Its properties field contains the documentation content as a map of key-value pairs. Its location property identifies the associated API entity.
The shape of a content map is determined by you, the API developer. The value of a key-value pair can be a string, number, boolean, object, or array. The shape of the location object depends on the targeted entity type.

The DocumentationPart resource supports content inheritance: the documentation content of an API entity is applicable to children of that API entity. For more information about the definition of child entities and content inheritance, see Inherit Content from an API Entity of More General Specification (p. 311).

**Location of a Documentation Part**

The location property of a DocumentationPart instance identifies an API entity to which the associated content applies. The API entity can be an API Gateway REST API resource, such as RestApi, Resource, Method, MethodResponse, Authorizer, or Model. The entity can also be a message parameter, such as a URL path parameter, a query string parameter, a request or response header parameter, a request or response body, or response status code.

To specify an API entity, set the type attribute of the location object to be one of API, AUTHORIZER, MODEL, RESOURCE, METHOD, PATH_PARAMETER, QUERY_PARAMETER, REQUEST_HEADER, REQUEST_BODY, RESPONSE, RESPONSE_HEADER, or RESPONSE_BODY.

Depending on the type of an API entity, you might specify other location attributes, including method, name, path, and statusCode. Not all of these attributes are valid for a given API entity. For example, type, path, name, and statusCode are valid attributes of the RESPONSE entity; only type and path are valid location attributes of the RESOURCE entity. It is an error to include an invalid field in the location of a DocumentationPart for a given API entity.

Not all valid location fields are required. For example, type is both the valid and required location field of all API entities. However, method, path, and statusCode are valid but not required attributes for the RESPONSE entity. When not explicitly specified, a valid location field assumes its default value. The default path value is /, i.e., the root resource of an API. The default value of method, or statusCode is *, meaning any method, or status code values, respectively.

**Content of a Documentation Part**

The properties value is encoded as a JSON string. The properties value contains any information you choose to meet your documentation requirements. For example, the following is a valid content map:

```json
{
  "info": {
    "description": "My first API with Amazon API Gateway."
  },
  "x-custom-info": "My custom info, recognized by Swagger.",
  "my-info": "My custom info not recognized by Swagger."
}
```

To set it as a value of properties using the API Gateway REST API, encode this object as a JSON string:

```json
"{"\n  "info": {\n    "description": "My first API with Amazon API Gateway."
  }, ...
"\n}"
```

Although API Gateway accepts any valid JSON string as the content map, the content attributes are treated as two categories: those that can be recognized by Swagger and those that cannot. In the preceding example, info, description, and x-custom-info are recognized by Swagger as a standard Swagger object, property, or extension. In contrast, my-info is not compliant with the
Swagger specification. API Gateway propagates Swagger-compliant content attributes into the API entity definitions from the associated DocumentationPart instances. API Gateway does not propagate the non-compliant content attributes into the API entity definitions.

As another example, here is DocumentationPart targeted for a Resource entity:

```json
{
    "location": {
        "type": "RESOURCE",
        "path": "/pets"
    },
    "properties": {
        "summary": "The /pets resource represents a collection of pets in PetStore."
    }
}
```

Here, both type and path are valid fields to identify the target of the RESOURCE type. For the root resource (/), you can omit the path field.

```json
{
    "location": {
        "type": "RESOURCE"
    },
    "properties": {
        "description": "The root resource with the default path specification."
    }
}
```

This is the same as the following DocumentationPart instance:

```json
{
    "location": {
        "type": "RESOURCE",
        "path": "/"
    },
    "properties": {
        "description": "The root resource with an explicit path specification"
    }
}
```

Inherit Content from an API Entity of More General Specifications

The default value of an optional location field provides a patterned description of an API entity. Using the default value in the location object, you can add a general description in the properties map to a DocumentationPart instance with this type of location pattern. API Gateway extracts the applicable Swagger documentation attributes from the DocumentationPart of the generic API entity and injects them into a specific API entity with the location fields matching the general location pattern, or matching the exact value, unless the specific entity already has a DocumentationPart instance associated with it. This behavior is also known as content inheritance from an API entity of more general specifications.

Content inheritance does not apply to API entities of the API, AUTHORIZER, METHOD, MODEL, REQUEST_BODY or RESOURCE type.

When an API entity matches more than one DocumentationPart's location pattern, the entity will inherit the documentation part with the location fields of the highest precedence and specificities. The
order of precedence is \texttt{path} > \texttt{statusCode}. For matching with the \texttt{path} field, API Gateway chooses the entity with the most specific path value. The following table shows this with a few examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>path</th>
<th>statusCode</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>/pets</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>Documentation associated with this location pattern will be inherited by entities matching the location pattern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>/pets</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>Documentation associated with this location pattern when both Case 1 and Case 2 are matched, because Case 2 is more specific than Case 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>/pets/petId</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>Documentation associated with this location pattern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>path</td>
<td>statusCode</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Remarks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pattern will be inherited by entities matching the location pattern when Cases 1, 2, and 3 are matched, because Case 3 has a higher precedence than Case 2 and is more specific than Case 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here is another example to contrast a more generic `DocumentationPart` instance to a more specific one. The following general error message of "Invalid request error" is injected into the Swagger definitions of the 400 error responses, unless overridden.

```json
{
  "location": {
    "type": "RESPONSE",
    "statusCode": "400"
  },
  "properties": {
    "description": "Invalid request error."
  }
}
```

With the following overwrite, the 400 responses to any methods on the `/pets` resource has a description of "Invalid petId specified" instead.

```json
{
  "location": {
    "type": "RESPONSE",
    "path": "/pets",
    "statusCode": "400"
  },
  "properties": {
```

313
"description": "Invalid petId specified."
}

## Valid Location Fields of `DocumentationPart`

The following table shows the valid and required fields as well as applicable default values of a `DocumentationPart` resource that is associated with a given type of API entities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API entity</th>
<th>Valid location fields</th>
<th>Required location fields</th>
<th>Default field values</th>
<th>Inheritable Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| API             | {
|                 |   "location": {
|                 |     "type": "API"
|                 |   },
|                 |   ...
|                 | }                                                                                     | type                     | N/A                                                        | No                  |
| Resource        | {
|                 |   "location": {
|                 |     "type": "RESOURCE",
|                 |     "path": "resource_path"
|                 |   },
|                 |   ...
|                 | }                                                                                     | type                     | The default value of path is /.                           | No                  |
| Method          | {
|                 |   "location": {
|                 |     "type": "METHOD",
|                 |     "path": "resource_path",
|                 |     "method": "http_verb"
|                 |   },
|                 |   ...
|                 | }                                                                                     | type                     | The default values of path and method are / and *, respectively. | Yes, matching path by prefix and matching method of any values. |
| Query parameter | {
|                 |   "location": {
|                 |     "type": "QUERY_PARAMETER",
|                 |     "path": "resource_path",
|                 |     "method": "HTTP_verb",
|                 |     "name": "query_parameter_name"
|                 |   },
|                 |   ...
|                 | }                                                                                     | type                     | The default values of path and method are / and *, respectively. | Yes, matching path by prefix and matching method by exact values. |
| Request body    | {
|                 |   "location": {
|                 |     "type": "REQUEST_BODY",
|                 |   }                                                                                   | type                     | The default values of path, and method are / and *, respectively. | Yes, matching path by prefix, and matching |

314
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API entity</th>
<th>Valid location fields</th>
<th>Required location fields</th>
<th>Default field values</th>
<th>Inheritable Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Request path parameter</td>
<td>{ &quot;location&quot;: { &quot;type&quot;: &quot;PATH_PARAMETER&quot;, &quot;path&quot;: &quot;resource/ {path_parameter_name}&quot; }, &quot;method&quot;: &quot;HTTP_verb&quot;, &quot;name&quot;: &quot;path_parameter_name&quot; }, ... }</td>
<td>type, name</td>
<td>The default values of path and method are / and *, respectively.</td>
<td>Yes, matching path by prefix and matching method by exact values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request header parameter</td>
<td>{ &quot;location&quot;: { &quot;type&quot;: &quot;REQUEST_HEADER&quot;, &quot;path&quot;: &quot;resource_path&quot;, &quot;method&quot;: &quot;HTTP_verb&quot;, &quot;name&quot;: &quot;header_name&quot; }, ... }</td>
<td>type, name</td>
<td>The default values of path and method are / and *, respectively.</td>
<td>Yes, matching path by prefix and matching method by exact values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response</td>
<td>{ &quot;location&quot;: { &quot;type&quot;: &quot;RESPONSE&quot;, &quot;path&quot;: &quot;resource_path&quot;, &quot;method&quot;: &quot;HTTP_verb&quot;, &quot;status_code&quot;:&quot;status_code&quot; }, ... }</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>The default values of path, method, and status code are /, * and *, respectively.</td>
<td>Yes, matching path by prefix and matching method and status code by exact values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### API entity | Valid location fields | Required location fields | Default field values | Inheritable Content |
---|---|---|---|---|
Response header | `{  "location": {    "type": "RESPONSE_HEADER",    "path": "resource_path",    "method": "http_verb",    "statusCode": "status_code",    "name": "header_name"  },  ...}` | type, name | The default values of path, method and statusCode are /* and *, respectively. | Yes, matching path by prefix and matching method, and statusCode by exact values. |
Response body | `{  "location": {    "type": "RESPONSE_BODY",    "path": "resource_path",    "method": "http_verb",    "statusCode": "status_code"  },  ...}` | type | The default values of path, method and statusCode are /* and *, respectively. | Yes, matching path by prefix and matching method, and statusCode by exact values. |
Authorizer | `{  "location": {    "type": "AUTHORIZER",    "name": "authorizer_name"  },  ...}` | type | N/A | No |
Model | `{  "location": {    "type": "MODEL",    "name": "model_name"  },  ...}` | type | N/A | No |

### Documentation Versions

A documentation version is a snapshot of the DocumentationParts collection of an API and is tagged with a version identifier. Publishing the documentation of an API involves creating a documentation version, associating it with an API stage, and exporting that stage-specific version of the API.
documentation to an external Swagger file. In API Gateway, a documentation snapshot is represented as a DocumentationVersion resource.

As you update an API, you create new versions of the API. In API Gateway, you maintain all the documentation versions using the DocumentationVersions collection.

**Document an API Using the API Gateway Console**

In this section, we describe how to create and maintain documentation parts of an API using the API Gateway console.

A prerequisite for creating and editing the documentation of an API is that you must have already created the API. In this section, we use the PetStore API as an example. To create an API using the API Gateway console, follow the instructions in Build an API Gateway API from an Example (p. 9).

**Topics**

- Document the API Entity (p. 317)
- Document a RESOURCE Entity (p. 320)
- Document a METHOD Entity (p. 320)
- Document a QUERY_PARAMETER Entity (p. 321)
- Document a PATH_PARAMETER Entity (p. 322)
- Document a REQUEST_HEADER Entity (p. 322)
- Document a REQUEST_BODY Entity (p. 323)
- Document a RESPONSE Entity (p. 323)
- Document a RESPONSE_HEADER Entity (p. 323)
- Document a RESPONSE_BODY Entity (p. 324)
- Document a MODEL Entity (p. 324)
- Document an AUTHORIZER Entity (p. 325)

**Document the API Entity**

To add a documentation part for the API entity, choose Resources from the PetStore API. Choose the Actions → Edit API Documentation menu item.
If a documentation part was not created for the API, you get the documentation part's properties map editor. Type the following properties map in the text editor and then choose Save to create the documentation part.

```json
{
    "info": {
        "description": "Your first API Gateway API."
    },
    "contact": {
        "name": "John Doe",
        "email": "john.doe@api.com"
    }
}
```

**Note**

You do not encode the properties map into a JSON string, as you must do when using the API Gateway REST API. The API Gateway console stringifies the JSON object for you.
Provide your API documentation in JSON format in the form below.

```
{
  "info": {
    "description": "Your first API Gateway API.",
    "contact": {
      "name": "John Doe",
      "email": "john.doe@api.com"
    }
  }
}
```

If a documentation part has already been created, you first get the `properties` map viewer, as shown in the following.
Choosing **Edit** brings up the properties map editor as shown previously.

### Document a RESOURCE Entity

To add or edit the documentation part for the API's root resource, choose `/` under the Resource tree, and then choose the **Actions** → **Edit Resource Documentation** menu item.

If no documentation part was created for this entity, you get the **Documentation** window. Type a valid properties map in the editor. Then choose **Save** and **Close**.

```json
{
  "description": "The PetStore's root resource."
}
```

If a documentation part has already been defined for the RESOURCE entity, you get the documentation viewer. Choose **Edit** to open the **Documentation** editor. Modify the existing properties map. Choose **Save** and then choose **Close**.

If necessary, repeat these steps to add a documentation part to other RESOURCE entities.

### Document a METHOD Entity

To add or edit documentation for a METHOD entity, using the GET method on the root resource as an example, choose **GET** under the `/` resource and the choose the **Actions** → **Edit Method Documentation** menu item.
For the new documentation part, type the following properties map in the Documentation editor in the Documentation window. Then choose Save and Close.

```json
{
  "tags" : [ "pets" ],
  "description" : "PetStore HTML web page containing API usage information"
}
```

For the existing documentation, choose Edit from the Documentation viewer. Edit the documentation content in the Documentation editor and choose Save. Choose Close.

From the Documentation viewer, you can also delete the documentation part.

If necessary, repeat these steps to add a documentation part to other methods.

## Document a QUERY_PARAMETER Entity

To add or edit a documentation part for a request query parameter, using the GET /pets? type=...&page=... method as an example, choose GET under /pets from the Resources tree. Choose Method Request in the Method Execution window. Expand the URL Query String Parameters section. Choose the page query parameter, for example, and choose the book icon to open the Documentation viewer or editor.

Alternatively, you can choose Documentation under the PetStore API from the main navigation pane. Then choose Query Parameter for Type. For the PetStore example API, this shows the documentation parts for the page and type query parameters.
For an API with query parameters defined for other methods, you can filter your selection by specifying the path of the affected resource for Path, choosing the desired HTTP method from Method, or typing the query parameter name in Name.

For example, choose the page query parameter. Choose Edit to modify the existing documentation. Choose Save to save the change.

To add a new documentation part for a QUERY_PARAMETER entity, choose Create Documentation Part. Choose Query Parameter for Type. Type a resource path (e.g., /pets) in Path. Choose an HTTP verb (e.g., GET) for Method. Type a properties description in the text editor. Then choose Save.

If necessary, repeat these steps to add a documentation part to other request query parameters.

**Document a PATH_PARAMETER Entity**

To add or edit documentation for a path parameter, go to Method Request of the method on the resource specified by the path parameter. Expand the Request Paths section. Choose the book icon for the path parameter to open the Documentation viewer or editor. Add or modify the properties of the documentation part.

Alternatively, choose Documentation under the PetStore API from the main navigation pane. Choose Path Parameter for Type. Choose Edit on a path parameter from the list. Modify the content and then choose Save.

To add documentation for a path parameter not listed, choose Create Documentation Part. Choose Path Parameter for Type. Set a resource path in Path, choose a method from Method, and set a path parameter name in Name. Add the documentation's properties and choose Save.

If required, repeat these steps to add or edit a documentation part to other path parameters.

**Document a REQUEST_HEADER Entity**

To add or edit documentation for a request header, go to Method Request of the method with the header parameter. Expand the HTTP Request Headers section. Choose the book icon for the header to open the Documentation viewer or editor. Add or modify the properties of the documentation part.

Alternatively, choose Documentation under the API from the main navigation pane. Then choose Request Header for Type. Choose Edit on a listed request header to change the documentation. To
add documentation for an unlisted request header, choose Create Documentation Part. Choose Request Header for Type. Specify a resource path in Path. Choose a method for Method. Type a header name in Name. Then add and save a properties map.

If required, repeat these steps to add or edit a documentation part to other request headers.

**Document a REQUEST_BODY Entity**

To add or edit documentation for a request body, go to Method Request for a method. Choose the book icon for Request Body to open the Documentation viewer and then editor. Add or modify the properties of the documentation part.

Alternatively, choose Documentation under the API from the main navigation pane. Then choose Request Body for Type. Choose Edit on a listed request body to change the documentation. To add documentation for an unlisted request body, choose Create Documentation Part. Choose Request Body for Type. Set a resource path in Path. Choose an HTTP verb for Method. Then add and save a properties map.

If required, repeat these steps to add or edit a documentation part to other request bodies.

**Document a RESPONSE Entity**

To add or edit documentation for a response, go to Method Response of a method. Choose the book icon for Method Response to open the Documentation viewer and then editor. Add or modify the properties of the documentation part.

Alternatively, choose Documentation under the API from the main navigation pane. Then choose Response (status code) for Type. Choose Edit on a listed response of a specified HTTP status code to change the documentation. To add documentation for an unlisted response body, choose Create Documentation Part. Choose Response (status code) for Type. Set a resource path in Path. Choose an HTTP verb for Method. Type an HTTP status code in Status Code. Then add and save the documentation part properties.

If required, repeat these steps to add or edit a documentation part to other responses.

**Document a RESPONSE_HEADER Entity**

To add or edit documentation for a response header, go to Method Response of a method. Expand a response section of a given HTTP status. Choose the book icon for a response header under Response Headers for StatusCode to open the Documentation viewer and then editor. Add or modify the properties of the documentation part.

Alternatively, choose Documentation under the API from the main navigation pane. Then choose Response Header for Type. Choose Edit on a listed response header to change the documentation. To add documentation for an unlisted response header, choose Create Documentation Part. Choose
**Response Header** for **Type**. Set a resource path in **Path**. Choose an HTTP verb for **Method**. Type an HTTP status code in **Status Code**. Type the response header name in **Name**. Then add and save the documentation part properties.

If required, repeat these steps to add or edit a documentation part to other response headers.

### Document a RESPONSE_BODY Entity

To add or edit documentation for a response body, go to **Method Response** of a method. Expand the response section of a given HTTP status. Choose the book icon for **Response Body for StatusCode** to open the **Documentation** viewer and then editor. Add or modify the properties of the documentation part.

Alternatively, choose **Documentation** under the API from the main navigation pane. Then choose **Response Body for Type**. Choose **Edit** on a listed response body to change the documentation. To add documentation for an unlisted response body, choose **Create Documentation Part**. Choose **Response Body for Type**. Set a resource path in **Path**. Choose an HTTP verb for **Method**. Type an HTTP status code in **Status Code**. Then add and save the documentation part properties.

If required, repeat these steps to add or edit a documentation part to other response bodies.

### Document a MODEL Entity

Documenting a **MODEL** entity involves creating and managing DocumentPart instances for the model and each of the model's properties. For example, for the **Error** model that comes with every API by default has the following schema definition,

```json
{
    "$schema" : "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
    "title" : "Error Schema",
    "type" : "object",
    "properties" : {
        "message" : { "type" : "string" }
    }
}
```

and requires two DocumentPart instances, one for the **Model** and the other for its **message** property:

```json
{
    "location": { 
        "type": "MODEL",
        "name": "Error"
    },
    "properties": {
        "title": "Error Schema",
        "description": "A description of the Error model"
    }
}
```

and

```json
{
    "location": {
        "type": "MODEL",
        "name": "Error.message"
    },
    "properties": {
```
Document an AUTHORIZER Entity

To add or edit documentation for an authorizer, go to Authorizers for the API in the main navigation pane. Choose the book icon for the listed authorizer to open the Documentation viewer and then editor. Add or modify the properties of the documentation part.

Alternatively, choose Documentation under the API from the main navigation pane. Then choose Authorizer for Type. Choose Edit on a listed authorizer to change the documentation. To add documentation for an unlisted authorizer, choose Create Documentation Part. Choose Authorizer for Type. Give a name to the authorizer in Name. Then add and save the documentation part properties.

If required, repeat these steps to add or edit a documentation part to other authorizers.

Document an API Using the API Gateway REST API

In this section, we describe how to create and maintain documentation parts of an API using the API Gateway REST API.

Before creating and editing the documentation of an API, first create the API. In this section, we use the PetStore API as an example. To create an API using the API Gateway console, follow the instructions in Build an API Gateway API from an Example (p. 9).

Topics
- Document the API Entity (p. 326)
- Document a RESOURCE Entity (p. 327)
- Document a METHOD Entity (p. 329)
- Document a QUERY_PARAMETER Entity (p. 332)
- Document a PATH_PARAMETER Entity (p. 333)
- Document a REQUEST_BODY Entity (p. 333)
- Document a REQUEST_HEADER Entity (p. 334)
Document the API Entity

To add documentation for an API, add a DocumentationPart resource for the API entity:

```plaintext
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation-parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "location": {
    "type": "API"
  },
  "properties": "{|\n    "info": {\n      "description": "Your first API with Amazon API Gateway."
    }
  }"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```plaintext
{
  ...
  "id": "s2e5xf",
  "location": {
    "path": null,
    "method": null,
    "name": null,
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "API"
  },
  "properties": "{|\n    "info": {\n      "description": "Your first API with Amazon API Gateway."
    }
  }"
}
```

If the documentation part has already been added, a 409 Conflict response returns, containing the error message of Documentation part already exists for the specified location: type 'API'. In this case, you must call the documentationpart: update operation.

```plaintext
PATCH /restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation-parts/part_id HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "patchOperations" : [
    {
```
"op" : "replace",
"path" : "/properties",
"value" : "{\n	"info" : {\n		"description" : "Your first API with Amazon API Gateway.\n\n"}
\} ]
}

The successful response returns a 200 OK status code with the payload containing the updated DocumentationPart instance in the payload.

Document a RESOURCE Entity

To add documentation for the root resource of an API, add a DocumentationPart resource targeted for the corresponding Resource resource:

```plaintext
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "location" : {
    "type" : "RESOURCE",
  },
  "properties" : "{\n    "description" : "The PetStore root resource.\n  }"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```json
{
  "_links": {
    "curies": {
      "name": "documentationpart",
      "templated": true
    },
    "self": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/p76vqo"
    },
    "documentationpart:delete": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/p76vqo"
    },
    "documentationpart:update": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/p76vqo"
    }
  },
  "id": "p76vqo",
  "location": {
    "path": "/",
    "method": null,
    "name": null,
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "RESOURCE"
  },
  "properties": "{\n    "description" : "The PetStore root resource.\n  }"
}
```
When the resource path is not specified, the resource is assumed to be the root resource. You can add "path": "/" to properties to make the specification explicit.

To create documentation for a child resource of an API, add a DocumentationPart resource targeted for the corresponding Resource resource:

```json

POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "location": {
    "type": "RESOURCE",
    "path": "/pets"
  },
  "properties": "\n  "A child resource under the root of PetStore."
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```json

{
  "_links": {
    "curies": {
      "name": "documentationpart",
      "templated": true
    },
    "self": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/qcht86"
    },
    "documentationpart:delete": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/qcht86"
    },
    "documentationpart:update": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/qcht86"
    }
  },
  "id": "qcht86",
  "location": {
    "path": "/pets",
    "method": null,
    "name": null,
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "RESOURCE"
  },
  "properties": "\n  "A child resource under the root of PetStore."
}
```

To add documentation for a child resource specified by a path parameter, add a DocumentationPart resource targeted for the Resource resource:

```json

POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ

```
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
    "location": {
        "type": "RESOURCE",
        "path": "/pets/{petId}"
    },
    "properties": "(\n        "description": "A child resource specified by the petId path parameter.\n    )"
}

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

{
    "_links": {
        "curies": {
            "name": "documentationpart",
            "templated": true
        },
        "self": {
            "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/k6fpwb"
        },
        "documentationpart:delete": {
            "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/k6fpwb"
        },
        "documentationpart:update": {
            "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/k6fpwb"
        }
    },
    "id": "k6fpwb",
    "location": {
        "path": "/pets/{petId}"
    },
    "method": null,
    "name": null,
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "RESOURCE"
},
    "properties": "(\n        "description": "A child resource specified by the petId path parameter.\n    )"
}

Note
The DocumentationPart instance of a RESOURCE entity cannot be inherited by any of its child resources.

Document a METHOD Entity

To add documentation for a method of an API, add a DocumentationPart resource targeted for the corresponding Method resource:

POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret
If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```json
{
  "_links": {
    "curies": {
      "name": "documentationpart",
      "templated": true
    },
    "self": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    },
    "documentationpart:delete": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    },
    "documentationpart:update": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    }
  },
  "id": "o64jbj",
  "location": {
    "path": "/pets",
    "method": "GET",
    "name": null,
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "METHOD"
  },
  "properties": "\n| summary | List all pets. |
\n"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```json
{
  "_links": {
    "curies": {
      "name": "documentationpart",
      "templated": true
    },
    "self": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    },
    "documentationpart:delete": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    },
    "documentationpart:update": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    }
  },
  "id": "o64jbj",
  "location": {
    "path": "/pets",
    "method": "GET",
    "name": null,
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "METHOD"
  },
  "properties": "\n| summary | List all pets. |
\n"
}
```
"id": "o64jbj",
"location": {
  "path": "/pets",
  "method": "GET",
  "name": null,
  "statusCode": null,
  "type": "METHOD"
},
"properties": "{\n  \"summary\" : \"List all pets.\n\n}"
}

If the `location.method` field is not specified in the preceding request, it is assumed to be ANY method that is represented by a wild card * character.

To update the documentation content of a METHOD entity, call the `documentationpart:update` operation, supplying a new properties map:

PATCH /restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/part_id HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=signature

{
  "patchOperations" : [ {
    "op" : "replace",
    "path" : "/properties",
    "value" : "{\n      \"tags\" : [ \"pets\" ], \n      \"summary\" : \"List all pets.\n    }"
  } ]
}

The successful response returns a 200 OK status code with the payload containing the updated DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```json
{
  "_links": {
    "curies": {
      "name": "documentationpart",
      "templated": true
    },
    "self": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    },
    "documentationpart:delete": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    },
    "documentationpart:update": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/o64jbj"
    }
  },
  "id": "o64jbj",
  "location": {
    "path": "/pets",
    "method": "GET",
    "name": null,
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "METHOD"
  },
  "properties": "{\n    \"tags\" : [ \"pets\" ], \n    \"summary\" : \"List all pets.\n  }"
}
```
Document a QUERY_PARAMETER Entity

To add documentation for a request query parameter, add a DocumentationPart resource targeted for the QUERY_PARAMETER type, with the valid fields of path and name.

```
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDHTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=signature

{
  "location": {
    "type": "QUERY_PARAMETER",
    "path": "/pets",
    "method": "GET",
    "name": "page"
  },
  "properties": "{\n    "description": "Page number of results to return.\"\\n}"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```
{
  "_links": {
    "curies": {
      "name": "documentationpart",
      "templated": true
    },
    "self": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/h9ht5w"
    },
    "documentationpart:delete": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/h9ht5w"
    },
    "documentationpart:update": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/h9ht5w"
    }
  },
  "id": "h9ht5w",
  "location": {
    "path": "/pets",
    "method": "GET",
    "name": "page",
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "QUERY_PARAMETER"
  },
  "properties": "{\n    "description": "Page number of results to return.\"\\n}"
}
```

The documentation part's properties map of a QUERY_PARAMETER entity can be inherited by one of its child QUERY_PARAMETER entities. For example, if you add a treats resource after /pets/{petId}, enable the GET method on /pets/{petId}/treats, and expose the page query parameter, this child query parameter inherits the DocumentationPart's properties map from the like-named query
parameter of the \texttt{GET /pets} method, unless you explicitly add a \texttt{DocumentationPart} resource to the \texttt{page} query parameter of the \texttt{GET /pets/{petId}/treats} method.

### Document a \texttt{PATH\_PARAMETER} Entity

To add documentation for a path parameter, add a \texttt{DocumentationPart} resource for the \texttt{PATH\_PARAMETER} entity.

```
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYMMDD/region/
apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "location": {
    "type": "PATH\_PARAMETER",
    "path": "/pets/{petId}",
    "method": "*",
    "name": "petId"
  },
  "properties": "{\n    "description": "The id of the pet to retrieve.\""
  }"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 201 \texttt{Created} response containing the newly created \texttt{DocumentationPart} instance in the payload. For example:

```
{
  "_links": {
    "curies": {
      "href": "http://docs.aws.amazon.com/apigateway/latest/developerguide/restapi-
documentationpart-{rel}.html",
      "name": "documentationpart",
      "templated": true
    },
    "self": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/ckpgog"
    },
    "documentationpart:delete": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/ckpgog"
      },
    "documentationpart:update": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/ckpgog"
    },
  },
  "id": "ckpgog",
  "location": {
    "path": "/pets/{petId}",
    "method": "*",
    "name": "petId",
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "PATH\_PARAMETER"
  },
  "properties": "{\n  "description": "The id of the pet to retrieve.\"
  }"
}
```

### Document a \texttt{REQUEST\_BODY} Entity

To add documentation for a request body, add a \texttt{DocumentationPart} resource for the request body.
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYMMDDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=Sigv4_secret

{
   "location": {
      "type": "REQUEST_BODY",
      "path": "/pets",
      "method": "POST"
   },
   "properties": "A Pet object to be added to PetStore."
}

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```
{
   "_links": {
      "curies": {
         "name": "documentationpart",
         "templated": true
      },
      "self": {
         "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/kgmfr1"
      },
      "documentationpart:delete": {
         "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/kgmfr1"
      },
      "documentationpart:update": {
         "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/kgmfr1"
      }
   },
   "id": "kgmfr1",
   "location": {
      "path": "/pets",
      "method": "POST",
      "name": null,
      "statusCode": null,
      "type": "REQUEST_BODY"
   },
   "properties": "A Pet object to be added to PetStore."
}
```

Document a REQUEST_HEADER Entity

To add documentation for a request header, add a DocumentationPart resource for the request header.
Document a RESPONSE Entity

To add documentation for a response of a status code, add a DocumentationPart resource targeted for the corresponding MethodResponse resource.

POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

```json
{
  "location": {
    "type": "REQUEST_HEADER",
    "path": "/pets",
    "method": "GET",
    "name": "x-my-token"
  },
  "properties": "A custom token used to authorization the method invocation."
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```json
{
  "_links": {
    "curies": {
      "name": "documentationpart",
      "templated": true
    },
    "self": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/h0m3uf"
    },
    "documentationpart:delete": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/h0m3uf"
    },
    "documentationpart:update": {
      "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/h0m3uf"
    }
  },
  "id": "h0m3uf",
  "location": {
    "path": "/pets",
    "method": "GET",
    "name": "x-my-token",
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "REQUEST_HEADER"
  },
  "properties": "A custom token used to authorization the method invocation."
}
```
If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```
{
    "_links": {
        "self": {
            "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/lattew"
        },
        "documentationpart:delete": {
            "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/lattew"
        },
        "documentationpart:update": {
            "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/lattew"
        }
    },
    "id": "lattew",
    "location": {
        "path": "/",
        "method": "*",
        "name": null,
        "statusCode": "200",
        "type": "RESPONSE"
    },
    "properties": {
        "description": "Successful operation."
    }
}
```

**Document a RESPONSE_HEADER Entity**

To add documentation for a response header, add a DocumentationPart resource for the response header.

```
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTHHmmssZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

"location": {
    "path": "/",
    "method": "GET",
    "name": "Content-Type",
    "statusCode": "200",
    "type": "RESPONSE_HEADER"
},
"properties": {
    "description": "Media type of request"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```
{
    "_links": {
        "curies": {
            "name": "response_header",
            "query": "description",
            "templated": true
        }
    },
    "id": "lattew",
    "location": {
        "path": "/",
        "method": "GET",
        "name": "Content-Type",
        "statusCode": "200",
        "type": "RESPONSE_HEADER"
    },
    "properties": {
        "description": "Media type of request"
    }
}
```
Document an **AUTHORIZER** Entity

To add documentation for an API authorizer, add a DocumentationPart resource targeted for the specified authorizer.

```plaintext
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=signv4_secret

{
    "location" : {
        "type" : "AUTHORIZER",
        "name" : "myAuthorizer"
    },
    "properties": "{"\n        "description": "Authorizes invocations of configured methods."
    }"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a **201 Created** response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

```plaintext
{
    "_links": {
        "curies": {
            "name": "documentationpart",
            "templated": true
        },
    }
}
```

The documentation of this Content-Type response header is the default documentation for the Content-Type headers of any responses of the API.
"self": {
  "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation.parts/pw3qw3",
  "documentationpart:delete": {
    "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation.parts/pw3qw3",
  },
  "documentationpart:update": {
    "href": "/restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation.parts/pw3qw3",
  }},
"id": "pw3qw3",
"location": {
  "path": null,
  "method": null,
  "name": "myAuthorizer",
  "statusCode": null,
  "type": "AUTHORIZER"
},
"properties": "{\"description\": \"Authorizes invocations of configured methods.\"
}

Note
The DocumentationPart instance of an AUTHORIZER entity cannot be inherited by any of its child resources.

Document a MODEL Entity

Documenting a MODEL entity involves creating and managing DocumentPart instances for the model and each of the model's properties. For example, for the Error model that comes with every API by default has the following schema definition,

```json
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "Error Schema",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "message": { "type": "string" }
  }
}
```

and requires two DocumentationPart instances, one for the Model and the other for its message property:

```json
{
  "location": {
    "type": "MODEL",
    "name": "Error"
  },
  "properties": {
    "title": "Error Schema",
    "description": "A description of the Error model"
  }
}
```

and

```json
{
  "location": {
    "type": "MODEL",
  }
```
When the API is exported, the DocumentationPart's properties will override the values in the original schema.

To add documentation for an API model, add a DocumentationPart resource targeted for the specified model.

POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=signv4_secret

{
  "location" : {
    "type" : "MODEL",
    "name" : "Pet"
  },
  "properties": "{\n    \"description\" : \"Data structure of a Pet object.\"\n  }"
}

If successful, the operation returns a 201 Created response containing the newly created DocumentationPart instance in the payload. For example:

{
  "id": "lkn4uq",
  "location": {
    "path": null,
    "method": null,
    "name": "Pet",
    "statusCode": null,
    "type": "MODEL"
  },
  "properties": "{\n    \"description\" : \"Data structure of a Pet object.\"\n  }"
}

Repeat the same step to create a DocumentationPart instance for any of the model's properties.
Note
The DocumentationPart instance of a MODEL entity cannot be inherited by any of its child resources.

Update Documentation Parts

To update the documentation parts of any type of API entities, submit a PATCH request on a DocumentationPart instance of a specified part identifier to replace the existing properties map with a new one.

```
PATCH /restapis/4wk1k4onj3/documentation/parts/part_id HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTTtttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
    "patchOperations" : [ {
        "op" : "replace",
        "path" : "RESOURCE_PATH",
        "value" : "NEW_properties_VALUE_AS_JSON_STRING"
    } ]
}
```

The successful response returns a 200 OK status code with the payload containing the updated DocumentationPart instance in the payload.

You can update multiple documentation parts in a single PATCH request.

List Documentation Parts

To list the documentation parts of any type of API entities, submit a GET request on a DocumentationParts collection.

```
GET /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/parts HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTTtttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

The successful response returns a 200 OK status code with the payload containing the available DocumentationPart instances in the payload.

Publish API Documentation

To publish the documentation for an API, create, update, or get a documentation snapshot, and then associate the documentation snapshot with an API stage. When creating a documentation snapshot, you can also associate it with an API stage at the same time.

Topics
- Create a Documentation Snapshot and Associate it with an API Stage (p. 341)
Create a Documentation Snapshot and Associate it with an API Stage

To create a snapshot of an API's documentation parts and associate it with an API stage at the same time, submit the following POST request:

```plaintext
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/versions HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "documentationVersion": "1.0.0",
  "stageName": "prod",
  "description": "My API Documentation v1.0.0"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 200 OK response, containing the newly created DocumentationVersion instance as the payload.

Alternatively, you can create a documentation snapshot without associating it with an API stage first and then call restapi:update to associate the snapshot with a specified API stage. You can also update or query an existing documentation snapshot and then update its stage association. We show the steps in the next four sections.

Create a Documentation Snapshot

To create a snapshot of an API's documentation parts, create a new DocumentationVersion resource and add it to the DocumentationVersions collection of the API:

```plaintext
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/versions HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "documentationVersion": "1.0.0",
  "description": "My API Documentation v1.0.0"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 200 OK response, containing the newly created DocumentationVersion instance as the payload.

Create a Documentation Snapshot and Associate it with an API Stage

To create a snapshot of an API's documentation parts and associate it with an API stage at the same time, submit the following POST request:

```plaintext
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/versions HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "documentationVersion": "1.0.0",
  "stageName": "prod",
  "description": "My API Documentation v1.0.0"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 200 OK response, containing the newly created DocumentationVersion instance as the payload.

Create a Documentation Snapshot

To create a snapshot of an API's documentation parts, create a new DocumentationVersion resource and add it to the DocumentationVersions collection of the API:

```plaintext
POST /restapis/restapi_id/documentation/versions HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret

{
  "documentationVersion": "1.0.0",
  "description": "My API Documentation v1.0.0"
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 200 OK response, containing the newly created DocumentationVersion instance as the payload.
Update a Documentation Snapshot

You can only update a documentation snapshot by modifying the description property of the corresponding DocumentationVersion resource. The following example shows how to update the description of the documentation snapshot as identified by its version identifier, `version`, e.g., `1.0.0`.

```json
PATCH /restapis/<restapi_id>/documentation/versions/<version> HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret
{
    "patchOperations": [ {
        "op": "replace",
        "path": "/description",
        "value": "My API for testing purposes."
    } ]
}
```

If successful, the operation returns a 200 OK response, containing the updated DocumentationVersion instance as the payload.

Get a Documentation Snapshot

To get a documentation snapshot, submit a GET request against the specified DocumentationVersion resource. The following example shows how to get a documentation snapshot of a given version identifier, `1.0.0`.

```http
GET /restapis/<restapi_id>/documentation/versions/1.0.0 HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret
```

Associate a Documentation Snapshot with an API Stage

To publish the API documentation, associate a documentation snapshot with an API stage. You must have already created an API stage before associating the documentation version with the stage.

To associate a documentation snapshot with an API stage using the API Gateway REST API, call the `stage:update` operation to set the desired documentation version on the `stage.documentationVersion` property:

```http
PATCH /restapis/<RESTAPI_ID>/stages/<STAGE_NAME> HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=sigv4_secret
```
The following procedure describes how to publish a documentation version.

**To publish a documentation version using the API Gateway console**

1. Choose **Documentation** for the API from the main navigation pane in the API Gateway console.
2. Choose **Publish Documentation** in the **Documentation** pane.
3. Set up the publication:
   a. Choose an available name for **Stage**.
   b. Type a version identifier, e.g., 1.0.0, in **Version**.
   c. Optionally, provide a description about the publication in **Description**.
4. Choose **Publish**.

You can now proceed to download the published documentation by exporting the documentation to an external Swagger file.

**Download a Documentation Snapshot Associated with a Stage**

After a version of the documentation parts is associated with a stage, you can export the documentation parts together with the API entity definitions, to an external file, using the API Gateway console, the API Gateway REST API, one of its SDKs, or the AWS CLI for API Gateway. The process is the same as for exporting the API. The exported file format can be JSON or YAML.

Using the API Gateway REST API, you can also explicitly set the `extension=documentation,integrations,authorizers` query parameter to include the API documentation parts, API integrations and authorizers in an API export. By default, documentation parts are included, but integrations and authorizers are excluded, when you export an API. The default output from an API export is suited for distribution of the documentation.

To export the API documentation in an external JSON Swagger file using the API Gateway REST API, submit the following GET request:

```plaintext
GET /restapis/restapi_id/stages/stage_name/exports/swagger?extensions=documentation HTTP/1.1
Accept: application/json
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=signv4_secret
```

Here, the `x-amazon-api-gateway-documentation` object contains the documentation parts and the API entity definitions contains the documentation properties supported by Swagger. The output does not include details of integration or custom authorizers. To include both details, set
extensions=integrations,authorizers,documentation. To include details of integrations but not of authorizers, set extensions=integrations,documentation.

You must set the Accept: application/json header in the request to output the result in a JSON file. To produce the YAML output, change the request header to Accept: application/yaml.

As an example, we will look at an API that exposes a simple GET method on the root resource (/). This API has four API entities defined in a Swagger definition file, one for each of the API, MODEL, METHOD, and RESPONSE types. A documentation part has been added to each of the API, METHOD, and RESPONSE entities. Calling the preceding documentation-exporting command, we get the following output, with the documentation parts listed within the x-amazon-apigateway-documentation object as an extension to a standard Swagger file.

```json
{
    "swagger" : "2.0",
    "info" : {
        "description" : "API info description",
        "title" : "doc",
        "x-bar" : "API info x-bar"
    },
    "host" : "rznap68yi.execute-api.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com",
    "basePath" : "/test",
    "schemes" : [ "https" ],
    "paths" : {
        "/" : {
            "get" : {
                "description" : "Method description."
            },
            "produces" : [ "application/json" ],
            "responses" : {
                "200" : {
                    "description" : "200 response",
                    "schema" : {
                        "$ref" : "#/definitions/Empty"
                    }
                }
            },
            "x-example" : "x- Method example"
        },
        "x-bar" : "resource x-bar"
    },
    "definitions" : {
        "Empty" : {
            "type" : "object",
            "title" : "Empty Schema"
        }
    },
    "x-amazon-apigateway-documentation" : {
        "version" : "1.0.0",
        "createdDate" : "2016-11-22T22:41:40Z",
        "documentationParts" : [ {
            "location" : {
                "type" : "API"
            },
            "properties" : {
                "description" : "API description",
                "foo" : "API foo",
                "x-bar" : "API x-bar",
                "info" : {
                    "description" : "API info description",
                    "version" : "API info version",
                    "foo" : "API info foo",
                    "x-bar" : "API info x-bar"
                }
            }
        }]
    }
}
```

344
For a Swagger-compliant attribute defined in the `properties` map of a documentation part, API Gateway inserts the attribute into the associated API entity definition. An attribute of `x-something` is a standard Swagger extension. This extension gets propagated into the API entity definition. For example, see the `x-example` attribute for the `GET` method. An attribute like `foo` is not part of the Swagger specification and is not injected into its associated API entity definitions.

If a documentation-rendering tool (e.g., Swagger UI) parses the API entity definitions to extract documentation attributes, any non Swagger-compliant `properties` attributes of a `DocumentationPart` instance are not available for the tool. However, if a documentation-rendering tool parses the `x-amazon-apigateway-documentation` object to get content, or if the tool calls `restapi:documentation-parts` and `documentationpart:by-id` to retrieve documentation parts from API Gateway, all the documentation attributes are available for the tool to display.

To export the documentation with API entity definitions containing integration details to a JSON Swagger file, submit the following `GET` request:

```plaintext
GET /restapis/restapi_id/stages/stage_name/exports/swagger?extensions=integrations,documentation HTTP/1.1
Accept: application/json
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDD'T'HHMMSSZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=SIGV4_SECRET
```
To export the documentation with API entity definitions containing details of integrations and authorizers to a YAML Swagger file, submit the following GET request:

```
GET /restapis/restapi_id/stages/stage_name/exports/swagger?
extensions=integrations,authorizers,documentation HTTP/1.1
Accept: application/yaml
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=signv4_secret
```

To use the API Gateway console to export and download the published documentation of an API, follow the instructions in Export API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 395).

## Import API Documentation

As with importing API entity definitions, you can import documentation parts from an external Swagger file into an API in API Gateway. You specify the to-be-imported documentation parts within the `x-amazon-apigateway-documentation` Object (p. 470) extension in a valid Swagger 2.0 definition file. Importing documentation does not alter the existing API entity definitions.

You have an option to merge the newly specified documentation parts into existing documentation parts in API Gateway or to overwrite the existing documentation parts. In the `MERGE` mode, a new documentation part defined in the Swagger file is added to the `DocumentationParts` collection of the API. If an imported `DocumentationPart` already exists, an imported attribute replaces the existing one if the two are different. Other existing documentation attributes remain unaffected. In the `OVERWRITE` mode, the entire `DocumentationParts` collection is replaced according to the imported Swagger definition file.

## Importing Documentation Parts Using the API Gateway REST API

To import API documentation using the API Gateway REST API, call the `documentationpart:import` operation. The following example shows how to overwrite existing documentation parts of an API with a single GET / method, returning a 200 OK response when successful.

```
PUT /restapis/<restapi_id>/documentation/parts&mode=overwrite&failonwarnings=true
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: YYYYMMDDTttttttZ
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access_key_id/YYYYMMDD/region/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=signv4_secret

{
    "swagger": "2.0",
    "info": {
        "description": "description",
        "version": "1",
        "title": "doc"
    },
    "host": "",
    "basePath": "/",
    "schemas": [""
```
"https",
"paths": {
  "/": {
    "get": {
      "description": "Method description.",
      "produces": ["application/json"
      ],
      "responses": {
        "200": {
          "description": "200 response",
          "schema": {
            "$ref": "/definitions/Empty"
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
},
"definitions": {
  "Empty": {
    "type": "object",
    "title": "Empty Schema"
  }
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-documentation": {
  "version": "1.0.3",
  "documentationParts": [
    {
      "location": {
        "type": "API"
      },
      "properties": {
        "description": "API description",
        "info": {
          "description": "API info description 4",
          "version": "API info version 3"
        }
      }
    },
    {
      "location": {
        "type": "METHOD",
        "method": "GET"
      },
      "properties": {
        "description": "Method description."
      }
    },
    {
      "location": {
        "type": "MODEL",
        "name": "Empty"
      },
      "properties": {
        "title": "Empty Schema"
      }
    },
    {
      "location": {
        "type": "RESPONSE",
        "method": "GET",
        "statusCode": "200"
      },
      "properties": {

When successful, this request returns a 200 OK response containing the imported `DocumentationPartId` in the payload.

```json
{
  "ids": [
    "kg3mth",
    "796rtf",
    "zhek4p",
    "5ukm9s"
  ]
}
```

In addition, you can also call `restapi:import` or `restapi:put`, supplying the documentation parts in the `x-amazon-apigateway-documentation` object as part of the input Swagger file of the API definition. To exclude the documentation parts from the API import, set `ignore=documentation` in the request query parameters.

## Importing Documentation Parts Using the API Gateway Console

The following instructions describe how to import documentation parts.

**To use the console to import documentation parts of an API from an external file**

1. Choose **Documentation** for the API from the main navigation pane on the console.
2. Choose **Import Documentation** in the **Documentation** pane.
3. Choose **Select Swagger File** to load a file from a drive, or copy and paste a file contents into the file view. For an example, see the payload of the example request in Importing Documentation Parts Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 346).
4. Optionally, choose **Fail on warnings** or **Ignore warnings**, and choose **Merge** or **Overwrite** from **Import mode**.
5. Choose **Import**.

## Control Access to API Documentation

If you have a dedicated documentation team to write and edit your API documentation, you can configure separate access permissions for your developers (for API development) and for your writers or editors (for content development). This is especially appropriate when a third-party vendor is involved in creating the documentation for you.

To grant your documentation team the access to create, update, and publish your API documentation, you can assign the documentation team an IAM role with the following IAM policy, where `account_id` is the AWS account ID of your documentation team.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    
    
```
For information on setting permissions to access API Gateway resources, see Control Who Can Create and Manage an API Gateway API with IAM Policies (p. 241).
Deploying an API in Amazon API Gateway

After creating your API, you must deploy it to make the API callable for your users.

To deploy an API, you create an API deployment and associate it with a stage. Each stage is a snapshot of the API and is made available for the client to call. Every time you update an API, which includes modification of methods, integrations, authorizers, and anything else other than stage settings, you must redeploy the API to an existing stage or to a new stage. As your API evolves, you can continue to deploy it to different stages as different versions of the API. You can also deploy your API updates as a canary release deployment (p. 377), enabling your API clients to access, on the same stage, the production version through the production release, and the updated version through the canary release.

To call a deployed API, the client submits a request against an API method URL. The method URL is determined by an API's host name, a stage name, and a resource path. The host name and the stage name determine the API's base URL.

Using the API's default domain name, the base URL of an API in a given stage (stageName) is of the following format:

```
https://{restapi-id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com/{stageName}
```

To make an API's default base URL more user-friendly, you can create a custom domain name (e.g., api.example.com) to replace the default host name of the API. To support multiple APIs under the custom domain name, you must map an API stage to a base path.

With a custom domain name of api.example.com and the API stage mapped to a base path of (basePath), under the custom domain name, the base URL becomes the following:

```
https://{api.example.com}/{basePath}
```

For each stage, you can optimize the API performance by adjusting the default account-level request throttling limits and enabling API caching. You can also enable logging API calls to CloudTrail or CloudWatch and select a client certificate for the backend to authenticate the API requests. In addition, you can override stage-level settings for individual methods and define stage variables to pass stage-specific environment contexts to the API integration at run time. At an API stage, you can export the API definitions and generate an SDK for your users to call the API using a supported programming language.

Stages enable robust version control of your API. For example, you can deploy an API to a test stage and a prod stage, and use the test stage as a test build and use the prod stage as a stable build. After the updates pass the test, you can promote the test stage to the prod stage. The promotion can be done by redeploying the API to the prod stage or updating a stage variable (p. 352) value from the stage name of test to that of prod.

You can also include a canary release for testing new changes. This is referred to as a canary release deployment. It makes available a base version and updated versions of the API on the same stage, allowing you to introduce new features in the same environment for the base version. For more information, see the section called “Set up a Canary Release Deployment” (p. 377).

In this section, we discuss how to deploy an API, using the API Gateway console or calling the API Gateway REST API. To use other tools to do the same, see the documentation of, for example, AWS CLI or an AWS SDK.
To monetize your API deployment, you can leverage the API Gateway integration with AWS Marketplace to vend your API as a Software as a Service (SaaS) product. The instructions are also included in this chapter.

Topics
- Create a Deployment in API Gateway (p. 351)
- Set up a Stage in API Gateway (p. 353)
- Set up an API Gateway Canary Release Deployment (p. 377)
- Export an API from API Gateway (p. 394)
- Generate SDK of an API (p. 396)
- Set up Custom Domain Name for an API in API Gateway (p. 412)
- Sell Your API Gateway API through AWS Marketplace (p. 433)

Create a Deployment in API Gateway

In API Gateway, a deployment is represented by a Deployment resource. It is like an executable of an API represented by a RestApi resource. For the client to call your API, you must create a deployment and associate a stage to it. A stage is represented by a Stage resource and represents a snapshot of the API, including methods, integrations, models, mapping templates, custom authorizers, etc. When you update the API, you can redeploy the API by associating a new stage with the existing deployment. We discuss creating a stage in the section called “Set up a Stage” (p. 353).

Topics
- Create a Deployment Using AWS CLI (p. 351)
- Deploy API from the API Gateway Console (p. 352)

Create a Deployment Using AWS CLI

Creating an deployment amounts to instantiating the Deployment resource. You can use the API Gateway console, AWS CLI, an AWS SDK or the API Gateway REST API to create an deployment.

To use CLI to create a deployment, use the create-deployment command:

```
aws apigateway create-deployment --rest-api-id <rest-api-id> --region <region>
```

The API is not callable until you associate this deployment with a stage. With an existing stage, you can do so by updating the stage's deploymentId property with the newly created deployment ID (<deployment-id>).

```
aws apigateway update-stage --region <region> \
--rest-api-id <rest-api-id> \
--stage-name <stage-name> \
--patch-operations op='replace',path='/deploymentId',value='<deployment-id>'
```

When deploying an API the first time, you can combine the stage creation and deployment creation at the same time:

```
aws apigateway create-deployment --region <region> \
--rest-api-id <rest-api-id> \
--stage-name <stage-name>
```
Deploy API from the API Gateway Console

You must have created an API before deploying it for the first time. For more information see Creating an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 79).

Topics
- Deploy an API to a Stage (p. 352)
- Update the Stage Configuration of a Deployment (p. 352)
- Set Stage Variables for the Deployment (p. 352)
- Associate a Stage with a Different Deployment (p. 353)

Deploy an API to a Stage

The API Gateway console lets you deploy an API by creating a deployment and associating it with a new or existing stage.

Note
To associate a stage in API Gateway with a different deployment, see Associate a Stage with a Different Deployment (p. 353) instead.

2. In the APIs navigation pane, choose the API you want to deploy.
3. In the Resources navigation pane, choose Actions.
4. From the Actions drop-down menu, choose Deploy API.
5. In the Deploy API dialog, choose an entry from the Deployment stage dropdown list.
6. If you choose [New Stage], type a name in Stage name and optionally provide a description for the stage and deployment in Stage description and Deployment description. If you choose an existing stage, you may want to provide a description of the new deployment in Deployment description.
7. Choose Deploy to deploy the API to the specified stage with default stage settings.

Update the Stage Configuration of a Deployment

After an API is deployed, you can modify the stage settings to enable or disable API cache, logging, or request throttling. You can also choose a client certificate for the backend to authenticate API Gateway and set stage variables to pass deployment context to the API integration at run time. For more information, see Update Stage Settings (p. 354).

Note
If the updated settings, such as enabling logging, requires a new IAM role, you can add the required IAM role without redeploying the API. However, it can take a few minutes before the new IAM role takes effect. Before that happens, traces of your API calls will not be logged even if you have enabled the logging option.

Set Stage Variables for the Deployment

For a deployment, you can set or modify stage variables to pass deployment-specific data to the API integration at run time. You can do this on the Stage Variables tab in the Stage Editor. For more information, see instructions in Set up Stage Variable for API Deployment (p. 365).
Associate a Stage with a Different Deployment

Because a deployment represents an API snapshot and a stage defines a path into a snapshot, you can choose different deployment-stage combinations to control how users call into different versions of the API. This is useful, for example, when you want to roll back API state to a previous deployment or to merge a 'private branch' of the API into the public one.

The following procedure shows how to do this using the Stage Editor in the API Gateway console. It is assumed that you must have deployed an API more than once.

1. If not already in Stage Editor, choose the stage you want to update the deployment from an API's Stages option in the APIs main navigation pane.
2. On the Deployment History tab, choose the option button next to the deployment you want the stage to use.
3. Choose Change Deployment.

Set up a Stage in API Gateway

A stage is a named reference to a deployment, which is a snapshot of the API. You use a Stage to manage and optimize a particular deployment. For example, you can set up stage settings to enable caching, customize request throttling, configure logging, define stage variables or attach a canary release for testing.

Topics
- Set up a Stage Using the API Gateway Console (p. 353)
- Throttle API Requests for Better Throughput (p. 356)
- Enable API Caching to Enhance Responsiveness (p. 358)
- Set up API Logging in API Gateway (p. 362)
- Set up Stage Variable for API Deployment (p. 365)
- Set up Tags for an API Stage in API Gateway (p. 375)

Set up a Stage Using the API Gateway Console

Topics
- Create a New Stage (p. 353)
- Update Stage Settings (p. 354)
- Delete a Stage for an API (p. 356)

Create a New Stage

After the initial deployment, you can add more stages and associate them with existing deployments. You can use the API Gateway console to create and use a new stage or choose an existing stage while deploying an API. In general, you can add a new stage to an API deployment before redeploying the API. To do so using the API Gateway console, follow the instructions below.

2. From the APIs navigation pane, choose Stages under an API.
3. From the Stages navigation pane, choose Create.
4. Under Create Stage, type a stage name, e.g., prod, for Stage name.
5. Optionally, type a stage description for Stage description
6. From the Deployment drop-down list, choose the date and time of the existing API deployment you want to associate with this stage.
7. Choose Create.

**Update Stage Settings**

After a successful deployment of an API, the stage is populated with default settings. You can use the console or API Gateway REST API to change the stage settings, including API caching and logging. In the following, we show how to do so using the Stage Editor of the API Gateway console.

**Update Stage Settings Using the API Gateway Console**

Make sure that you have already deployed the API and created a stage at least once before proceeding.

2. In the APIs pane, choose the API you want to update the stage settings, and then choose Stages.
3. In the Stages pane, choose the name of the stage.
4. In the Stage Editor pane, choose the Settings tab.
5. To enable API caching, select the Enable API cache option under the Cache Settings section. Then, choose desired options and associated values for Cache capacity, Encrypt cache data, Cache time-to-live (TTL), as well as the requirements for per-key cache invalidation. For more information about the stage-level cache settings, see Enable API Caching (p. 358).

   **Important**
   By selecting this option, your AWS account may be charged for API caching.

   **Tip**
   You can override enabled stage-level cache settings. To do so, expand the stage under the Stages secondary navigation pane and choose a method. Then, in the stage editor, choose the Override for this method option for Settings. In the ensuing Cache Settings area, clear Enable Method Cache or customize any other desired options, before choosing Save Changes. For more information about the method-level cache settings, see Enable API Caching (p. 358).

6. To enable Amazon CloudWatch Logs for all of the methods associated with this stage of this API Gateway API, do the following:

   a. Under the CloudWatch Settings section, select the Enable CloudWatch Logs option.

      **Tip**
      To enable method-level CloudWatch settings, expand the stage under the Stages secondary navigation pane, choose each method of interest, and, back in the stage editor, choose Override for this method for Settings. In the ensuing CloudWatch Settings area, make sure to select Log to CloudWatch Logs and any other desired options, before choosing Save Changes.

      **Important**
      Your account will be charged for accessing method-level CloudWatch metrics, but not the API- or stage-level metrics.

   b. For Log level, choose ERROR to write only error-level entries to CloudWatch Logs, or choose INFO to include all ERROR events as well as extra informational events.

   c. To log full API call request and response information, select Log full requests/responses data. No sensitive data will be logged unless the Log full requests/responses data option is selected.

   d. To have API Gateway to report to CloudWatch the API metrics of API calls, Latency, Integration latency, 400 errors and 500 errors, select the Enable Detailed
CloudWatch Metrics option. For more information about CloudWatch, see the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

e. Choose Save Changes. The new settings will take effect after a new deployment.

Important
To enable CloudWatch Logs for all or only some of the methods, you must also specify the ARN of an IAM role that enables API Gateway to write information to CloudWatch Logs on behalf of your IAM user. To do so, choose Settings from the APIs main navigation pane. Then type the ARN of an IAM role in the CloudWatch log role ARN text field. For common application scenarios, the IAM role could attach the managed policy of AmazonAPIGatewayPushToCloudWatchLogs, which contains the following access policy statement:

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": [
            "logs:CreateLogGroup",
            "logs:CreateLogStream",
            "logs:DescribeLogGroups",
            "logs:DescribeLogStreams",
            "logs:PutLogEvents",
            "logs:GetLogEvents",
            "logs:FilterLogEvents"
         ],
         "Resource": "*"
      }
   ]
}
```

The IAM role must also contain the following trust relationship statement:

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Sid": "",
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Principal": {
            "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
         },
         "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
      }
   ]
}
```

For more information about CloudWatch, see the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

7. To set the stage-level throttle limit for all of the methods associated with this API, do the following in the Default Method Throttling section:

a. For Rate, type the maximum number of stage-level steady-state requests per second that API Gateway can serve without returning a 429 Too Many Requests response. This stage-level rate limit must not be more than the account-level rate limit as specified in API Gateway Limits for Configuring and Running an API (p. 559).

b. For Burst, type the maximum number of stage-level concurrent requests that API Gateway can serve without returning a 429 Too Many Requests response. This stage-level burst must not be more than the account-level burst limit as specified in API Gateway Limits for Configuring and Running an API (p. 559).
8. To override the stage-level throttling for individual methods, expand the stage under the Stages secondary navigation pane, choose a method of interest, and, back in the stage editor, choose Override for this method for Settings. In the Default Method Throttling area, select appropriate options.

Delete a Stage for an API

When you no longer need a stage, you can delete it to avoid paying for unused resources. In the following, we explain how to use the API Gateway console to delete a stage.

Warning
Deleting a stage may cause part or all of the corresponding API to be unusable by API callers. Deleting a stage cannot be undone, but you can recreate the stage and associate it with the same deployment.

Delete a Stage with the API Gateway Console

2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the stage, choose Stages.
3. In the Stages pane, choose the stage you want to delete, and then choose Delete Stage.
4. When prompted, choose Delete.

Throttle API Requests for Better Throughput

To prevent your API from being overwhelmed by too many requests, Amazon API Gateway throttles requests to your API using the token bucket algorithm, where a token counts for a request. Specifically, API Gateway sets a limit on a steady-state rate and a burst of request submissions against all APIs in your account. In the token bucket algorithm, the burst is the maximum bucket size.

When request submissions exceed the steady-state request rate and burst limits, API Gateway fails the limit-exceeding requests and returns 429 Too Many Requests error responses to the client. Upon catching such exceptions, the client can resubmit the failed requests in a rate-limiting fashion, while complying with the API Gateway throttling limits.

As an API developer, you can set the limits for individual API stages or methods to improve overall performance across all APIs in your account. Alternatively, you can enable usage plans (p. 296) to restrict client request submissions to within specified request rates and quotas. This restricts the overall request submissions so that they don’t go significantly past the account-level throttling limits.

Account-Level Throttling

By default, API Gateway limits the steady-state request rate to 10,000 requests per second (rps). It limits the burst (that is, the maximum bucket size) to 5,000 requests across all APIs within an AWS account. In API Gateway, the burst limit corresponds to the maximum number of concurrent request submissions that API Gateway can fulfill at any moment without returning 429 Too Many Requests error responses.

To help understand these throttling limits, here are a few examples, given the default account-level rate and burst limits:

• If a caller submits 10,000 requests in a one second period evenly (for example, 10 requests every millisecond), API Gateway processes all requests without dropping any.
• If the caller sends 10,000 requests in the first millisecond, API Gateway serves 5,000 of those requests and throttles the rest in the one-second period.
• If the caller submits 5,000 requests in the first millisecond and then evenly spreads another 5,000 requests through the remaining 999 milliseconds (for example, about 5 requests every millisecond), API Gateway processes all 10,000 requests in the one-second period without returning 429 Too Many Requests error responses.

• If the caller submits 5,000 requests in the first millisecond and waits until the 101st millisecond to submit another 5,000 requests, API Gateway processes 6,000 requests and throttles the rest in the one-second period. This is because at the rate of 10,000 rps, API Gateway has served 1,000 requests after the first 100 milliseconds and thus emptied the bucket by the same amount. Of the next spike of 5,000 requests, 1,000 fill the bucket and are queued to be processed. The other 4,000 exceed the bucket capacity and are discarded.

• If the caller submits 5,000 requests in the first millisecond, submits 1,000 requests at the 101st millisecond, and then evenly spreads another 4,000 requests through the remaining 899 milliseconds, API Gateway processes all 10,000 requests in the one-second period without throttling.

More generally, at any given moment, when a bucket contains \( b \) and the maximum bucket capacity is \( B \), the maximum additional tokens that can be added to the bucket is \( \# = B - b \). This maximum number of additional tokens corresponds to the maximum number of additional concurrent requests that a client can submit without receiving any 429 error responses. In general, \( \# \) varies in time. The value ranges from zero when the bucket is full (that is, \( b = B \)) to \( B \) when the bucket is empty (that is, \( b = 0 \)). The range depends on the request-processing rate, which is the rate at which tokens are removed from the bucket, and the rate limit rate, which is the rate at which tokens are added to the bucket.

The following schematic shows the general behaviors of \( \# \), the maximum additional concurrent requests, as a function of time. The schematic assumes that the tokens in the bucket decrease at a combined rate of \( r \), starting from an empty bucket.

The account-level rate limit and burst limit can be increased upon request. To request an increase of account-level throttling limits, contact the AWS Support Center. For more information, see API Gateway Limits (p. 559).

**Default Method Throttling**

As an API owner, you can set the default method throttling to override the account-level request throttling limits for a specific stage or for individual methods in an API. The Default method throttling limits are bounded by the account-level rate limits, even if you set the default method throttling limits higher than the account-level limits.

You can set the default method throttling limits by using the API Gateway console or by calling the API Gateway REST API (p. 558). For instructions on using the console, see Update Stage Settings (p. 354).
Enable API Caching to Enhance Responsiveness

You can enable API caching in Amazon API Gateway to cache your endpoint's response. With caching, you can reduce the number of calls made to your endpoint and also improve the latency of the requests to your API. When you enable caching for a stage, API Gateway caches responses from your endpoint for a specified time-to-live (TTL) period, in seconds. API Gateway then responds to the request by looking up the endpoint response from the cache instead of making a request to your endpoint. The default TTL value for API caching is 300 seconds. The maximum TTL value is 3600 seconds. TTL=0 means caching is disabled.

**Note**
Caching is charged by the hour and is not eligible for the AWS free tier.

Enable Amazon API Gateway Caching

In API Gateway, you can enable caching for all methods for a specified stage. When you enable caching, you must choose a cache capacity. In general, a larger capacity gives a better performance, but also costs more.

API Gateway enables caching by creating a dedicated cache instance. This process can take up to 4 minutes.

API Gateway changes caching capacity by removing the existing cache instance and recreating a new one with a modified capacity. All existing cached data is deleted.

In the API Gateway console, you configure caching in the *Settings* tab of a named *Stage Editor*.

**To configure API caching for a given stage:**

1. Go to the API Gateway console.
2. Navigate to the *Stage Editor* for the stage for which you want to enable caching.
3. Choose *Settings*.
4. Select *Enable API cache*.
5. Wait for the cache creation to complete.

**Note**
Creating or deleting a cache takes about 4 minutes for API Gateway to complete. When cache is created, the *Cache status* value changes from *CREATE_IN_PROGRESS* to *AVAILABLE*. When cache deletion is completed, the *Cache status* value changes from *DELETE_IN_PROGRESS* to an empty string.

When you enable caching within a stage's *Cache Settings*, you enable caching for all methods in that stage.

If you would like to verify if caching is functioning as expected, you have two general options:

- Inspect the CloudWatch metrics of CacheHitCount and CacheMissCount for your API and stage.
- Put a timestamp in the response.

**Note**
You should not use the X-Cache header from the CloudFront response to determine if your API is being served from your API Gateway cache instance.
Override API Gateway Stage-Level Caching for Method Caching

If you want more granularity in your caching settings, you can override the stage-level caching for individual methods. This includes disabling caching for a specific method, increasing or decreasing its TTL period, and turning on or off encryption of the cached response. If you anticipate that a method will receive sensitive data in its responses, in Cache Settings, choose Encrypt cache data.

To configure API caching for individual methods using the console:

1. Choose Stages of an API from the main navigation pane.
2. Choose a method of the API in the chosen stage, from the secondary navigation pane.
3. Choose Override for this method in Settings.
4. Choose appropriate settings under the Cache Settings section (that is shown only if the stage-level caching is enabled).

Use Method or Integration Parameters as Cache Keys to Index Cached Responses

When a cached method or integration has parameters, which can take the form of custom headers, URL paths, or query strings, you can use some or all of the parameters to form cache keys. API Gateway can cache the method's responses, depending on the parameter values used.

For example, suppose you have a request of the following format:

```
GET /users?type=... HTTP/1.1
host: example.com
...
```

In this request, type can take a value of admin or regular. If you include the type parameter as part of the cache key, the responses from GET /users?type=admin will be cached separately from those from GET /users?type=regular.

When a method or integration request takes more than one parameter, you can choose to include some or all of the parameters to create the cache key. For example, you can include only the type parameter in the cache key for the following request, made in the listed order within a TTL period:

```
GET /users?type=admin&department=A HTTP/1.1
host: example.com
...
```

The response from this request will be cached and will be used to serve the following request:

```
GET /users?type=admin&department=B HTTP/1.1
host: example.com
...
```

To include a method or integration request parameter as part of a cache key in the API Gateway console, select Caching after you add the parameter.
Flush the API Stage Cache in API Gateway

When API caching is enabled, you can flush your API stage's entire cache to ensure your API's clients get the most recent responses from your integration endpoints.

To flush the API stage cache, you can choose the **Flush Cache** button under the **Stage** tab in the API Gateway console. Notice that flushing the cache will cause the responses to ensuing requests to be serviced from the backend until the cache is build up again. During this period, the number of requests sent to the integration endpoint may increase. That may affect the overall latency of your API.

Invalidate an API Gateway Cache Entry

A client of your API can invalidate an existing cache entry and reloads it from the integration endpoint for individual requests. The client must send a request that contains the *Cache-Control: max-age=0* header. The client receives the response directly from the integration endpoint instead of the cache, provided that the user is authorized to do so. This replaces the existing cache entry with the new response, which is fetched from the integration endpoint.

To grant permission for a caller, attach a policy of the following format to an IAM execution role for the user.

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
```
"Effect": "Allow",
"Action": [  
    "execute-api:InvalidateCache"
  ],
"Resource": [  
    "arn:aws:execute-api:region:account-id:api-id/stage-name/HTTP-VERB/resource-path-specifier"
  ]
]
]
}

This policy allows the API Gateway execution service to invalidate cache for requests on the specified resource (or resources). To specify a group of targeted resources, use a wild card (*) character for account-id, api-id, and other entries in the ARN value of Resource. For more information on how to set permissions for the API Gateway execution service, see Control Access to an API with IAM Permissions (p. 239)

If you do not impose an InvalidateCache policy, any client can invalidate the API cache. If all or most of the clients invalidate the API cache, there could be significant latency impact on your API.

When the policy is in place, caching is enabled, and authorization is required, you can control how unauthorized requests are handled by choosing an option from Handle unauthorized requests in the API Gateway console.
The three options result in the following behaviors:

- **Fail the request with 403 status code**: returns a 403 Unauthorized response.
  
  To set this option using the API, use `FAIL_WITH_403`.

- **Ignore cache control header; Add a warning in response header**: process the request and add a warning header in the response.
  
  To set this option using the API, use `SUCCEED_WITH_RESPONSE_HEADER`.

- **Ignore cache control header**: process the request and do not add a warning header in the response.
  
  To set this option using the API, use `SUCCEED_WITHOUT_RESPONSE_HEADER`.

### Set up API Logging in API Gateway

To help debug issues related to request execution or client access to your API, you can enable Amazon CloudWatch Logs to trace API calls. Once enabled, API Gateway will log API calls in CloudWatch. There are two types of API logging: execution logging and access logging.
In execution logging, API Gateway manages the CloudWatch Logs. The process includes creating log groups and log streams, and reporting to the log streams any caller's requests and responses. The logged data includes errors or execution traces (such as request or response parameter values or payloads), data used by custom authorizers, whether API keys are required, whether usage plans are enabled, and so on.

When you deploy an API, API Gateway creates a log group and log streams under the log group. The log group is named following the `API-Gateway-Execution-Logs_{rest-api-id}/{stage_name}` format. Within each log group, the logs are further divided into log streams, which are ordered by Last Event Time as logged data is reported.

In access logging, you, as an API developer, want to log who has accessed your API and how the caller accessed the API. You can create your own log group or choose an existing one, which could be managed by API Gateway. You can specify the access details by selecting $context (p. 189) variables, expressed in a format of your choosing, and by choosing a log group as the destination. To preserve uniqueness of each log, access log format must include $context.requestId.

Choose a log format that is also adopted by your analytic backend, such as Common Log Format (CLF), JSON, XML, or CSV. You can then feed the access logs to it directly to have your metrics computed and rendered. To define the log format, set the log group ARN on the accessLogSettings/destinationArn property on the stage. You can obtain a log group ARN in the CloudWatch console, provided that the ARN column is selected for display. To define the access log format, set a chosen format on the accessLogSetting/format property on the stage.

Examples of some commonly used access log formats are shown in the API Gateway console and listed as follows.

- **CLF** (Common Log Format):

  ```
  $context.identity.sourceIp $context.identity.caller \ $context.identity.user [ $context.requestTime ] \ "$context.httpMethod $context.resourcePath $context.protocol" \ $context.status $context.responseLength $context.requestId
  ```

  The continuation characters (\) are meant as a visual aid and the log format cannot have any line breaks.

- **JSON**:

  ```
  { "requestId":"$context.requestId", \ "ip": "$context.identity.sourceIp", \ "caller":"$context.identity.caller", \ "user": "$context.identity.user", \ "requestTime":"$context.requestTime", \ "httpMethod":"$context.httpMethod", \ "resourcePath":"$context.resourcePath", \ "status":"$context.status", \ "protocol":"$context.protocol", \ "responseLength":"$context.responseLength" }
  ```

  The continuation characters (\) are meant as a visual aid and the log format cannot have any line breaks.

- **XML**:

  ```
  <request id="$context.requestId"> \ <ip>$context.identity.sourceIp</ip> \ <caller>$context.identity.caller</caller> \ <user>$context.identity.user</user> \ <requestTime>$context.requestTime</requestTime>
  ```
The continuation characters (\) are meant as a visual aid and the log format cannot have any line breaks.

- CSV (comma-separated values):

```
<context.identity.sourceIp>,<context.identity.caller>,
<context.identity.user>,<context.requestTime>,<context.httpMethod>,
<context.resourcePath>,<context.protocol>,<context.status>,
<context.responseLength>,<context.requestId
```

The continuation characters (\) are meant as a visual aid and the log format cannot have any line breaks.

### Permissions

To enable CloudWatch Logs, you must grant API Gateway proper permissions to read and write logs to CloudWatch for your account. The `AmazonAPIGatewayPushToCloudWatchLogs` managed policy (with an ARN of `arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AmazonAPIGatewayPushToCloudWatchLogs`) has all the required permissions.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "logs:CreateLogGroup",
                "logs:CreateLogStream",
                "logs:DescribeLogGroups",
                "logs:DescribeLogStreams",
                "logs:PutLogEvents",
                "logs:GetLogEvents",
                "logs:FilterLogEvents"
            ],
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

To grant these permissions to your account, create an IAM role with `apigateway.amazonaws.com` as its trusted entity, attach the preceding policy to the IAM role, and set the IAM role ARN on the `cloudWatchRoleArn` property on your Account.

### Set up API Logging Using the API Gateway Console

To set up API logging, you must have deployed the API to a stage. You must also have configured an appropriate CloudWatch Logs role (p. 364) ARN for your account.

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Choose Settings from the primary navigation panel. Type an ARN of an IAM role with appropriate permissions in CloudWatch log role ARN. You need to do this once.
3. Do one of the following:
   a. Choose an existing API and then choose a stage.
   b. Create an API and deploy it to a stage.
4. Choose Logs in the Stage Editor.
5. To enable execution logging, choose Enable CloudWatch Logs under CloudWatch Settings. Choose Error or Info from the drop-down menu. If desired, choose Enable Detailed CloudWatch Metrics.
6. To enable access logging, choose Enable Access Logging under Custom Access Logging. Then type the ARN of a log group in CloudWatch Group. Type a log format in Log Format. You can choose CLF, JSON, XML, or CSV to use one of the provided examples as a guide.
7. Choose Save Changes.

**Note**
You can enable execution logging and access logging independent of each other.

API Gateway is now ready to log requests to your API. You do not need to redeploy the API when you update the stage settings, logs, or stage variables.

### Set up Stage Variable for API Deployment

Stage variables are name-value pairs that you can define as configuration attributes associated with a deployment stage of an API. They act like environment variables and can be used in your API setup and mapping templates.

For example, you can define a stage variable in a stage configuration, and then set its value as the URL string of an HTTP integration for a method in your API. Later, you can reference the URL string using the associated stage variable name from the API setup. This way, you can use the same API setup with a different endpoint at each stage by resetting the stage variable value to the corresponding URLs. You can also access stage variables in the mapping templates, or pass configuration parameters to your AWS Lambda or HTTP backend.

For more information about mapping templates, see API Gateway Mapping Template Reference (p. 189).

### Use Cases

With deployment stages in API Gateway, you can manage multiple release stages for each API, such as alpha, beta, and production. Using stage variables you can configure an API deployment stage to interact with different backend endpoints. For example, your API can pass a GET request as an HTTP proxy to the backend web host (for example, http://example.com). In this case, the backend web host is configured in a stage variable so that when developers call your production endpoint, API Gateway calls example.com. When you call your beta endpoint, API Gateway uses the value configured in the stage variable for the beta stage, and calls a different web host (for example, beta.example.com). Similarly, stage variables can be used to specify a different AWS Lambda function name for each stage in your API.

You can also use stage variables to pass configuration parameters to a Lambda function through your mapping templates. For example, you may want to re-use the same Lambda function for multiple stages in your API, but the function should read data from a different Amazon DynamoDB table depending on which stage is being called. In the mapping templates that generate the request for the Lambda function, you can use stage variables to pass the table name to Lambda.

### Examples

To use a stage variable to customize the HTTP integration endpoint, you must first configure a stage variable of a specified name, e.g., url, and then assign it a value, e.g., example.com. Next, from your
method configuration, set up an HTTP proxy integration, and instead of entering the endpoint's URL, you can tell API Gateway to use the stage variable value, \texttt{http://$(stageVariables.url)}\texttt{). This value tells API Gateway to substitute your stage variable $\{$\} at runtime, depending on which stage your API is running. You can reference stage variables in a similar way to specify a Lambda function name, an AWS Service Proxy path, or an AWS role ARN in the credentials field.

When specifying a Lambda function name as a stage variable value, you must configure the permissions on the Lambda function manually. You can use the AWS Command Line Interface to do this.

```
```

The following example assigns API Gateway permission to invoke a Lambda function named \texttt{helloWorld} hosted in the US West (Oregon) region of an AWS account on behalf of the API method.

```
```

Here is the same command using the AWS CLI.

```
```

### Set Stage Variables Using the Amazon API Gateway Console

In this tutorial, you will learn how to set stage variables for two deployment stages of a sample API, using the Amazon API Gateway console. Before you begin, make sure the following prerequisites are met:

- You must have an API available in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Creating an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 79).
- You must have deployed the API at least once. Follow the instructions in Deploying an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 350).
- You must have created the first stage for a deployed API. Follow the instructions in Create a New Stage (p. 353).

#### To Declare Stage Variables Using the API Gateway Console

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console at \texttt{https://console.aws.amazon.com/apigateway}.
2. Create an API, create a GET method on the API's root resource, if you have not already done so. Set the HTTP Endpoint URL value as "http://$(stageVariables.url)\texttt{"}, and then choose \texttt{Save}.  

366
3. Choose **Deploy API**. Choose **New Stage** and enter "beta" for **Stage name**. Choose **Deploy**.

4. In the **beta Stage Editor** panel; choose the **Stage Variables** tab; and then choose **Add Stage Variable**.

5. Enter the "url" string in the **Name** field and the "httpbin.org/get" in the **Value** field. Choose the checkmark icon to save the setting for the stage variable.

6. Repeat the above step to add two more stage variables: **version** and **function**. Set their values as "v-beta" and "HelloWorld", respectively.

   **Note**
   When setting a Lambda function as the value of a stage variable, use the function's local name, possibly including its alias or version specification, as in **HelloWorld**, **HelloWorld:1** or **HelloWorld:alpha**. Do not use the function's ARN (for example, **arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:HelloWorld**). The API Gateway console assumes the stage variable value for a Lambda function as the unqualified function name and will expand the given stage variable into an ARN.
7. From the Stages navigation pane, choose Create. For Stage name, type prod. Select a recent deployment from Deployment and then choose Create.

8. As with the beta stage, set the same three stage variables (url, version, and function) to different values ("petstore-demo-endpoint.execute-api.com/petstore/pets", "v-prod", and "HelloEveryone"), respectively.

Use Amazon API Gateway Stage Variables

You can use API Gateway stage variables to access the HTTP and Lambda backends for different API deployment stages and to pass stage-specific configuration metadata into an HTTP backend as a query parameter and into a Lambda function as a payload generated in an input mapping template.

Prerequisites

You must create two stages with a url variable set to two different HTTP endpoints: a function stage variable assigned to two different Lambda functions, and a version stage variable containing stage-specific metadata. Follow the instructions in Set Stage Variables Using the Amazon API Gateway Console (p. 366).

Access an HTTP endpoint through an API with a stage variable

1. In the Stages navigation pane, choose beta. In beta Stage Editor, choose the Invoke URL link. This starts the beta stage GET request on the root resource of the API.

   Note
   
The Invoke URL link points to the root resource of the API in its beta stage. Navigating to the URL by choosing the link calls the beta stage GET method on the root resource. If methods are defined on child resources and not on the root resource itself, choosing the Invoke URL link will return a {"message":"Missing Authentication Token"} error response. In this case, you must append the name of a specific child resource to the Invoke URL link.

2. The response you get from the beta stage GET request is shown next. You can also verify the result by using a browser to navigate to http://httpbin.org/get. This value was assigned to the url variable in the beta stage. The two responses are identical.

3. In the Stages navigation pane, choose the prod stage. From prod Stage Editor, choose the Invoke URL link. This starts the prod stage GET request on the root resource of the API.

4. The response you get from the prod stage GET request is shown next. You can verify the result by using a browser to navigate to http://petstore-demo-endpoint-execute-api.com/petstore/pets. This value was assigned to the url variable in the prod stage. The two responses are identical.
Pass stage-specific metadata to an HTTP backend via a stage variable in a query parameter expression

This procedure describes how to use a stage variable value in a query parameter expression to pass stage-specific metadata into an HTTP backend. We will use the `version` stage variable declared in Set Stage Variables Using the Amazon API Gateway Console (p. 366).

1. In the Resource navigation pane, choose the GET method. To add a query string parameter to the method's URL, in Method Execution, choose Method Request. Type `version` for the parameter name.

2. In Method Execution choose Integration Request. Edit the Endpoint URL value to append `?version=${stageVariables.version}` to the previously defined URL value, which, in this case, is also expressed with the `url` stage variable. Choose Deploy API to deploy these changes.
3. In the **Stages** navigation pane, choose the **beta** stage. From **beta Stage Editor**, verify that the current stage is in the most recent deployment, and then choose the **Invoke URL** link.

**Note**
We use the beta stage here because the HTTP endpoint, as specified by the `url` variable, "http://httpbin.org/get", accepts query parameter expressions and returns them as the `args` object in its response.

4. The response is shown next. Notice that `v-beta`, assigned to the `version` stage variable, is passed in the backend as the `version` argument.

```json
{
    "args": {
        "version": "v-beta"
    },
    "headers": {
        "Accept": "application/json",
        "Host": "httpbin.org",
        "User-Agent": "AmazonAPIGateway_h4ah70cvmb"
    },
    "origin": "52.91.42.97",
    "url": "http://httpbin.org/get?version=v-beta"
}
```

**Call Lambda function through API with a stage variable**

This procedure describes how to use a stage variable to call a Lambda function as a back end of your API. We will use the `function` stage variable declared earlier. For more information, see Set Stage Variables Using the Amazon API Gateway Console (p. 366).
1. In the Resources pane, create a /lambdasv1 child resource under the root directory, and then create a GET method on the child resource. Set the Integration type to Lambda Function, and in Lambda Function, type `${stageVariables.function}`. Choose Save.

![Image of API Gateway setup](image)

**Tip**
When prompted with Add Permission to Lambda Function, make a note of the AWS CLI command before choosing OK. You must run the command on each Lambda function that is or will be assigned to the function stage variable for each of the newly created API methods. For example, if the ${stageVariables.function} value is HelloWorld and you have not added permission to this function yet, you must run the following AWS CLI command:

```bash
```

Failing to do so results in a 500 Internal Server Error response when invoking the method. Make sure to replace `${stageVariables.function}` with the Lambda function name that is assigned to the stage variable.

2. Deploy the API to available stages.

3. In the Stages navigation pane, choose the beta stage. Verify that your most recent deployment is in beta Stage Editor. Copy the Invoke URL link, paste it into the address bar of your browser, and append /lambdasv1 to that URL. This calls the underlying Lambda function through the GET method on the LambdaSv1 child resource of the API.
Note
Your HelloWorld Lambda function implements the following code.

```javascript
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
  if (event.version)
    callback(null, 'Hello, World! (' + event.version + ')');
  else
    callback(null, "Hello, world! (v-unknown)");
};
```

This implementation results in the following response.

"Hello, world! (v-unknown)"

Pass stage-specific metadata to a Lambda function via a stage variable

This procedure describes how to use a stage variable to pass stage-specific configuration metadata into a Lambda function. We will use a POST method and an input mapping template to generate payload using the version stage variable declared earlier.

1. In the Resources pane, choose the /lambdasv1 child resource. Create a POST method on the child resource, set the Integration type to Lambda Function, and type `${stageVariables.function}` in Lambda Function. Choose Save.

   Tip
   This step is similar to the step we used to create the GET method. For more information, see Call Lambda function through API with a stage variable (p. 370).

2. From the /Method Execution pane, choose Integration Request. In the Integration Request pane, expand Mapping Templates, and then choose Add mapping template to add a template for the application/json content-type, as shown in the following.
Note
In a mapping template, a stage variable must be referenced within quotes (as in "${stageVariables.version}") whereas elsewhere it must be referenced without quotes (as in ${stageVariables.function}).

3. Deploy the API to available stages.
4. In the Stages navigation pane, choose beta. In beta Stage Editor, verify that the current stage has the most recent deployment. Copy the Invoke URL link, paste it into the URL input field of a REST API client, append /lambdasv1 to that URL, and then submit a POST request to the underlying Lambda function.

Note
You will get the following response.

"Hello, world! (v-beta)"

To summarize, we have demonstrated how to use API Gateway stage variables to target different HTTP and Lambda back ends for different stages of API deployment. In addition, we also showed how to use the stage variables to pass stage-specific configuration data into HTTP and Lambda back ends. Together, these procedures demonstrate the versatility of the API Gateway stage variables in managing API development.

Amazon API Gateway Stage Variables Reference

You can use API Gateway stage variables in the following cases.
Parameter Mapping Expressions

A stage variable can be used in a parameter mapping expression for an API method's request or response header parameter, without any partial substitution. In the following example, the stage variable is referenced without the $ and the enclosing {...}.

- `stageVariables.<variable_name>`

Mapping Templates

A stage variable can be used anywhere in a mapping template, as shown in the following examples.

- `{ "name" : "$stageVariables.<variable_name>"}`
- `{ "name" : "${stageVariables.<variable_name>}"}`

HTTP Integration URIs

A stage variable can be used as part of an HTTP integration URL, as shown in the following examples.

- A full URL without protocol, e.g., `http://${stageVariables.<variable_name>}`
- A full domain: e.g., `http://${stageVariables.<variable_name>}/resource/operation`
- A subdomain: e.g., `http://${stageVariables.<variable_name>}.example.com/resource/operation`
- A path, e.g., `http://example.com/${stageVariables.<variable_name>}/bar`
- A query string, e.g., `http://example.com/foo?q=${stageVariables.<variable_name>}`

AWS Integration URIs

A stage variable can be used as part of AWS URI action or path components, as shown in the following example.

- `arn:aws:apigateway:<region>:<service>:${stageVariables.<variable_name>}`

AWS Integration URIs (Lambda Functions)

A stage variable can be used in place of a Lambda function name, or version/alias, as shown in the following examples.


AWS Integration Credentials

A stage variable can be used as part of AWS user/role credential ARN, as shown in the following example.

- `arn:aws:iam::<account_id>:{stageVariables.<variable_name>}`
Set up Tags for an API Stage in API Gateway

Tags are metadata that you assign to your AWS resources. They are commonly used for tracking resource usage by custom-defined categories, which provides a simple mechanism to separate distinct organizational units within a single AWS account. A tag consists of a key-value pair. For more information on how to use tags, see AWS Tagging Strategy.

In API Gateway, you can assign tags to an API stage for managing cost allocation for request invocation and caching that are associated with the stage. For example, when you add the tag Department:Sales to an API stage, it shows up in AWS Billing and Cost Management as a cost allocation tag. After a tag is activated, you can use it to filter costs and usage by using Cost Explorer in the AWS Billing and Cost Management console.

You can add a tag to an API stage, remove the tag from the stage, or view the tag. To do this, you can use the API Gateway console, the AWS CLI/SDK, or the API Gateway REST API.

Topics
- Set up Tags for an API Stage Using the API Gateway Console (p. 375)
- Set up Tags for an API Stage Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 375)
- Tag Restrictions (p. 377)

Set up Tags for an API Stage Using the API Gateway Console

The following procedure describes how to set up tags for an API stage.

To set up tags for an API stage by using the API Gateway console
1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Choose an existing API, or create a new API that includes resources, methods, and the corresponding integrations.
3. Choose a stage or deploy the API to a new stage.
4. In the Stage Editor, choose the Settings tab.
5. Under the Tags section, choose Add Stage Tag. Type a tag key (for example, Department) in the Key column, and type a tag value (for example, Sales) in the Value column. Choose the checkmark icon to save the tag.
6. If needed, repeat Step 5 to add more tags to the API stage. The maximum number of tags per stage is 50.
7. To remove an existing tag from the stage, choose the trash bin icon next to the selected tag.
8. Choose Save Changes to finish setting up the stage tags.

Set up Tags for an API Stage Using the API Gateway REST API

You can set up tags for an API stage using the API Gateway REST API by doing one of the following:
- Call tags:tag to tag an API stage.
- Call tags:untag to delete one or more tags from an API stage.
- Call stage:create to add one or more tags to an API stage.

You can also call tags:get to describe tags in an API stage.
Tag an API Stage

After you deploy an API (m5zr3vnks7) to a stage (test), tag the stage by calling \texttt{tags:tag}. The required stage Amazon Resource Name (ARN) (\texttt{arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1::/restapis/m5zr3vnks7/stages/test}) must be URL encoded (\texttt{arn%3Aaws%3Aapigateway%3Aus-east-1%A%3A%2Frestapis%2Fm5zr3vnks7%2Fstages%2Ftest}).

\begin{verbatim}
PUT /tags/arn%3Aaws%3Aapigateway%3Aus-east-1%3A%3A%2Frestapis%2Fm5zr3vnks7%2Fstages%2Ftest
{
  "tags" : {
    "Department" : "Sales"
  }
}
\end{verbatim}

You can also use the previous request to update an existing tag to a new value.

You can add tags to a stage when calling \texttt{stage:create} to create the stage:

\begin{verbatim}
POST /restapis/<restapi_id>/stages
{
  "stageName" : "test",
  "deploymentId" : "adr134",
  "description" : "test deployment",
  "cacheClusterEnabled" : "true",
  "cacheClusterSize" : "500",
  "variables" : {
    "sv1" : "val1"
  },
  "documentationVersion" : "test",
  "tags" : {
    "Department" : "Sales",
    "Division" : "Retail"
  }
}
\end{verbatim}

Untag an API Stage

To remove the \texttt{Department} tag from the stage, call \texttt{tags:untag}:

\begin{verbatim}
DELETE /tags/arn%3Aaws%3Aapigateway%3Aus-east-1%3A%3A%2Frestapis%2Fm5zr3vnks7%2Fstages%2Ftest
?tagKeys=Department
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Authorization: ...
\end{verbatim}

To remove more than one tag, use a comma-separated list of tag keys in the query expression—for example, \texttt{?tagKeys=Department,Division,...}

Describe Tags for an API Stage

To describe existing tags on a given stage, call \texttt{tags:get}:

\begin{verbatim}
GET /tags/arn%3Aaws%3Aapigateway%3Aus-east-1%3A%3A%2Frestapis%2Fm5zr3vnks7%2Fstages%2Ftags
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Authorization: ...
\end{verbatim}

The successful response is similar to the following:
Tag Restrictions

The following restrictions apply to tags for API Gateway resources:

- Tags are applicable to the **Stage** resource only.
- The maximum number of tags per stage is 50.
- The maximum tag key length is 128 Unicode characters in UTF-8.
- The maximum tag value length is 256 Unicode characters in UTF-8.
- Tag keys and values are case sensitive.
- The valid character set is \[a-zA-Z+-=._:/\] for tag keys and values.
- Tag keys and values can't start with \aws:. 

Set up an API Gateway Canary Release Deployment

**Canary release** is a software development strategy in which a new version of an API (as well as other software) is deployed as a canary release for testing purposes, and the base version remains deployed as a production release for normal operations on the same stage. For purposes of discussion, we refer to the base version as a production release in this documentation. Although this is reasonable, you are free to apply canary release on any non-production version for testing.

In a canary release deployment, total API traffic is separated at random into a production release and a canary release with a pre-configured ratio. Typically, the canary release receives a small percentage of API traffic and the production release takes up the rest. The updated API features are only visible to API traffic through the canary. You can adjust the canary traffic percentage to optimize test coverage or performance.

By keeping canary traffic small and the selection random, most users are not adversely affected at any time by potential bugs in the new version, and no single user is adversely affected all the time.
After the test metrics pass your requirements, you can promote the canary release to the production release and disable the canary from the deployment. This makes the new features available in the production stage.

**Topics**
- Canary Release Deployment in API Gateway (p. 378)
- Create a Canary Release Deployment (p. 379)
- Update a Canary Release (p. 386)
- Promote a Canary Release (p. 388)
- Disable a Canary Release (p. 392)

**Canary Release Deployment in API Gateway**

In API Gateway, a canary release deployment uses the deployment stage for the production release of the base version of an API, and attaches to the stage a canary release for the new versions, relative to the base version, of the API. The stage is associated with the initial deployment and the canary with subsequent deployments. At the beginning, both the stage and the canary point to the same API version. We use stage and production release interchangeably and use canary and canary release interchangeably throughout this section.

To deploy an API with a canary release, you create a canary release deployment by adding canary settings to the stage of a regular deployment. The canary settings describe the underlying canary release and the stage represents the production release of the API within this deployment. To add canary settings, set `canarySettings` on the deployment stage and specify the following:

- A deployment ID, initially identical to the ID of the base version deployment set on the stage.
- A percentage of API traffic, between 0.0 and 100.0 inclusive, for the canary release.
- Stage variables for the canary release that can override production release stage variables.
- The use of the stage cache for canary requests, if the `useStageCache` is set and API caching is enabled on the stage.

After a canary release is enabled, the deployment stage cannot be associated with another non-canary release deployment until the canary release is disabled and the canary settings removed from the stage.

When you enable API execution logging, the canary release has its own logs and metrics generated for all canary requests. They are reported to a production stage CloudWatch Logs log group as well as a canary-specific CloudWatch Logs log group. The same applies to access logging. The separate canary-specific logs are helpful to validate new API changes and decide whether to accept the changes and promote the canary release to the production stage, or to discard the changes and revert the canary release from the production stage.

The production stage execution log group is named `API-Gateway-Execution-Logs/{rest-api-id}/{stage-name}` and the canary release execution log group is named `API-Gateway-Execution-Logs/{rest-api-id}/{stage-name}/Canary`. For access logging, you must create a new log group or choose an existing one. The canary release access log group name has the `/Canary` suffix appended to the selected log group name.

A canary release can use the stage cache, if enabled, to store responses and use cached entries to return results to the next canary requests, within a pre-configured time-to-live (TTL) period.

In a canary release deployment, the production release and canary release of the API can be associated with the same version or with different versions. When they are associated with different versions, responses for production and canary requests are cached separately and the stage cache returns...
corresponding results for production and canary requests. When the production release and canary release are associated with the same deployment, the stage cache uses a single cache key for both types of requests and returns the same response for the same requests from the production release and canary release.

Create a Canary Release Deployment

You create a canary release deployment when deploying the API with canary settings as an additional input to the deployment creation operation.

You can also create a canary release deployment from an existing non-canary deployment by making a `stage:update` request to add the canary settings on the stage.

When creating a non-canary release deployment, you can specify a non-existing stage name. API Gateway creates one if the specified stage does not exist. However, you cannot specify any non-existing stage name when creating a canary release deployment. You will get an error and API Gateway will not create any canary release deployment.

You can create a canary release deployment in API Gateway using the API Gateway console, AWS CLI, an AWS SDK, and the API Gateway REST API.

Topics

- Create a Canary Deployment Using the API Gateway Console (p. 379)
- Create a Canary Deployment Using the AWS CLI (p. 380)
- Create a Canary Deployment Using the API Gateway API (p. 383)

Create a Canary Deployment Using the API Gateway Console

To use the API Gateway console to create a canary release deployment, follow the instructions below:

To create the initial canary release deployment

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console.
2. Choose an existing API or create a new API.
3. Change the API, if necessary, or set up desired API methods and integrations.
4. Choose **Deploy API** from the **Actions** drop-down menu. Follow the on-screen instructions in **Deploy API** to deploy the API to a new stage.

So far, you have deployed the API to a production release stage. Next, you configure canary settings on the stage and, if needed, also enable caching, set stage variables, or configure API execution or access logs.

5. To enable API caching, choose the **Settings** tab in **Stage Editor** and follow the on-screen instructions. For more information, see the section called “Enable API Caching” (p. 358).
6. To set stage variables, choose the **Stage Variables** tab in **Stage Editor** and follow the on-screen instructions to add or modify stage variables. For more information, see the section called “Set up Stage Variables” (p. 365).
7. To configure execution or access logging, choose the **Logs** tab in **Stage Editor** and follow the on-screen instructions. For more information, see Set up API Logging in API Gateway (p. 362).
8. In **Stage Editor**, choose the **Canary** tab and then choose **Create Canary**.
9. Under the **Stage’s Request Distribution** section, choose the pencil icon next to **Percentage of requests to Canary** and type a number (for example, 5.0) in the input text field. Choose the check mark icon to save the setting.
10. If needed, choose Add Stage Variables to add them under the Canary Stage Variables section to override existing stage variables or add new stage variables for the canary release.

11. If desired, choose Enable use of stage cache to enable caching for the canary release and save your choice. The cache is not available for the canary release until API caching is enabled.

After the canary release is initialized on the deployment stage, you change the API and want to test the changes. You can redeploy the API to the same stage so that both the updated version and the base version are accessible through the same stage. The following steps describe how to do that.

To deploy the latest API version to a canary

1. With each update of the API, choose Deploy API from the Actions drop-down menu next to the Resources list.
2. In Deploy API, choose the now canary-enabled stage from the Deployment stage drop-down list.
3. Optionally, type a description in Deployment description.
4. Choose Deploy to push the latest API version to the canary release.
5. If desired, reconfigure the stage settings, logs, or canary settings, as describe in To create the initial canary release deployment (p. 379).

As a result, the canary release points to the latest version while the production release still points to the initial version of the API. The canarySettings now has a new deploymentId value, whereas the stage still has the initial deploymentId value. Behind the scenes, the console calls stage:update.

Create a Canary Deployment Using the AWS CLI

First create a baseline deployment with two stage variables, but without any canary:

```bash
aws apigateway create-deployment
  --variables sv0=val0,sv1=val1
  --rest-api-id 4wk1k4onj3
  --stage-name prod
```

The command returns a representation of the resulting Deployment, similar to the following:

```json
{
  "id": "du4ot1",
  "createdDate": 1511379050
}
```

The resulting deployment id identifies a snapshot (or version) of the API.

Now create a canary deployment on the prod stage:

```bash
aws apigateway create-deployment
  --canary-settings '{
    "percentTraffic":10.5,
    "useStageCache":false,
    "stageVariableOverrides":{
      "sv1":"val2",
      "sv2":"val3"
    }
  }
  --rest-api-id 4wk1k4onj3
  --stage-name prod
```
If the specified stage (prod) does not exist, the preceding command returns an error. Otherwise, it returns the newly created Deployment resource representation similar to the following:

```
{
  "id": "a6rox0",
  "createdDate": 1511379433
}
```

The resulting deployment id identifies the test version of the API for the canary release. As a result, the associated stage is canary-enabled. You can view this stage representation by calling the get-stage command, similar to the following:

```
aws apigateway get-stage --rest-api-id 4wk1k4onj3 --stage-name prod
```

The following shows a representation of the Stage as the output of the command:

```
{
  "stageName": "prod",
  "variables": {
    "sv0": "val0",
    "sv1": "val1"
  },
  "cacheClusterEnabled": false,
  "cacheClusterStatus": "NOT_AVAILABLE",
  "deploymentId": "du4ot1",
  "lastUpdatedDate": 1511379433,
  "createdDate": 1511379050,
  "canarySettings": {
    "percentTraffic": 10.5,
    "deploymentId": "a6rox0",
    "useStageCache": false,
    "stageVariableOverrides": {
      "sv2": "val3",
      "sv1": "val2"
    }
  },
  "methodSettings": {}
}
```

In this example, the base version of the API will use the stage variables of \{"sv0":val0", "sv1":val1"\}, while the test version uses the stage variables of \{"sv1":val2", "sv2":val3"\}. Both the production release and canary release use the same stage variable of sv1, but with different values, val1 and val2, respectively. The stage variable of sv0 is used solely in the production release and the stage variable of sv2 is used in the canary release only.

You can create a canary release deployment from an existing regular deployment by updating the stage to enable a canary. To demonstrate this, create a regular deployment first:

```
aws apigateway create-deployment \
  --variables sv0=val0,sv1=val1 \
  --rest-api-id 4wk1k4onj3 \
  --stage-name beta
```

The command returns a representation of the base version deployment:

```
{
  "id": "cifeiw",
  "createdDate": 1511380879
}
```
The associated beta stage does not have any canary settings:

```json
{
  "stageName": "beta",
  "variables": {
    "sv0": "val0",
    "sv1": "val1"
  },
  "cacheClusterEnabled": false,
  "cacheClusterStatus": "NOTAVAILABLE",
  "deploymentId": "cifeiw",
  "lastUpdatedDate": 1511380879,
  "createdDate": 1511380879,
  "methodSettings": {}
}
```

Now, create a new canary release deployment by attaching a canary on the stage:

```
aws apigateway update-stage  \
  --patch-operations '([{ \
    "op":"replace", \
    "path":"/canarySettings/percentTraffic", \
    "value":"10.5" \
  }),{ \
    "op":"replace", \
    "path":"/canarySettings/useStageCache", \
    "value":"false" \
  }),{ \
    "op":"replace", \
    "path":"/canarySettings/stageVariableOverrides/sv1", \
    "value":"val2" \
  }),{ \
    "op":"replace", \
    "path":"/canarySettings/stageVariableOverrides/sv2", \
    "value":"val3"
  }]'  \
  --rest-api-id 4wk1k4onj3  \
  --stage-name beta
```

A representation of the updated stage looks like this:

```json
{
  "stageName": "beta",
  "variables": {
    "sv0": "val0",
    "sv1": "val1"
  },
  "cacheClusterEnabled": false,
  "cacheClusterStatus": "NOTAVAILABLE",
  "deploymentId": "cifeiw",
  "lastUpdatedDate": 1511381930,
  "createdDate": 1511380879,
  "canarySettings": {
    "percentTraffic": 10.5,
    "deploymentId": "cifeiw",
    "useStageCache": false,
    "stageVariableOverrides": {
      "sv2": "val3",
      "sv1": "val2"
    }
  }
}
```
Because we just enabled a canary on an existing version of the API, both the production release (Stage) and canary release (canarySettings) point to the same deployment, i.e., the same version (deploymentId) of the API. After you change the API and deploy it to this stage again, the new version will be in the canary release, while the base version remains in the production release. This is manifested in the stage evolution when the deploymentId in the canary release is updated to the new deploymentId and the deploymentId in the production release remains unchanged.

Create a Canary Deployment Using the API Gateway API

To use the API Gateway REST API to deploy your API as a canary release, call deployment:create as follows:

```plaintext
POST /restapis/fugvjdxtri/deployments HTTP/1.1
Content-Type: application/json
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
X-Amz-Date: 20171103T175605Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={SECRET_ACCESS_KEY}/20160603/us-east-1/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature={SIGV4_SIGNATURE}

{
  "stageName" : "prod",
  "stageDescription" : "Production stage",
  "description" : "Production deployment with canary",
  "variables" : {
    "sv1" : "val1"
  },
  "canarySettings": {
    "percentTraffic": 10.5,
    "useStageCache": false,
    "stageVariableOverrides": {
      "sv1": "val2",
      "sv2": "val3"
    }
  }
}
```

If successful, and if this is the first time to deploy the API to the stage, you get a brand new canary release deployment (nfcn0x):

```plaintext
{
  "_links": {
    ...
  },
  "createdDate": "2017-11-22T00:54:28Z",
  "description": "Production deployment with canary",
  "id": "nfcn0x"
}
```

In this deployment, both the stage and the canary have the same deploymentId. That is, they both reference the same API version.

In any subsequent API deployments to the same stage, you must always specify canarySettings as an input, until the canary is disabled on that stage. For example, when you call the previous deployment:create request the second time, you get a new deployment (eh1sby) as the result:
The newer deploymentId value is set on the canarySettings and the canary represents the new API version, while the initial deploymentId remains associated with the stage that represents the initial API version. You can verify this by calling the GET /restapis/fugvjdxtre/stages/prod request and examining the successful response payload:

```
{
    "_links": {
        ..., 
        "createdDate": "2017-11-22T01:24:23Z",
        "description": "Production deployment with canary",
        "id": "eh1sby"
    }
}
```

For a regular production deployment without a canary enabled on the associated stage, you can turn the deployment into a canary release deployment by enabling the canary on the stage. To do this, call stage:update, as shown in the following, assuming the original deployment ID is ghdx4w:

```
PATCH /restapis/4wk1k4onj3/stages/prod HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
```

```
{
    "_links": {
        ..., 
        "accessLogSettings": {
            ...
        },
        "cacheClusterEnabled": false,
        "cacheClusterStatus": "NOT_AVAILABLE",
        "canarySettings": {
            "deploymentId": "eh1sby",
            "useStageCache": false,
            "stageVariableOverrides": {
                "sv2": "val3",
                "sv1": "val2"
            },
            "percentTraffic": 10.5
        },
        "createdDate": "2017-11-20T04:42:19Z",
        "deploymentId": "nfcn0x",
        "lastUpdatedDate": "2017-11-22T00:54:28Z",
        "methodSettings": {
            "*/*": {
                "dataTraceEnabled": true,
                "throttlingRateLimit": 10000,
                "cacheTtlInSeconds": 300,
                "cachingEnabled": false,
                "requireAuthorizationForCacheControl": true,
                "metricsEnabled": true,
                "loggingLevel": "INFO",
                "unauthorizedCacheControlHeaderStrategy": "SUCCEED_WITH_RESPONSE_HEADER",
                "throttlingBurstLimit": 5000,
                "cacheDataEncrypted": false
            }
        },
        "stageName": "canary",
        "variables": {
            "sv1": "val1"
        }
    }
}
```
Because the original deployment is without a canary release, we set the `/canarySettings/deploymentId` value to the `deploymentId` (“ghdx4w”) associated with the deployment stage.

The successful response returns a payload similar to the following:

```json
{
   "_links": {
      ...
   },
   "accessLogSettings": {
      ...
   },
   "cacheClusterEnabled": false,
   "cacheClusterStatus": "NOT_AVAILABLE",
   "canarySettings": {
      "deploymentId": "ghdx4w",
      "useStageCache": false,
      "stageVariableOverrides": null,
      "percentTraffic": 15
   },
   "createdDate": "2017-11-20T04:42:19Z",
   "deploymentId": "ghdx4w",
   "lastUpdatedDate": "2017-11-21T23:24:31Z",
   "methodSettings": {
      "/*
         "dataTraceEnabled": true,
         "throttlingRateLimit": 10000,
         "cacheTtlInSeconds": 300,
         "cachingEnabled": false,
         "requireAuthorizationForCacheControl": true,
         "metricsEnabled": true,
         "loggingLevel": "INFO",
         "unauthorizedCacheControlHeaderStrategy": "SUCCEED_WITH_RESPONSE_HEADER",
         "throttlingBurstLimit": 5000,
         "cacheDataEncrypted": false
      
      "",
      
      "stageName": "prod"
   }
}
```

With a canary enabled on the stage, the deployment becomes a canary release deployment. The stage cannot be associated with any non-canary deployment until the canary settings are removed from the stage.
Update a Canary Release

After a canary release is deployed, you may want to adjust the percentage of the canary traffic or enable or disable the use of a stage cache to optimize the test performance. You can also modify stage variables used in the canary release when the execution context is updated. To make such updates, call the `stage:update` operation with new values on `canarySettings`.

You can update a canary release using the API Gateway console, the AWS CLI `update-stage` command, an AWS SDK, and the API Gateway REST API's `stage:update` link-relation.

Topics
- Update a Canary Release Using the API Gateway Console (p. 386)
- Update a Canary Release Using the AWS CLI (p. 386)
- Update a Canary Release Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 387)

Update a Canary Release Using the API Gateway Console

To use the API Gateway console to update existing canary settings on a stage, do the following:

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose an existing API in the primary navigation pane.
2. Choose Stages under the API and then choose an existing stage under the Stages list to open the Stage Editor.
3. Choose the Canary tab in the Stage Editor.
4. Update *Percentage of requests directed to Canary* by increasing or decreasing the percentage number between 0.0 and 100.0, inclusive.
5. Update *Canary Stage Variables*, including adding, removing, or modifying a desired stage variable.
6. Update the *Enable use of stage cache* option by selecting or clearing the check box.
7. Save the changes.

Update a Canary Release Using the AWS CLI

To use the AWS CLI to update a canary, call the `update-stage` command.

To enable or disable the use of a stage cache for the canary, call the `update-stage` command as follows:

```
aws apigateway update-stage          
   --rest-api-id {rest-api-id}      
   --stage-name '{stage-name}'      
   --patch-operations op=replace,path=/canarySettings/useStageCache,value=true
```

To adjust the canary traffic percentage, call `update-stage` to replace the `/canarySettings/percentTraffic` value on the stage:

```
aws apigateway update-stage          
   --rest-api-id {rest-api-id}      
   --stage-name '{stage-name}'      
   --patch-operations op=replace,path=/canarySettings/percentTraffic,value=25.0
```

To update canary stage variables, including adding, replacing, or removing a canary stage variable:

```
aws apigateway update-stage          
```

386
You can update all of the above by combining the operations into a single `patch-operations` value:

```bash
aws apigateway update-stage
  --rest-api-id {rest-api-id}
  --stage-name '{stage-name}'
  --patch-operations '[[
    "op": "replace",
    "path": "/canarySettings/useStageCache",
    "value": "true"
  ], {
    "op": "replace",
    "path": "/canarySettings/stageVariableOverides/var1"
  }, {
    "op": "replace",
    "path": "/canarySettings/stageVariableOverides/var2",
    "value": "val4"
  }, {
    "op": "replace",
    "path": "/canarySettings/stageVariableOverides/newVar",
    "value": "newVal"
  }]
```

Update a Canary Release Using the API Gateway REST API

To enable or disable the use of a stage cache for the canary, call `stage:update` as follows:

```json
PATCH /restapis/{rest-api-id}/stages/{stage-name}
{
  "patchOperations": [{
    "op": "replace",
    "path": "/canarySettings/useStageCache",
    "value": "true"
  }
}
```

To adjust the canary traffic percentage, call `stage:update` to replace the `/canarySettings/percentTraffic` value on the `stage`.

```json
PATCH /restapis/{rest-api-id}/stages/{stage-name}
{
  "patchOperations": [{
    "op": "replace",
    "path": "/canarySettings/percentTraffic",
    "value": "20.0"
  }
}
```
To update canary stage variables, including adding, changing, or removing the canary stage variable, use the following example:

```
PATCH /restapis/{rest-api-id}/stages/{stage-name}
{
    "patchOperations": [{
        "op": "replace",
        "path": "/canarySettings/stageVariableOverrides/newVar",
        "value": "newVal"
    }, {
        "op": "replace",
        "path": "/canarySettings/stageVariableOverrides/var2",
        "value": "val4"
    }, {
        "op": "remove",
        "path": "/canary/overriddenStageVariables/var1",
    }]
}
```

You can combine all of the above operations into a single PATCH request.

## Promote a Canary Release

To promote a canary release makes it available in the production stage the API version under testing. The operation involves the following tasks:

- Reset the deployment ID of the stage with the deployment ID settings of the canary. This updates the API snapshot of the stage with the snapshot of the canary, making the test version the production release as well.
- Update stage variables with canary stage variables, if any. This updates the API execution context of the stage with that of the canary. Without this update, the new API version may produce unexpected results if the test version uses different stage variables or different values of existing stage variables.
- Set the percentage of canary traffic to 0.0%.

Promoting a canary release does not disable the canary on the stage. To disable a canary, you must remove the canary settings on the stage.

### Topics
- Promote a Canary Release Using the API Gateway Console (p. 388)
- Promote a Canary Release Using the AWS CLI (p. 389)
- Promote a Canary Release Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 390)

## Promote a Canary Release Using the API Gateway Console

To use the API Gateway console to promote a canary release deployment, do the following:

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose an existing API in the primary navigation pane.
2. Choose **Stages** under the API and then choose an existing stage under the **Stages** list to open the **Stage Editor**.
3. Choose the **Canary** tab in the **Stage Editor**.
4. Choose **Promote Canary**.
5. Confirm changes to be made and choose **Update**.

After the promotion, the production release references the same API version (**deploymentId**) as the canary release. You can verify this using the AWS CLI or API Gateway REST API. For example, see the section called “Promote a Canary Release Using the AWS CLI” (p. 389) or the section called “Promote a Canary Release Using the API Gateway REST API” (p. 390).

**Promote a Canary Release Using the AWS CLI**

To promote a canary release to the production release using the AWS CLI commands, call the `update-stage` command to copy the canary-associated `deploymentId` to the stage-associated `deploymentId`, to reset the canary traffic percentage to zero (0.0), and, to copy any canary-bound stage variables to the corresponding stage-bound ones.

Suppose we have a canary release deployment, described by a stage similar to the following:

```json
{
   "_links": {  
       ...
   },
   "accessLogSettings": {  
       ...
   },
   "cacheClusterEnabled": false,
   "cacheClusterStatus": "NOT_AVAILABLE",
   "canarySettings": {
       "deploymentId": "eh1sby",
       "useStageCache": false,
       "stageVariableOverrides": {
           "sv2": "val3",
           "sv1": "val2"
       },
       "percentTraffic": 10.5
   },
   "createdDate": "2017-11-20T04:42:19Z",
   "deploymentId": "nfcn0x",
   "lastUpdatedDate": "2017-11-22T00:54:28Z",
   "methodSettings": {
       ...
   },
   "stageName": "prod",
   "variables": {
       "sv1": "val1"
   }
}
```

We call the following `update-stage` request to promote it:

```
aws apigateway update-stage
   --rest-api-id {rest-api-id}  
   --stage-name '{stage-name}'
   --patch-operations '[[
       "op": "replace",
       "value": "0.0"
       "path": "/canarySettings/percentTraffic",
   ],{
   ...
```
After the promotion, the stage now looks like this:

```json
{
  "_links": {
    ...
  },
  "accessLogSettings": {
    ...
  },
  "cacheClusterEnabled": false,
  "cacheClusterStatus": "NOTAVAILABLE",
  "canarySettings": {
    "deploymentId": "eh1sby",
    "useStageCache": false,
    "stageVariableOverrides": {
      "sv2": "val3",
      "sv1": "val2"
    },
    "percentTraffic": 0
  },
  "createdDate": "2017-11-20T04:42:19Z",
  "deploymentId": "eh1sby",
  "lastUpdatedDate": "2017-11-22T05:29:47Z",
  "methodSettings": {
    ...
  },
  "stageName": "prod",
  "variables": {
    "sv2": "val3",
    "sv1": "val2"
  }
}
```

As you can see, promoting a canary release to the stage does not disable the canary and the deployment remains to be a canary release deployment. To make it a regular production release deployment, you must disable the canary settings. For more information about how to disable a canary release deployment, see the section called “Disable a Canary Release” (p. 392).

## Promote a Canary Release Using the API Gateway REST API

To promote a canary release to the production release using the API Gateway REST API, call the `stage:update` request to copy the canary-associated `deploymentId` to the stage-associated `deploymentId`, to reset the canary traffic percentage to zero (0.0), and, to copy any canary-bound stage variables to the corresponding stage-bound ones.

Suppose we have a canary release deployment, described by a stage similar to the following:

```json
{
  "_links": {
    ...
  },
  "accessLogSettings": {
    ...
  },
  "canarySettings": {
    "deploymentId": "eh1sby",
    "useStageCache": false,
    "stageVariableOverrides": {
      "sv2": "val3",
      "sv1": "val2"
    },
    "percentTraffic": 0
  }
}
```
We call the following `stage: update` request to promote it:

```
PATCH /restapis/4wk1k4onj3/stages/prod HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: 20171121T232431Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={SECRET_ACCESS_KEY}/20171121/us-east-1/
apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature={SIGV4_SIGNATURE}

{
  "patchOperations": [
    {
      "op": "copy",
      "path": "/deploymentId",
      "from": "/canarySettings/deploymentId"
    },
    {
      "op": "replace",
      "path": "/canarySettings/percentTraffic",
      "value": "0.0"
    },
    {
      "op": "copy",
      "path": "/variables",
      "from": "/canarySettings/stageVariableOverrides"
  }
}
```

After the promotion, the stage now looks like this:

```
{
  ":links": {
    "...",
  },
  "accessLogSettings": {
    "..."
  }
}
```
As you can see, promoting a canary release to the stage does not disable the canary and the deployment remains to be a canary release deployment. To make it a regular production release deployment, you must disable the canary settings. For more information about how to disable a canary release deployment, see the section called “Disable a Canary Release” (p. 392).

Disable a Canary Release

To disable a canary release deployment is to set the `canarySettings` to null to remove it from the stage.

You can disable a canary release deployment using the API Gateway console, AWS CLI, an AWS SDK, or the API Gateway REST API.

**Topics**

- Disable a Canary Release Using the API Gateway Console (p. 392)
- Disable a Canary Release Using the AWS CLI (p. 393)
- Disable a Canary Release Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 393)

**Disable a Canary Release Using the API Gateway Console**

To use the API Gateway console to disable a canary release deployment, use the following steps:

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose an existing API in the primary navigation pane.
2. Choose **Stages** under the API and then choose an existing stage under the **Stages** list to open the **Stage Editor**.
3. Choose the **Canary** tab in the **Stage Editor**.
4. Choose **Delete Canary**.
5. Confirm you want to delete the canary by choosing **Delete**.

As a result, the `canarySettings` property becomes null and is removed from the deployment stage. You can verify this using the AWS CLI or the API Gateway REST API. For example, see the section called
“Disable a Canary Release Using the AWS CLI” (p. 393) or the section called “Disable a Canary Release Using the API Gateway REST API” (p. 393).

Disable a Canary Release Using the AWS CLI

To use the AWS CLI to disable a canary release deployment, call the `update-stage` command as follows:

```bash
aws apigateway update-stage
    --rest-api-id 4wk1k4onj3
    --stage-name canary
    --patch-operations '[["op":"remove","path":"/canarySettings"]]
```

The successful response returns an output similar to this:

```
{
  "stageName": "prod",
  "accessLogSettings": {
    ...
  },
  "cacheClusterEnabled": false,
  "cacheClusterStatus": "NOT_AVAILABLE",
  "deploymentId": "nfcn0x",
  "lastUpdatedDate": 1511309280,
  "createdDate": 1511152939,
  "methodSettings": {
    ...
  }
}
```

As shown in the output, the `canarySettings` property is no longer present in the `stage` of a canary-disabled deployment.

Disable a Canary Release Using the API Gateway REST API

To use the API Gateway REST API to disable a canary release deployment, make the `stage: update` request as follows:

```
PATCH /restapis/4wk1k4onj3/stages/prod HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/json
X-Amz-Date: 20171121T230325Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={SECRET_ACCESS_KEY}/20171121/us-east-1/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature={SIGV4_SIGNATURE}

{
  "patchOperations": [
    {
      "op": "remove",
      "path": "/canarySettings"
    }
  ]
}
```

The successful response returns an output similar to this:

```
{
}
```
"stageName": "prod",
"accessLogSettings": {
  ...
},
"cacheClusterEnabled": false,
"cacheClusterStatus": "NOT_AVAILABLE",
"deploymentId": "nfcn0x",
"lastUpdatedDate": 1511309280,
"createdDate": 1511152939,
"methodSettings": {
  ...
}
}

As shown in the output, the `canarySettings` property is no longer present in the `stage` of a canary-disabled deployment.

Export an API from API Gateway

Once you created and configured an API in API Gateway, using the API Gateway console or otherwise, you can export it to a Swagger file using the API Gateway Export API, which is part of the Amazon API Gateway Control Service. You have options to include the API Gateway integration extensions, as well as the Postman extensions, in the exported Swagger definition file.

You cannot export an API if its payloads are not of the `application/json` type. If you try, you will get an error response stating that JSON body models are not found.

Request to Export an API

With the Export API, you export an existing API by submitting a GET request, specifying the to-be-exported API as part of URL paths. The request URL is of the following format:

```
https://<host>/restapis/<restapi_id>/stages/<stage_name>/exports/swagger
```

You can append the `extensions` query string to specify whether to include API Gateway extensions (with the `integration` value) or Postman extensions (with the `postman` value).

In addition, you can set the `Accept` header to `application/json` or `application/yaml` to receive the API definition output in JSON or YAML format, respectively.

For more information about submitting GET requests using the API Gateway Export API, see Making HTTP Requests.

**Note**

If you define models in your API, they must be for the content type of "application/json" for API Gateway to export the model. Otherwise, API Gateway throws an exception with the "Only found non-JSON body models for ..." error message.

Download API Swagger Definition in JSON

To export and download an API in Swagger definitions in JSON format:
Download API Swagger Definition in YAML

To export and download an API in Swagger definitions in YAML format:

```
GET /restapis/<restapi_id>/stages/<stage_name>/exports/swagger
Host: apigateway.<region>.amazonaws.com
Accept: application/yaml
```

Download API Swagger Definition with Postman Extensions in JSON

To export and download an API in Swagger definitions with the Postman in JSON format:

```
GET /restapis/<restapi_id>/stages/<stage_name>/exports/swagger?extensions=postman
Host: apigateway.<region>.amazonaws.com
Accept: application/json
```

Download API Swagger Definition with API Gateway Integration in YAML

To export and download an API in Swagger definitions with API Gateway integration in YAML format:

```
GET /restapis/<restapi_id>/stages/<stage_name>/exports/swagger?extensions=integrations
Host: apigateway.<region>.amazonaws.com
Accept: application/yaml
```

Export API Using the API Gateway Console

After deploying your API to a stage (p. 352), you can proceed to export the API in the stage to a Swagger file using the API Gateway console.

From the stage configuration page in the API Gateway console, choose the Export tab and then one of the available options (Export as Swagger, Export as Swagger + API Gateway Integrations and Export as Postman) to download your API's Swagger definition.
Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide
Generate SDK of an API

Generate SDK of an API

To call your API in a platform- or language-specific way, you must generate the platform- or language-specific SDK of the API. Currently, API Gateway supports generating an SDK for an API in Java, JavaScript, Java for Android, Objective-C or Swift for iOS, and Ruby.

This section explains how to generate an SDK of an API Gateway API and demonstrates how to use the generated SDK in a Java app, a Java for Android app, Objective-C and Swift for iOS apps, and a JavaScript app.

To facilitate the discussion, we use this API Gateway API (p. 402), which exposes this Simple Calculator (p. 400) Lambda function.

Before proceeding, create or import the API and deploy it at least once in API Gateway. For instructions, see Deploying an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 350).

Topics
- Generate SDKs for an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 396)
- Generate SDKs for an API Using AWS CLI Commands (p. 399)
- Simple Calculator Lambda Function (p. 400)
- Simple Calculator API in API Gateway (p. 402)
- Simple Calculator API Swagger Definition (p. 407)

Generate SDKs for an API Using the API Gateway Console

To generate a platform- or language-specific SDK for an API in API Gateway, you must first create, test, and deploy the API in a stage. For illustration purposes, we use the Simple Calculator (p. 407) API as an example to generate language-specific or platform-specific SDKs throughout this section. For instructions on how to create, test, and deploy this API, see Create the Simple Calculator API (p. 402).

Topics
- Generate the Java SDK of an API (p. 397)
- Generate the Android SDK of an API (p. 397)
- Generate the iOS SDK of an API (p. 398)
• Generate the JavaScript SDK of an API (p. 398)
• Generate the Ruby SDK of an API (p. 399)

Generate the Java SDK of an API

To generate the Java SDK of an API in API Gateway
2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the stage, choose Stages.
3. In the Stages pane, choose the name of the stage.
4. On the SDK Generation tab, for Platform, choose Java and do the following:
   a. For Service Name, specify the name of your SDK. For example, SimpleCalcSdk. This becomes the name of your SDK client class. The name corresponds to the <name> tag under <project> in the pom.xml file, which is in the SDK's project folder. Do not include hyphens.
   b. For Java Package Name, specify a package name for your SDK. For example, examples.aws.apig.simpleCalc.sdk. This package name is used as the namespace of your SDK library. Do not include hyphens.
   c. For Java Build System, type maven or gradle to specify the build system.
   d. For Java Group Id, type a group identifier for your SDK project. For example, my-apig-api-examples. This identifier corresponds to the <groupId> tag under <project> in the pom.xml file, which is in the SDK's project folder.
   e. For Java Artifact Id, type an artifact identifier for your SDK project. For example, simple-calc-sdk. This identifier corresponds to the <artifactId> tag under <project> in the pom.xml file, which is in the SDK's project folder.
   f. For Java Artifact Version, type a version identifier string. For example, 1.0.0. This version identifier corresponds to the <version> tag under <project> in the pom.xml file, which is in the SDK's project folder.
   g. For Source Code License Text, type the license text of your source code, if any.
5. Choose Generate SDK, and then follow the on-screen directions to download the SDK generated by API Gateway.
6. Follow the instructions in Use a Java SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 440) to use the generated SDK.

Every time you update an API, you must redeploy the API and regenerate the SDK to have the updates included.

Generate the Android SDK of an API

To generate the Android SDK of an API in API Gateway
2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the stage, choose Stages.
3. In the Stages pane, choose the name of the stage.
4. On the SDK Generation tab, for Platform, choose the Android platform.
   a. For Group ID, type the unique identifier for the corresponding project. This is used in the pom.xml file (for example, com.mycompany).
   b. For Invoker package, type the namespace for the generated client classes (for example, com.mycompany.clientsdk).
Generate SDKs for an API Using the API Gateway Console

5. Choose Generate SDK, and then follow the on-screen directions to download the SDK generated by API Gateway.

6. Follow the instructions in Use an Android SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 443) to use the generated SDK.

Every time you update an API, you must redeploy the API and regenerate the SDK to have the updates included.

Generate the iOS SDK of an API

To generate the iOS SDK of an API in API Gateway

2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the stage, choose Stages.
3. In the Stages pane, choose the name of the stage.
4. On the SDK Generation tab, for Platform, choose the iOS (Objective-C) or iOS (Swift) platform.
   - Type a unique prefix in the Prefix box.

   The effect of prefix is as follows: if you assign, for example, SIMPLE_CALC as the prefix for the SDK of the SimpleCalc (p. 402) API with Input, Output, and Result models, the generated SDK will contain the SIMPLE_CALCSimpleCalcClient class that encapsulates the API, including the method requests/responses. In addition, the generated SDK will contain the SIMPLE_CALCInput, SIMPLE_CALCOOutput, and SIMPLE_CALCResult classes to represent the input, output, and results, respectively, to represent the request input and response output. For more information, see Use iOS SDK Generated by API Gateway in Objective-C or Swift (p. 448).

5. Choose Generate SDK, and then follow the on-screen directions to download the SDK generated by API Gateway.

6. Follow the instructions in Use iOS SDK Generated by API Gateway in Objective-C or Swift (p. 448) to use the generated SDK.

Every time you update an API, you must redeploy the API and regenerate the SDK to have the updates included.

Generate the JavaScript SDK of an API

To generate the JavaScript SDK of an API in API Gateway

2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the stage, choose Stages.
3. In the Stages pane, choose the name of the stage.
4. On the SDK Generation tab, for Platform, choose JavaScript.
5. Choose Generate SDK, and then follow the on-screen directions to download the SDK generated by API Gateway.
6. Follow the instructions in Use a JavaScript SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 444) to use the generated SDK.
Every time you update an API, you must redeploy the API and regenerate the SDK to have the updates included.

**Generate the Ruby SDK of an API**

**To generate the Ruby SDK of an API in API Gateway**

2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the stage, choose **Stages**.
3. In the **Stages** pane, choose the name of the stage.
4. On the **SDK Generation** tab, for **Platform**, choose **Ruby**.
   
   a. For **Service Name**, specify the name of your SDK. For example, SimpleCalc. This is used to generate the Ruby Gem namespace of your API. The name must be all letters, (a-zA-Z), without any other special characters or numbers.
   
   b. For **Ruby Gem Name**, specify the name of the Ruby Gem to contain the generated SDK source code for your API. By default it is the lower-cased service name plus the -sdk suffix; for example simplecalc-sdk.
   
   c. For **Ruby Gem Version**, specify a version number for the generated Ruby Gem. By default, it is set to 1.0.0.
5. Choose **Generate SDK**, and then follow the on-screen directions to download the SDK generated by API Gateway.
6. Follow the instructions in Use a Ruby SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 446) to use the generated SDK.

Every time you update an API, you must redeploy the API and regenerate the SDK to have the updates included.

**Generate SDKs for an API Using AWS CLI Commands**

You can use AWS CLI to generate and download an SDK of an API for a supported platform by calling the `get-sdk` command. We demonstrate this for some of the supported platforms in the following.

**Topics**

- Generate and Download the Java for Android SDK Using AWS CLI (p. 399)
- Generate and Download the JavaScript SDK Using AWS CLI (p. 400)
- Generate and Download the Ruby SDK Using AWS CLI (p. 400)

**Generate and Download the Java for Android SDK Using AWS CLI**

To generate and download a Java for Android SDK generated by API Gateway of an API (udpuvvzbkc) at a given stage (test), call the command as follows:

```bash
aws apigateway get-sdk 
   --rest-api-id udpuvvzbkc 
   --stage-name test 
   --sdk-type android 
   --parameters groupId='com.mycompany',
       invokerPackage='com.mycompany.myApiSdk',
       artifactId='myApiSdk',
       artifactVersion='0.0.1'
```

399
Generate and Download the JavaScript SDK Using AWS CLI

To generate and download a JavaScript SDK generated by API Gateway of an API (udpuvvzbkc) at a given stage (test), call the command as follows:

```bash
aws apigateway get-sdk 
  --rest-api-id udpuvvzbkc 
  --stage-name test 
  --sdk-type javascript 
  ~/apps/myApi/myApi-js-sdk.zip
```

Simple Calculator Lambda Function

As an illustration, we will use a Node.js Lambda function that performs the binary operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division.

Topics
- Simple Calculator Lambda Function Input Format (p. 400)
- Simple Calculator Lambda Function Output Format (p. 401)
- Simple Calculator Lambda Function Implementation (p. 401)
- Create the Simple Calculator Lambda Function (p. 401)

Simple Calculator Lambda Function Input Format

This function takes an input of the following format:

```javascript
{ "a": "Number", "b": "Number", "op": "string"}
```
where \( \text{op} \) can be any of \((+, -, *, /, \text{add}, \text{sub}, \text{mul}, \text{div})\).

### Simple Calculator Lambda Function Output Format

When an operation succeeds, it returns the result of the following format:

\[
\{ \ "a": \ "Number", \ "b": \ "Number", \ "op": \ "string", \ "c": \ "Number" \}
\]

where \( c \) holds the result of the calculation.

### Simple Calculator Lambda Function Implementation

The implementation of the Lambda function is as follows:

```javascript
console.log('Loading the Calc function');
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
    console.log('Received event:', JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    if (event.a === undefined || event.b === undefined || event.op === undefined) {
        callback("400 Invalid Input");
    }
    var res = {};
    res.a = Number(event.a);
    res.b = Number(event.b);
    res.op = event.op;
    if (isNaN(event.a) || isNaN(event.b)) {
        callback("400 Invalid Operand");
    }
    switch(event.op) {
        case "+":
        case "add":
            res.c = res.a + res.b;
            break;
        case "-":
        case "sub":
            res.c = res.a - res.b;
            break;
        case "*":
        case "mul":
            res.c = res.a * res.b;
            break;
        case "/":
        case "div":
            res.c = res.b===0 ? NaN : Number(event.a) / Number(event.b);
            break;
        default:
            callback("400 Invalid Operator");
            break;
    }
    callback(null, res);
};
```

### Create the Simple Calculator Lambda Function

You can use the AWS Lambda console at [https://console.aws.amazon.com/lambda/](https://console.aws.amazon.com/lambda/) to create the function, pasting the above code listing into the online code editor as follows.
Simple Calculator API in API Gateway

Our simple calculator API exposes three methods (GET, POST, GET) to invoke the Simple Calculator Lambda Function (p. 400) (calc). A graphical representation of this API is shown as follows:

```javascript
const exports = require('exports');
exports.handler = function(event, context) {
    const result = context.result;
    result.a = Number(event.a);
    result.b = Number(event.b);
    result.op = event.op;
    if (event.a === undefined || event.b === undefined || event.op === undefined) {
        context.fail('400 Invalid Input');
    }

    try {
        result.c = eval(result.a + result.op + result.b);
    } catch (e) {
        context.fail('400 Invalid Input');
    }

    return result;
}
```
These three methods show different ways to supply the input for the backend Lambda function to perform the same operation:

- The GET /?a=...&b=...&op=... method uses the query parameters to specify the input.
- The POST / method uses a JSON payload of \{"a":"Number", "b":"Number", "op":"string"\} to specify the input.
- The GET /{a}//{b}//{op} method uses the path parameters to specify the input.

If not defined, API Gateway generates the corresponding SDK method name by combining the HTTP method and path parts. The root path part (/) is referred to as Api Root. For example, the default Java SDK method name for the API method of GET /?a=...&b=...&op=... is getABOp, the default SDK method name for POST / is postApiRoot, and the default SDK method name for GET /{a}//{b}/ {op} is getABOp. Individual SDKs may customize the convention. Consult the documentation in the generated SDK source for SDK specific method names.

You can, and should, override the default SDK method names by specifying the operationName property on each API method. You can do so when creating the API method or updating the API method using the API Gateway REST API. In the API Swagger definition, you can set the operationId to achieve the same result.

Before showing how to call these methods using an SDK generated by API Gateway for this API, let's recall briefly how to set them up. For detailed instructions, see Creating an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 79). If you're new to API Gateway, see Build an API Gateway API with Lambda Integration (p. 17) first.
Create Models for Input and Output

To specify strongly typed input in the SDK, we create an Input model for the API:

Similarly, to describe the response body data type, we create the following models in the API Gateway:

```
{
    "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
        "c": {"type": "number"}
    },
    "title": "Output"
}
```

and

```
{
    "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
        "input": {
            "$ref": "https://apigateway.amazonaws.com/restapis/t7dve4zn36/models/Input"
        },
        "output": {
            "$ref": "https://apigateway.amazonaws.com/restapis/t7dve4zn36/models/Output"
        }
    },
    "title": "Result"
}
```

Set Up GET / Method Query Parameters

For the GET /?a=..&b=..&op=.. method, the query parameters are declared in Method Request:
Set Up Data Model for the Payload as Input to the Backend

For the POST / method, we create the Input model and add it to the method request to define the shape of input data.
Set Up Data Model for the Result Output from the Backend

For all three methods, we create the `Result` model and add it to the method's `Method Response` to define the shape of output returned by the Lambda function.

With this model, your API customers can parse a successful output by reading properties of a `Result` object. Without this model, customers would be required to create dictionary object to represent the JSON output.
With this model, your API customers can call the SDK to specify the input by instantiating an `Input` object. Without this model, your customers would be required to create dictionary object to represent the JSON input to the Lambda function.

In addition, you can also create and set up the API following the Swagger API definitions (p. 407).

**Simple Calculator API Swagger Definition**

The following is the Swagger definition of the simple calculator API. You can import it into your account. However, you need to reset the resource-based permissions on the Lambda function (p. 400) after the import. To do so, re-select the Lambda function that you created in your account from the Integration Request in the API Gateway console. This will cause the API Gateway console to reset the required permissions. Alternatively, you can use AWS Command Line Interface for Lambda command of `add-permission`.

```json
{
  "swagger": "2.0",
  "info": {
    "version": "2016-09-29T20:27:30Z",
    "title": "SimpleCalc"
  },
  "host": "t6dve4zn25.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com",
  "basePath": "/demo",
  "schemes": ["https"],
  "paths": {
    ": \{":
      "get": {
        "consumes": [
          "application/json"
        ],
        "produces": []
      }
  }
}
```
"application/json",
"parameters": [
  {
    "name": "op",
    "in": "query",
    "required": false,
    "type": "string"
  },
  {
    "name": "a",
    "in": "query",
    "required": false,
    "type": "string"
  },
  {
    "name": "b",
    "in": "query",
    "required": false,
    "type": "string"
  }
],
"responses": {
  "200": {
    "description": "200 response",
    "schema": {
      "$ref": "#/definitions/Result"
    }
  }
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "requestTemplates": {
    "application/json": "#set($inputRoot = $input.path('$.\n{"a": "$input.params('a')",\n  "b": "$input.params('b')",\n  "op": "$input.params('op')"\n})\n"},
  "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_templates",
  "httpMethod": "POST",
  "responses": {
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200",
      "responseTemplates": {
        "application/json": "#set($inputRoot = $input.path('$.\n{"input":>{{\n  "a": "$inputRoot.a",\n  "b": "$inputRoot.b",\n  "op": "$inputRoot.op"\n}},\n  "output": {{\n    "c": "$inputRoot.c\n  }}\n})}
      }
    }
  }
},
"type": "aws"
},
"post": {
  "consumes": [
    "application/json"
  ],
  "produces": [
    "application/json"
  ],
  "parameters": [
    {
      "in": "body",
      "name": "Input",
      "required": true,
      "schema": {
        "$ref": "#/definitions/Input"}


},

"/\{a\}": {
  "x-amazon-apigateway-any-method": {
    "consumes": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "produces": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "parameters": [
      {
        "name": "a",
        "in": "path",
        "required": true,
        "type": "string"
      }
    ],
    "responses": {
      "404": {
        "description": "404 response"
      }
    },
    "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
      "requestTemplates": {
        "application/json": "\{\"status Code\": 200\}"},
      "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
      "responses": {
        "default": {
          "statusCode": "404",
          "responseTemplates": {
            "application/json": "\{ \"Message\": \"Can't $context.httpMethod $context.resourcePath\" \}"
          }
        }
      },
      "type": "mock"
    }
  }
}

409
"/{a}/\{b\}/\{op\}": {
  "get": {
    "consumes": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "produces": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "parameters": [
      { "name": "a", "in": "path", "required": true, "type": "string" },
      { "name": "b", "in": "path", "required": true, "type": "string" }
    ],
    "responses": {
      "404": {
        "description": "404 response"
      }
    },
    "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
      "requestTemplates": {
        "application/json": "\"statusCode\": 200\"
      },
      "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
      "responses": {
        "default": {
          "statusCode": "404",
          "responseTemplates": {
            "application/json": "\"Message\": \"Can't \$context.httpMethod \$context.resourcePath\"\""
          }
        }
      },
      "type": "mock"
    }
  }
}
"required": true,
"type": "string"
},
{
"name": "op",
"in": "path",
"required": true,
"type": "string"
}
],
"responses": {
"200": {
"description": "200 response",
"schema": {
"$ref": "#/definitions/Result"
}
}
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
"requestTemplates": {
"application/json": "#set($inputRoot = $input.path('#'))\n{\n  "a" : $input.params('a'),\n  "b" : $input.params('b'),\n  "op" : $input.params('op')\n}\n",
"passthroughBehavior": "when_no_templates",
"httpMethod": "POST",
"responses": {
"default": {
"statusCode": "200",
"responseTemplates": {
"application/json": "#set($inputRoot = $input.path('#'))\n{\n  "input" : \n  {\n    "a" : $inputRoot.a,\n    "b" : $inputRoot.b,\n    "op" : $inputRoot.op\n  },\n  "output" : \n  {\n    "c" : $inputRoot.c\n  }\n}\n",
"type": "aws"
}
}
},
"definitions": {
"Input": {
"type": "object",
"properties": {
"a": {
"type": "number"
},
"b": {
"type": "number"
},
"op": {
"type": "string"
}
},
"title": "Input"
},
"Output": {
"type": "object",
"properties": {
"c": {
"type": "number"
}
},
"title": "Output"
Set up Custom Domain Name for an API in API Gateway

After deploying your API, you (and your customers) can invoke the API using the default base URL of the following format:

https://api-id.execute-api.region.amazonaws.com/stage

where api-id is generated by ABP, region is specified by you when creating the API and stage is specify by you when deploying the API.

The host name portion of the URL (i.e., api-id.execute-api.region.amazonaws.com) refers to an API endpoint, which can be edge-optimized or regional. The default API endpoint can be difficult to recall and not user-friendly. To provide a simpler and more intuitive URL for your API users, you can set up a custom domain name (e.g., api.example.com) as the API's host name and choose a base path (e.g., myservice) to map the alternative URL to this API. The more user-friendly API base URL now becomes:

https://api.example.com/myservice

If you do not set any base mapping under a custom domain name, the resulting API's base URL is the same as the custom domain (e.g., https://api.example.com). In this case, the custom domain name cannot support more than one API.

When you deploy an edge-optimized API, API Gateway sets up an Amazon CloudFront distribution and a DNS record to map the API domain name to the CloudFront distribution domain name. Requests for the API are then routed to API Gateway through the mapped CloudFront distribution.

When you create a custom domain name for an edge-optimized API, API Gateway sets up a CloudFront distribution. But you must set up a DNS record to map the custom domain name to the CloudFront distribution domain name for API requests bound for the custom domain name to be routed to API Gateway through the mapped CloudFront distribution. You must also provide a certificate for the custom domain name.

When you create a custom domain name for a regional API, API Gateway creates a regional domain name for the API. You must set up a DNS record to map the custom domain name to the regional domain name for API requests bound for the custom domain name to be routed to API Gateway through the mapped regional API endpoint. You must also provide a certificate for the custom domain name.
Set up an API Custom Domain Name

Note
The CloudFront distribution created by API Gateway is owned by a region-specific account affiliated with API Gateway. When tracing operations to create and update such a CloudFront distribution in CloudWatch logs, you must use this API Gateway account ID. For more information, see Log Custom Domain Name Creation in CloudTrail (p. 419).

To set up an edge-optimized custom domain name or to update its certificate, you must have a permission to update CloudFront distributions. You can do so by attaching the following IAM policy statement to an IAM user, group or role in your account:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "AllowCloudFrontUpdateDistribution",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "cloudfront : updateDistribution"
      ],
      "Resource": ["
        "*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

API Gateway supports edge-optimized custom domain names by leveraging Server Name Indication (SNI) on the CloudFront distribution. For more information on using custom domain names on a CloudFront distribution, including the required certificate format and the maximum size of a certificate key length, see Using Alternate Domain Names and HTTPS in the Amazon CloudFront Developer Guide.

To set up a custom domain name as your API's host name, you, as the API owner, must provide an SSL/TLS certificate for the custom domain name.

To provide a certificate for an edge-optimized custom domain name, you can request AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) to generate a new certificate in ACM or to import into ACM one issued by a third-party certificate authority.

To provide a certificate for a regional custom domain name in a region where ACM is supported, you must request a certificate from ACM. To provide a certificate for a regional custom domain name in a region where ACM is not supported, you must import a certificate to API Gateway in that region.

To import an SSL/TLS certificate, you must provide the PEM-formatted SSL/TLS certificate body, its private key, and the certificate chain for the custom domain name. Each certificate stored in ACM is identified by its ARN. To use an AWS-managed certificate for a domain name, you simply reference its ARN.

ACM makes it straightforward to set up and use a custom domain name for an API: create in or import into ACM a certificate for the given domain name, set up the domain name in API Gateway with the ARN of the certificate provided by ACM, and map a base path under the custom domain name to a deployed stage of the API. With certificates issued by ACM, you do not have to worry about exposing any sensitive certificate details, such as the private key.

Note
API Gateway does not support self-signed SSL/TLS certificates because these certificates are not supported by CloudFront.

You must have a registered Internet domain name in order to set up custom domain names for your APIs. If needed, you can register an Internet domain using Amazon Route 53 or using a third-party domain registrar of your choice. An API's custom domain name can be the name of a subdomain or the root domain (aka, zone apex) of a registered Internet domain.
After a custom domain name is created in API Gateway, you must create or update your domain name service (DNS) provider's resource record to map the edge-optimized custom domain name to its CloudFront distribution domain name or to map the regional custom domain name to its regional API endpoint. Without such a mapping, API requests bound for the custom domain name cannot reach API Gateway.

**Note**
An edge-optimized custom domain name is created in a specific region and owned by a specific AWS account. Moving such a custom domain name between regions or AWS accounts involves deleting the existing CloudFront distribution and creating a new one. The process may take approximately 30 minutes before the new custom domain name becomes available. For more information, see Updating CloudFront Distributions.

This section describes how to use ACM to create an SSL/TLS certificate for a custom domain name, to set up the custom domain name for an API, to associate a specific API with a base path under the custom domain name, and to renew (aka rotate) an expiring certificate that was imported into ACM for the custom domain name.

**Topics**
- Get Certificates Ready in AWS Certificate Manager (p. 414)
- How to Create an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name (p. 416)
- Set up a Custom Domain Name for a Regional API in API Gateway (p. 422)
- Migrate a Custom Domain Name to a Different API Endpoint (p. 427)

---

**Get Certificates Ready in AWS Certificate Manager**

Before setting up a custom domain name for an API, you must have an SSL/TLS certificate ready in AWS Certificate Manager. The following steps describe how to get this done. For more information, see the AWS Certificate Manager User Guide.

**Note**
To use an ACM Certificate with an API Gateway edge-optimized custom domain name, you must request or import the certificate in the US East (N. Virginia) (`us-east-1`) Region. For an API Gateway regional custom domain name, you must request or import the certificate in the same region as your API.

**To get a certificate for a given domain name issued by or imported into ACM**

1. Register your Internet domain; e.g., `myDomain.com`. You can use either Amazon Route 53 or a third-party accredited domain registrar. For a list of such registrar, see Accredited Registrar Directory at the ICANN website.
2. To create in or import into ACM an SSL/TLS certificate for a domain name, do one of the following:

   **To request a certificate provided by ACM for a domain name**
   1. Sign in to the AWS Certificate Manager console.
   2. Choose Request a certificate.
   3. Type a custom domain name for your API; e.g., `api.example.com`, in Domain name.
   4. Optionally, choose Add another name to this certificate.
   5. Choose Review and request.
   6. Choose Confirm and request.
   7. For a valid request, a registered owner of the Internet domain must consent to the request before ACM issues the certificate.
To import into ACM a certificate for a domain name

1. Get a PEM-encoded SSL/TLS certificate for your custom domain name from a certificate authority. For a partial list of such CAs, see the Mozilla Included CA List

   a. Generate a private key for the certificate and save the output to a file, using the OpenSSL toolkit at the OpenSSL website:

   ```
   openssl genrsa -out private-key-file 2048
   ```

   **Note**
   Amazon API Gateway leverages Amazon CloudFront to support certificates for custom domain names. As such, the requirements and constraints of a custom domain name SSL/TLS certificate are dictated by CloudFront. For example, the maximum size of the public key is 2048 and the private key size can be 1024, 2048, and 4096. The public key size is determined by the certificate authority you use. Ask your certificate authority to return keys of a size different from the default length. For more information, see Secure access to your objects and Create signed URLs and signed cookies.

   b. Generate a certificate signing request (CSR) with the previously generated private key, using OpenSSL:

   ```
   openssl req -new -sha256 -key private-key-file -out CSR-file
   ```

   c. Submit the CSR to the certificate authority and save the resulting certificate.

   d. Download the certificate chain from the certificate authority.

   **Note**
   If you obtain the private key in another way and the key is encrypted, you can use the following command to decrypt the key before submitting it to API Gateway for setting up a custom domain name.

   ```
   openssl pkcs8 -topk8 -inform pem -in MyEncryptedKey.pem -outform pem -nocrypt -out MyDecryptedKey.pem
   ```

2. Upload the certificate to AWS Certificate Manager:

   a. Sign in to the AWS Certificate Manager console.

   b. Choose Import a certificate.

   c. For Certificate body, type or paste the body of the PEM-formatted server certificate from your certificate authority. The following shows an abbreviated example of such a certificate.

   ```
   -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
   EXAMPLECA+KgAwIBAgIQJ1XxJ8Pl++gOfQtj0IBoqDNBkgkhkiG9wGBAQIFEADB
   ... az8Cg1aicxLBQ7EaWhgEXAMPLE
   -----END CERTIFICATE-----
   ```

   d. For Certificate private key, type or paste your PEM-formatted certificate's private key. The following shows an abbreviated example of such a key.

   ```
   -----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
   EXAMPLEBAAKCAQEA2Qb3LDHD78y7Wj6U2/opV6Xu37qUCCKeDWhwpZMYJ9/nETO
   ```
How to Create an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name

Topics

• Set Up an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name for an API Gateway API (p. 416)
• Log Custom Domain Name Creation in CloudTrail (p. 419)
• Configure Base Path Mapping of an API with a Custom Domain Name as its Host Name (p. 420)
• Rotate a Certificate Imported into ACM (p. 421)
• Call Your API with Custom Domain Names (p. 421)

Set Up an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name for an API Gateway API

The following procedure describes how to set up a custom domain name for an API using the API Gateway console.

To set up a custom domain name using the API Gateway console

2. Choose Custom Domain Names from the main navigation pane.
3. Choose **Create Custom Domain Name** next.

4. a. Under **New Custom Domain Name**, type your domain name (for example, `api.example.com`) in **Domain Name**.

    **Note**
    Do not use the wildcard character (i.e., *) for your custom domain names. API Gateway does not support it, even though the API Gateway console (or the AWS CLI) accepts it and can map it to a CloudFront distribution. However, you can use wildcard certificates.

    b. Choose a certificate from the **ACM Certificate** list.

    c. Choose **Add mapping** under **Base Path Mappings** to set a base path (Path) for a deployed API in a given stage (selected from the **Destination** dropdown lists.) You can also set the base path mapping after the custom domain name is created. For more information, see **Configure Base Path Mapping of an API with a Custom Domain Name as its Host Name** (p. 420).

    d. Choose **Save**.

5. After the custom domain name is created, the console displays the associated CloudFront distribution domain name, in the form of `distribution-id.cloudfront.net`, along with the certificate ARN. Note the CloudFront distribution domain name shown in the output. You need it in the next step to set the custom domain's CNAME value or A-record alias target in your DNS.

    **Note**
    The newly created custom domain name takes about 40 minutes to be ready. In the meantime, you can configure the DNS record alias to map the custom domain name to the associated CloudFront distribution domain name and to set up the base path mapping for the custom domain name while the custom domain name is being initialized.

6. In this step, we use Amazon Route 53 as an example DNS provider to show how to set up an A-record alias for your Internet domain to map the custom domain name to the associated CloudFront distribution name. The instructions can be adapted to other DNS providers.

    a. Sign in to the Route 53 console.

    b. Create an **A-IPv4 address** record set for your custom domain (e.g., `api.example.com`). An A-record maps a custom domain name to an IP4 address.

    c. Choose **Yes** for **Alias**, type the CloudFront domain name (e.g., `d3boq91k0thtgw.cloudfront.net`) in **Alias Target**, and then choose **Create**. The A-record alias here maps your custom domain name to the specified CloudFront domain name that is itself mapped to an IP4 address.
Tip
The **Alias Hosted Zone ID** identifies the hosted zone of the specified **Alias Target**. The Route 53 console automatically fills in the value when you enter a valid domain name for **Alias Target**. To create an A-record alias without using the Route 53 console, such as when you use the AWS CLI, you must specified the required hosted zone Id. For any CloudFront
distribution domain name, the hosted zone Id value is always Z2FDTNDATAQYW2, as documented in AWS Regions and Endpoints for CloudFront.

For most DNS providers, a custom domain name is added to the hosted zone as a CNAME resource record set. The CNAME record name specifies the custom domain name you typed earlier in Domain Name (for example, api.example.com). The CNAME record value specifies the domain name for the CloudFront distribution. However, use of a CNAME record will not work if your custom domain is a zone apex (i.e., example.com instead of api.example.com). A zone apex is also commonly known as the root domain of your organization. For a zone apex you need to use an A-record alias, provided that is supported by your DNS provider.

With Route 53 you can create an A record alias for your custom domain name and specify the CloudFront distribution domain name as the alias target, as shown above. This means that Route 53 can route your custom domain name even if it is a zone apex. For more information, see Choosing Between Alias and Non-Alias Resource Record Sets in the Amazon Route 53 Developer Guide.

Use of A-record aliases also eliminates exposure of the underlying CloudFront distribution domain name because the domain name mapping takes place solely within Route 53. For these reasons, we recommend that you use Route 53 A-record alias whenever possible.

In addition to using the API Gateway console, you can use the API Gateway REST API, AWS CLI or one of the AWS SDKs to set up the custom domain name for your APIs. As an illustration, the following procedure outlines the steps to do so using the REST API calls.

**To set up a custom domain name using the API Gateway REST API**

1. Call `domainname:create`, specifying the custom domain name and the ARN of a certificate stored in AWS Certificate Manager.

   The successful API call returns a 201 Created response containing the certificate ARN as well as the associated CloudFront distribution name in its payload.

   2. Note the CloudFront distribution domain name shown in the output. You need it in the next step to set the custom domain's CNAME value or A-record alias target in your DNS.

   3. Follow Step 6 of the previous procedure to set up an A-record alias to map the custom domain name to its CloudFront distribution name.

   For code examples of this REST API call, see `domainname:create`.

**Log Custom Domain Name Creation in CloudTrail**

When CloudTrail is enabled for logging API Gateway calls made by your account, API Gateway logs the associated CloudFront distribution updates when a custom domain name is created or updated for an API. Because these CloudFront distributions are owned by API Gateway, each of these reported CloudFront distributions is identified by one of the following region-specific API Gateway account IDs, instead of the API owner's account ID.

**Region-specific API Gateway account IDs of CloudFront distributions associated with a custom domain name**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Account ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>us-east-1</td>
<td>392220576650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>us-east-2</td>
<td>718770453195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>us-west-1</td>
<td>968246515281</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure Base Path Mapping of an API with a Custom Domain Name as its Host Name

You can use a single custom domain name as the host name of multiple APIs. You achieve this by configuring the base path mappings on the custom domain name. With the base path mappings, an API under the custom domain is accessible through the combination of the custom domain name and the associated base path.

For example, if you created an API named PetStore and another API named PetShop and set up a custom domain name of api.example.com in API Gateway, you can set the PetStore API's URL as https://api.example.com or https://api.example.com/myPetStore. The PetStore API is associated with the base path of an empty string or myStore under the custom domain name of api.example.com. Similarly, you can assign a base path of yourPetStore for the PetShop API. The URL of https://api.example.com/yourPetStore is then the root URL of the PetShop API.

Before setting the base path for an API, complete the steps in Set Up an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name for an API Gateway API (p. 416).

To set the base path for API mappings using the API Gateway console

1. Choose a custom domain name from the list of available Custom Domain Names list under your account.
2. Choose Show Base Path Mappings or Edit.
3. Choose Add mapping.
4. (Optional) Type a base path name for Path, choose an API from Destination, and then choose a stage.

   **Note**
   The Destination list shows the deployed APIs under your account.
5. Choose Save to finish setting up the base path mapping for the API.

   **Note**
   To delete a mapping after you create it, next to the mapping that you want to delete, choose the trash icon.

In addition, you can call the API Gateway REST API, AWS CLI, or one of the AWS SDKs to set up the base path mapping of an API with a custom domain name as its host name. As an illustration, the following procedure outlines the steps to do so using the REST API calls.
To set up the base path mapping of an API using the API Gateway REST API

- Call `basepathmapping:create` on a specific custom domain name, specifying the `basePath`, `restApiId`, and a deployment `stage` property in the request payload.

  The successful API call returns a `201 Created` response.

For code examples of the REST API call, see `basepathmapping:create`.

**Rotate a Certificate Imported into ACM**

ACM automatically handles renewal of certificates it issues. You do not need to rotate any ACM-issued certificates for your custom domain names. CloudFront handles it on your behalf.

However, if you import a certificate into ACM and use it for a custom domain name, you must rotate the certificate before it expires. This involves importing a new third-party certificate for the domain name and rotate the existing certificate to the new one. You need to repeat the process when the newly imported certificate expires. Alternatively, you can request ACM to issue a new certificate for the domain name and rotate the existing one to the new ACM-issued certificate. After that, you can leave ACM and CloudFront to handle the certificate rotation for you automatically. To create or import a new ACM Certificate, follow the steps to request or import a new ACM Certificate (p. 414) for the specified domain name.

To rotate a certificate for a domain name, you can use the API Gateway console, the API Gateway REST API, AWS CLI, or one of the AWS SDKs.

**To rotate an expiring certificate imported into ACM using the API Gateway console**

1. Request or import a certificate in ACM.
2. Go back to the API Gateway console.
3. Choose `Custom Domain Names` from the API Gateway console main navigation pane.
4. Select the custom domain name of your choice, under the `Custom Domain Names` pane.
5. Choose `Edit`.
6. Choose the desired certificate from the `ACM Certificate` dropdown list.
7. Choose `Save` to begin rotating the certificate for the custom domain name.

   **Note**
   It takes about 40 minutes for the process to finish. After the rotation is done, you can choose the two-way arrow icon next to `ACM Certificate` to roll back to the original certificate.

To illustrate how to programmatically rotate an imported certificate for a custom domain name, we outline the steps using the API Gateway REST API.

**Rotate an imported certificate using the API Gateway REST API**

- Call `domainname:update` action, specifying the ARN of the new ACM Certificate for the specified domain name.

**Call Your API with Custom Domain Names**

Calling an API with a custom domain name is the same as calling the API with its default domain name, provided that the correct URL is used.
The following examples compare and contrast a set of default URLs and corresponding custom URLs of two APIs (udxjef and qf3duz) in a specified region (us-east-1), and of a given custom domain name (api.example.com).

**Root URLs of APIs with default and custom domain names**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API ID</th>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Default URL</th>
<th>Base path</th>
<th>Custom URL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>udxjef</td>
<td>pro</td>
<td><a href="https://udxjef.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/pro">https://udxjef.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/pro</a></td>
<td>/petstore</td>
<td><a href="https://api.example.com/petstore">https://api.example.com/petstore</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qf3duz</td>
<td>dev</td>
<td><a href="https://qf3duz.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/dev">https://qf3duz.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/dev</a></td>
<td>/bookstore</td>
<td><a href="https://api.example.com/bookstore">https://api.example.com/bookstore</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qf3duz</td>
<td>tst</td>
<td><a href="https://qf3duz.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/tst">https://qf3duz.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/tst</a></td>
<td>/bookstand</td>
<td><a href="https://api.example.com/bookstand">https://api.example.com/bookstand</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

API Gateway supports custom domain names for an API by using Server Name Indication (SNI). You can invoke the API with a custom domain name using a browser or a client library that supports SNI.

API Gateway enforces SNI on the CloudFront distribution. For information on how CloudFront uses custom domain names, see Amazon CloudFront Custom SSL.

**Set up a Custom Domain Name for a Regional API in API Gateway**

As with an edge-optimized API endpoint, you can create a custom domain name for a regional API endpoint. To support a regional custom domain name, you must provide a certificate. If AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) Certificate is used, this certificate must be region-specific. If ACM is available in the region, you must provide an ACM Certificate specific to that region. If ACM is not supported in the region, you must upload a certificate to API Gateway in that region when creating the regional custom domain name. For more information about creating or uploading a custom domain name certificate, see Get Certificates Ready in AWS Certificate Manager (p. 414).

When you create a regional domain name (or migrate one) with an ACM Certificate, API Gateway creates a service-linked role in your account, if the role does not exist already. The service-linked role is required to attach your ACM Certificate to your regional endpoint. The role is named AWSServiceRoleForAPIGateway and will have the APIGatewayServiceRolePolicy managed policy attached to. For more information about use of the service-linked role, see Using Service-Linked Roles.

When a regional custom domain name is successfully created, API Gateway returns its host name in the regionalDomainName property and returns the hosted zone ID in the regionalHostedZoneId property.
You must configure your DNS records to map the regional custom domain name to its host name. To do so in Amazon Route 53, you must use AWS CLI or AWS SDK for Route 53. The following is an AWS CLI for Route 53 command:

```bash
aws route53 change-resource-record-sets \
   --hosted-zone-id {your-hosted-zone-id} \
   --change-batch file://path/to/your/setup-dns-record.json
```

where `{your-hosted-zone-id}` is the Route 53 Hosted Zone ID of the DNS record set in your account. The `change-batch` parameter value points to a JSON file (`setup-dns-record.json`) in a folder (`path/to/your`). The JSON file contains the configuration for setting up a DNS record for the regional domain name. The following example shows how to create a DNS A record to map a regional custom domain name (`regional.example.com`) to its regional host name (`d-numh1z56v6.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com.`) provisioned as part of the custom domain name creation. The `DNSName` and `HostedZoneId` properties of `AliasTarget` can take the `regionalDomainName` and `regionalHostedZoneId` values, respectively, of the custom domain name. You can also get the regional Route 53 Hosted Zone IDs in API Gateway Regions and Endpoints.

```json
{
   "Changes": [
      {
         "Action": "CREATE",
         "ResourceRecordSet": {
            "Name": "regional.example.com",
            "Type": "A",
            "AliasTarget": {
               "DNSName": "d-numh1z56v6.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com",
               "HostedZoneId": "Z2OJLYMUO9EFXC",
               "EvaluateTargetHealth": false
            }
         }
      }
   ]
}
```

Similarly, you can run the same command to map an edge-optimized custom domain name to its associated CloudFront distribution with a different `setup-dns-record.json` file. The following example shows how to set up a DNS A record to map an edge-optimized custom domain name (`edge.example.com`) to its CloudFront distribution name (`d1frvgze7vy1bf.cloudfront.net`) provisioned as part of the custom domain name creation.

```json
{
   "Changes": [
      {
         "Action": "CREATE",
         "ResourceRecordSet": {
            "Name": "edge.example.com",
            "Type": "A",
            "AliasTarget": {
               "DNSName": "d1frvgze7vy1bf.cloudfront.net",
               "HostedZoneId": "Z2FDTNDA7AQYW2",
               "EvaluateTargetHealth": false
            }
         }
      }
   ]
}
```

Notice that the edge-optimized hosted zone is independent of regions. You can also use the Route 53 management console to set this up.
Set up a Regional Domain Name Using the API Gateway Console

To use the API Gateway console to set up a regional custom domain name, use the following procedure.

**To set up a regional custom domain name using the API Gateway console**

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose **Custom Domain Names** in the primary navigation pane.
2. Choose **+Create New Custom Domain Name** above the **Custom Domain Names** table.
3. In **New Custom Domain Name**, type a custom domain name, for example, `my-api.example.com`, in **Domain Name**.
4. Choose **Regional** for **Endpoint Configuration**.
5. Choose a certificate from the **ACM Certificate (us-east-1)** drop-down list.
6. If you have created and deployed an API to use this custom domain name, choose **Add mapping**, type a base path under the custom domain name in **Path**, choose an API from the drop-down list under **Destination**, and choose a stage from the **Stage** drop-down list. To add another base path mapping, repeat the step.
7. Choose **Save**.
8. Note the newly provisioned target domain name and then go to your DNS provider. Create a DNS record to point the newly created regional domain name to this target domain name.

Call AWS CLI Commands to Set up a Regional Custom Domain Name

To use the AWS CLI to set up a custom domain name for a regional API, use the following procedure.

1. Call `create-domain-name`, specifying a custom domain name of the REGIONAL type and the ARN of a regional certificate.

   ```bash
   aws apigateway create-domain-name \ 
   --domain-name 'regional.example.com' \ 
   --endpoint-configuration types=REGIONAL \ 
   --regional-certificate-arn 'arn:aws:acm:us-west-2:123456789012:certificate/c19332f0-3be6-457f-a244-e03a423084e6'
   ```

   Note that the specified certificate is from the us-west-2 region and for this example, we assume that the underlying API is from the same region.

   If successful, the call returns a result similar to the following:

   ```json
   {
     "certificateUploadDate": "2017-10-13T23:02:54Z",
     "domainName": "regional.example.com",
     "endpointConfiguration": {
       "types": "REGIONAL"
     },
     "regionalCertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-west-2:123456789012:certificate/c19332f0-3be6-457f-a244-e03a423084e6",
   }
   ```
The `regionalDomainName` property value returns the regional API's host name. You must create a DNS record to point your custom domain name to this regional domain name. This enables the traffic that is bound to the custom domain name to be routed to this regional API's host name.

If you set the endpoint type to `EDGE` or do not set the type at all, you create an edge-optimized custom domain name. The output contains the `distributionDomainName` instead of `regionalDomainName`. The `distributionName` property value returns the API's edge-optimized host name. You must create a DNS record to point the custom domain name to this distribution domain name. This enables the traffic that is bound to the custom domain name to be routed to the API's edge-optimized host name.

2. Create a DNS record to associate the custom domain name and the regional domain name. This enables requests that are bound to the custom domain name to be routed to the API's regional host name.

3. Add a base path mapping to expose the specified API (for example, `0qzs2sy7bh`) in a deployment stage (for example, `test`) under the specified custom domain name (for example, `regional.example.com`).

```
aws apigateway create-base-path-mapping \
   --domain-name 'regional.example.com' \
   --base-path 'RegionalApiTest' \
   --rest-api-id 0qzs2sy7bh \
   --stage 'test'
```

As a result, the base URL using the custom domain name for the API that is deployed in the stage becomes `https://regional.example.com/RegionalApiTest`.

**Call the API Gateway REST API to Set up a Regional Custom Domain Name**

**To create a custom domain name for a regional API using the API Gateway REST API**

1. Follow the `domainname:create` link-relation to create a custom domain name of the `REGIONAL` endpoint type, specifying the regional certificate by using its ARN.

```
POST /domainnames HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170511T214723Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/
apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=d0abd98a2a06199531c2916b162ede9f63a247032cddc8e4d07721646d13103c

{
   "domainName": "regional.example.com",
   "regionalCertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-west-2:123456789012:certificate/c19332f0-3be6-457f-a244-e03a423084e6",
   "endpointConfiguration": {
     "types": ["REGIONAL"]
   }
}
```
Note that to set up a regional custom domain name, you set the required certificate ARN on the input property of `regionalCertificateArn`. In contrast, to create an edge-optimized custom domain name, you set the required certificate ARN on the input property of `certificateArn`.

The successful response has a 201 Created status code and a payload similar to the following:

```
{
    "_links": {
        "...",
        "certificateUploadDate": "2017-10-13T23:02:54Z",
        "domainName": "regional.example.com",
        "endpointConfiguration": {
            "types": "REGIONAL"
        },
        "regionalCertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-west-2:123456789012:certificate/c193332f-03be6-457f-a244-e03a423084e6",
        "regionalDomainName": "d-numh1z56v6.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com.
    }
}
```

For the given custom domain name (for example, `regional.example.com`), API Gateway returns the associated regional domain name (for example, `d-numh1z56v6.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com`) as the API's regional host name. You must create a DNS record to point the custom domain name to this regional domain name. This enables the traffic that is bound to the custom domain name to be routed to the API's regional host name. The DNS record can be of the CNAME or A type.

If you set the endpoint configuration type to `EDGE` or do not set the type at all, you create an edge-optimized custom domain name. The output contains the `distributionDomainName` instead of `regionalDomainName`. The `distributionDomainName` value shows the API's edge-optimized host name. You must create a DNS record to point the custom domain name to this distribution domain name. This enables the traffic that is bound to the custom domain name to be routed to the API's edge-optimized host name.

2. Set up DNS records in your DNS provider to point the custom domain name to the regional API host name. This enables traffic that is bound to the custom domain name to be routed to the regional API host name. In Route 53, you can set the CNAME or Alias A record using the AWS CLI, an AWD SDK, or the Route 53 REST API.

3. With the new custom domain name created, you set a base path on the domain name to target one of the regional APIs. Assuming you deployed a regional API (0qzs2sy7bh) to a `test` stage, you can add this API to the domain name's base path mappings by calling `basepathmapping:create` from the API Gateway REST API:

```
POST /domainnames/regional.example.com/basepathmappings HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170511T214723Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
Signature=d0abd98a2a06199531c2916b162ede9f63a247032cdcc8e4d077216446d13103c
{
    "basePath": "testRegionalApi",
    "restApiId": "0qzs2sy7bh",
    "stage": "test"
}
```
With the base path mapping set, you can now call the API by using its custom domain name. With the regional PetStore example API, use the following REST API request to call `GET /pets`:

```
https://regional.example.com/testRegionalApi/pets
```

To call `GET /pets/{petId}`, make the following API request:

```
https://regional.example.com/testRegionalApi/pets/1
```

### Migrate a Custom Domain Name to a Different API Endpoint

You can migrate your custom domain name between edge-optimized and regional endpoints. You first add the new endpoint configuration type to the existing `endpointConfiguration.types` list for the custom domain name. Next, you set up a DNS record to point the custom domain name to the newly provisioned endpoint. An optional last step is to remove the obsolete custom domain name configuration data.

When planning the migration, remember that for an edge-optimized API's custom domain name, the required certificate provided by ACM must be from the US East (N. Virginia) Region (`us-east-1`). This certificate is distributed to all the geographic locations. However, for a regional API, the ACM Certificate for the regional domain name must be from the same region hosting the API. You can migrate an edge-optimized custom domain name that is not in the `us-east-1` region to a regional custom domain name by first requesting a new ACM Certificate from the region that is local to the API.

It may take up to 60 seconds to complete a migration between an edge-optimized custom domain name and a regional custom domain name in API Gateway. For the newly created endpoint to become ready to accept traffic, the migration time also depends on when you update your DNS records.

**Topics**
- Migrate Regional and Edge-Optimized Domain Names Using the API Gateway Console (p. 427)
- Update Custom Domain Names Using the AWS CLI (p. 428)
- Update Custom Domain Names Using the API Gateway REST API (p. 430)

### Migrate Regional and Edge-Optimized Domain Names Using the API Gateway Console

To use the API Gateway console to migrate a regional custom domain name to an edge-optimized custom domain name and vice versa, use the following procedure.

**To migrate a regional or edge-optimized custom domain name using the API Gateway console**

1. Sign in to the API Gateway console and choose **Custom Domain Names** in the primary navigation pane.
2. Choose an existing domain name from **Custom Domain Names**, and then choose **Edit**.
3. Depending on the existing endpoint type, do the following:
   a. For an edge-optimized domain name, choose **Add Regional Configuration**.
   b. For a regional domain name, choose **Add Edge Configuration**.
4. Choose a certificate from the drop-down list.
5. Choose Save.
6. Choose Proceed to confirm adding the new endpoint.
7. Update the DNS records to point the new domain name to the newly provisioned target domain name.

**Update Custom Domain Names Using the AWS CLI**

To use the AWS CLI to update a custom domain name from an edge-optimized endpoint to a regional endpoint or vice versa, call the `update-domain-name` command to add the new endpoint type and, optionally, call the `update-domain-name` command to remove the old endpoint type.

**Topics**
- Update an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name to Regional (p. 428)
- Update a Regional Custom Domain Name to Edge-Optimized (p. 429)

**Update an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name to Regional**

To migrate an edge-optimized custom domain name to a regional custom domain name, call the `update-domain-name` command of AWS CLI, as follows:

```
aws apigateway update-domain-name 
  --domain-name 'api.example.com' 
  --patch-operations [ 
    { op:'add', path: '/endpointConfiguration/types',value: 'REGIONAL' }, 
  ]
```

The regional certificate must be of the same region as the regional API.

The success response has a 200 OK status code and a body similar to the following:

```
{
  "certificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/34a95aa1-77fa-427c-aa07-3a866bd9f3a0b",
  "certificateName": "edge-cert",
  "certificateUploadDate": "2017-10-16T23:22:57Z",
  "distributionDomainName": "d1frvge7vylf.cloudfront.net",
  "domainName": "api.example.com",
  "endpointConfiguration": {
    "types": [
      "EDGE",
      "REGIONAL"
    ]
  },
  "regionalDomainName": "d-fdisjghyn6.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com"
}
```

For the updated regional custom domain name, the resulting `regionalDomainName` property returns the regional API host name. You must set up a DNS record to point the regional custom domain name to this regional host name. This enables the traffic that is bound to the custom domain name to be routed to the regional host.
After the DNS record is set, you can remove the edge-optimized custom domain name by calling the `update-domain-name` command of AWS CLI:

```
aws apigateway update-domain-name \
  --domain-name api.example.com \
  --patch-operations [ \
    {op:'remove', path:'/endpointConfiguration/types', value:'EDGE'}, \
    {op:'remove', path:'certificateName'}, \
    {op:'remove', path:'certificateArn'} \
  ]
```

### Update a Regional Custom Domain Name to Edge-Optimized

To migrate a regional custom domain name to an edge-optimized custom domain name, call the `update-domain-name` command of the AWS CLI, as follows:

```
aws apigateway update-domain-name \
  --domain-name 'api.example.com' \
  --patch-operations [ \
    { op:'add', path:'/endpointConfiguration/types', value: 'EDGE' }, \
    { op:'add', path:'/certificateName', value:'edge-cert' }, \
    { op:'add', path:'/certificateArn', value: 'arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/34a95aa1-77fa-427c-aa07-3a88db9f3c0a' } \
  ]
```

The edge-optimized domain certificate must be created in the `us-east-1` region.

The success response has a 200 OK status code and a body similar to the following:

```
{
    "certificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:738575810317:certificate/34a95aa1-77fa-427c-aa07-3a88db9f3c0a",
    "certificateName": "edge-cert",
    "certificateUploadDate": "2017-10-16T23:22:57Z",
    "distributionDomainName": "d1frvgze7vy1bf.cloudfront.net",
    "domainName": "api.example.com",
    "endpointConfiguration": {
        "types": [
            "EDGE",
            "REGIONAL"
        ]
    },
    "regionalDomainName": "d-cgkq2qwgzf.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com"
}
```

For the specified custom domain name, API Gateway returns the edge-optimized API host name as the `distributionDomainName` property value. You must set a DNS record to point the edge-optimized custom domain name to this distribution domain name. This enables traffic that is bound to the edge-optimized custom domain name to be routed to the edge-optimized API host name.

After the DNS record is set, you can remove the REGION endpoint type of the custom domain name:

```
aws apigateway update-domain-name \
  --domain-name api.example.com \
  --patch-operations [ \
    {op:'remove', path:'/endpointConfiguration/types', value:'REGIONAL'}, \
    {op:'remove', path:'regionalCertificateArn'} \
  ]
```
The result of this command is similar to the following output, with only edge-optimized domain name configuration data:

```
{
    "certificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:738575810317:certificate/34a95aa1-77fa-427c-aa07-3a8bd9f3c0a",
    "certificateName": "edge-cert",
    "certificateUploadDate": "2017-10-16T23:22:57Z",
    "distributionDomainName": "d1frvyse7vy1bf.cloudfront.net",
    "domainName": "regional.haymuto.com",
    "endpointConfiguration": {
        "types": "EDGE"
    }
}
```

Update Custom Domain Names Using the API Gateway REST API

To use the API Gateway REST API to update an edge-optimized custom domain name to a regional one, or from a regional custom domain name to an edge-optimized one, use the domainname:update link-relation and, optionally, the domainname:delete link-relation.

Topics
* Update an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name to Regional (p. 430)
* Update a Region Domain Name to Edge-Optimized (p. 431)

Update an Edge-Optimized Custom Domain Name to Regional

To update an edge-optimized custom domain name (api.example.com) to a regional custom domain name, call domainname:update of the API Gateway REST API:

```
PATCH /domainnames/api.example.com HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170511T214723Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=d0abd98a2a06199531c2916b162ede9f63a247032c0c8e4d077216446d13103c

{
    "patchOperations": [
        {
            "op": "add",
            "path": "/endpointConfiguration/types",
            "value": "REGIONAL"
        },
        {
            "op": "add",
            "path": "/regionalCertificateArn",
            "value": "arn:aws:acm:us-west-2:123456789012:certificate/c19332f1-3be7-457f-a245-e03a423084e7"
        }
    ]
}
```

The regional certificate must be of the same region as the regional API.

The success response has a 200 OK status code and a body similar to the following:

```json
{  
    "certificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-west-1:738575810317:certificate/34a95aa1-77fa-427c-aa07-3a8bd9f3c0a",
    "certificateName": "edge-cert",
    "certificateUploadDate": "2017-10-16T23:22:57Z",
    "distributionDomainName": "d1frvyse7vy1bf.cloudfront.net",
    "domainName": "regional.haymuto.com",
    "endpointConfiguration": {
        "types": "REGIONAL"
    }
}
For the regional custom domain name, the returned `regionalDomainName` property value is the regional API host name. You must set up a DNS record to point the regional custom domain name to this regional API host name. This enables traffic that is bound to the regional custom domain name to be routed to the regional API host.

You can then remove the edge-optimized API custom domain name:

```json
PATCH /domainnames/{domain-name} HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170511T214723Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type:host;x-amz-date,
Signature=d0abd98a2a06199531c2916b162ede9f63a247032cdc8e4d077216446d13103c

{  "patchOperations": [  {   "op" : "remove",   "path" : "/endpointConfiguration/types"  },  {   "op" : "remove",   "path" : "/certificateName"  },  {   "op" : "remove",   "path" : "/certificateArn"  }  ]}
```

**Update a Region Domain Name to Edge-Optimized**

To migrate a regional custom domain name to an edge-optimized custom domain name, call `domainname:update` from the API Gateway REST API, as follows:

```json
PATCH /domainnames/{domain-name} HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170511T214723Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type:host;x-amz-date,
Signature=d0abd98a2a06199531c2916b162ede9f63a247032cdc8e4d077216446d13103c

{  "patchOperations": [  {   "op" : "remove",   "path" : "/endpointConfiguration/types"  },  {   "op" : "remove",   "path" : "/certificateName"  },  {   "op" : "remove",   "path" : "/certificateArn"  }  ]}
```
For an edge-optimized API custom domain name, the ACM Certificate must be from the `us-east-1` region.

The successful response has a `200 OK` status code and a body similar to the following:

```
{
  "certificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:738575810317:certificate/34a95aa1-77fa-427c-aa07-3a88bd9f3c0a",
  "certificateName": "edge-cert",
  "certificateUploadDate": "2017-10-16T23:22:57Z",
  "distributionDomainName": "d1frvgze7vylbf.cloudfront.net",
  "domainName": "api.example.com",
  "endpointConfiguration": {
    "types": [
      "EDGE",
      "REGIONAL"
    ]
  },
  "regionalDomainName": "d-cgkq2qwgzf.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com"
}
```

For the specified custom domain name, API Gateway returns the domain name of an Amazon CloudFront distribution. You must set a DNS record to point the custom domain name to this distribution domain name, so that traffic to the custom domain name is routed to the named CloudFront distribution.

You can then remove the regional API custom domain name:

```
PATCH /domainnames/{domain-name} HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.0
X-Amz-Date: 20170511T214723Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential={ACCESS-KEY-ID}/20170511/us-west-2/apigateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=d0abd98a2a06199531c2916b162ede9f63a247032c908e4d077216446d13103c
{
  "patchOperations": [
    {
      "op": "remove",
      "path": "/endpointConfiguration/types"
    },
    
```
Sell Your API Gateway API through AWS Marketplace

After you build, test, and deploy your API, you can package it in an API Gateway usage plan and sell the plan as a Software as a Service (SaaS) product through AWS Marketplace. API buyers subscribing to your product offering are billed by AWS Marketplace based on the number of requests made to the usage plan (p. 296).

To sell your API on AWS Marketplace, you must set up the sales channel to integrate AWS Marketplace with API Gateway. Generally speaking, this involves listing your product on AWS Marketplace, setting up an IAM role with appropriate policies to allow API Gateway to send usage metrics to AWS Marketplace, associating an AWS Marketplace product with an API Gateway usage plan, and associating an AWS Marketplace buyer with an API Gateway API key. Details are discussed in the following sections.

To enable your customers to buy your product on AWS Marketplace, you must register your developer portal (an external application) with AWS Marketplace. The developer portal must handle the subscription requests that are redirected from the AWS Marketplace console.

For more information about selling your API as a SaaS product on AWS Marketplace, see AWS Marketplace SaaS Subscriptions - Seller Integration Guide.

Topics

- Initialize AWS Marketplace Integration with API Gateway (p. 433)
- Handle Customer Subscription to Usage Plans (p. 435)

Initialize AWS Marketplace Integration with API Gateway

The following tasks are for one-time initialization of AWS Marketplace integration with API Gateway, which enables you to sell your API as a SaaS product.
List a Product on AWS Marketplace

To list your usage plan as a SaaS product, submit a product load form through AWS Marketplace. The product must contain a dimension named `apigateway` of the `requests` type. This dimension defines the price-per-request and is used by API Gateway to meter requests to your API.

Create the Metering Role

Create an IAM role named `ApiGatewayMarketplaceMeteringRole` with the following execution policy and trust policy. This role allows API Gateway to send usage metrics to AWS Marketplace on your behalf.

### Execution Policy of the Metering Role

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "aws-marketplace:BatchMeterUsage",
                "aws-marketplace:ResolveCustomer"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        }
    ]
}
```

### Trusted Relationship Policy of the Metering Role

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
}
```

Associate Usage Plan with AWS Marketplace Product

When you list a product on AWS Marketplace, you receive an AWS Marketplace product code. To integrate API Gateway with AWS Marketplace, associate your usage plan with the AWS Marketplace product code. You enable the association by setting the API Gateway `UsagePlan`'s `productCode` field to your AWS Marketplace product code, using the API Gateway console, the API Gateway REST API, the AWS CLI for API Gateway, or AWS SDK for API Gateway. The following code example uses the API Gateway REST API:

```
PATCH /usageplans/USAGE_PLAN_ID
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Authorization: ...

{
    "patchOperations": [{
        "op": "replace",
        "path": "/productCode",
        "value": "example-product-code"
    }]
}
```
Handle Customer Subscription to Usage Plans

The following tasks are handled by your developer portal application.

When a customer subscribes to your product through AWS Marketplace, AWS Marketplace forwards a POST request to the SaaS subscriptions URL that you registered when listing your product on AWS Marketplace. The POST request comes with an `x-amzn-marketplace-token` header parameter containing buyer information. Follow the instructions in the Register Application section of the SaaS Seller Integration Guide to handle this redirect in your developer portal application.

Responding to a customer’s subscribing request, AWS Marketplace sends a subscribe-success notification to an Amazon SNS topic that you can subscribe to (See Step 6.4 of the SaaS Seller Integration Guide). To accept the customer subscription request, you handle the subscribe-success notification by creating or retrieving an API Gateway API key for the customer, associating the customer’s AWS Marketplace-provisioned customerId with the API keys, and then adding the API key to your usage plan.

When the customer’s subscription request completes, the developer portal application should present the customer with the associated API key and inform the customer that the API key must be included in the `x-api-key` header in requests to the API.

When a customer cancels a subscription to a usage plan, AWS Marketplace sends an unsubscribe-success notification to the SNS topic. To complete the process of unsubscribing the customer, you handle the unsubscribe-success notification by removing the customer’s API keys from the usage plan.

Authorize a Customer to Access a Usage Plan

To authorize access to your usage plan for a given customer, use the API Gateway API to fetch or create an API key for the customer and add the API key to the usage plan.

The following example shows how to call the API Gateway REST API to create a new API key with a specific AWS Marketplace customerId value (`MARKETPLACE_CUSTOMER_ID`).

```plaintext
POST apikeys HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Authorization: ...

{
    "name" : "my_api_key",
    "description" : "My API key",
    "enabled" : "false",
    "stageKeys" : [ {
        "restApiId" : "uycll6xg9a",
        "stageName" : "prod"
    } ],
    "customerId" : "MARKETPLACE_CUSTOMER_ID"
}
```

The following example shows how to get an API key with a specific AWS Marketplace customerId value (`MARKETPLACE_CUSTOMER_ID`).

```plaintext
GET apikeys?customerId=MARKETPLACE_CUSTOMER_ID HTTP/1.1
```
To add an API key to a usage plan, create a `UsagePlanKey` with the API key for the relevant usage plan. The following example shows how to accomplish this using the API Gateway REST API, where `n371pt` is the usage plan ID and `q5ugs7qjjh` is an example API `keyId` returned from the preceding examples.

```plaintext
POST /usageplans/n371pt/keys HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Authorization: ...

{
    "keyId": "q5ugs7qjjh",
    "keyType": "API_KEY"
}
```

**Associate a Customer with an API Key**

You must update the `apiKey`'s `customerId` field to the AWS Marketplace customer ID of the customer. This associates the API key with the AWS Marketplace customer, which enables metering and billing for the buyer. The following code example calls the API Gateway REST API to do that.

```plaintext
PATCH /apikeys/q5ugs7qjjh HTTP/1.1
Host: apigateway.region.amazonaws.com
Authorization: ...

{
    "patchOperations" : [{
        "path": "/customerId",
        "value": "MARKETPLACE_CUSTOMER_ID",
        "op": "replace"
    }]
}
```
Invoking an API in Amazon API Gateway

Calling a deployed API involves submitting requests to the API Gateway component service for API execution, known as `execute-api`. The root URL of such requests is of the following format:

```
https://{restapi_id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com/{stage_name}/
```

where `{restapi_id}` is the API identifier, `{region}` is the API deployed region, and `{stage_name}` is the stage name of an API deployment.

You can find this root URL in the given **Stage Editor**. It is listed as the **Invoke URL** at the top. If the API's root resource exposes a GET method without requiring user authentication, you can call the method by clicking the **Invoke URL** link. You can also construct this root URL by combining the `host` and `basePath` fields of an exported Swagger definition file of the API.

If an API permits anonymous access, you can use any web browser to invoke any GET-method calls by copying and pasting an appropriate invocation URL to the browser's address bar. For other methods or any authentication-required calls, the invocation will be more involved because you must specify a payload or sign the requests. You can handle these in a script behind an HTML page or in a client app using one of the AWS SDKs.

For testing, you can use the API Gateway console to call an API using the API Gateway's TestInvoke feature, which bypasses the Invoke URL and allows API testing before the API is deployed. Alternatively, you can use the **Postman** app to test a successfully deployed API, without writing a script or a client.

**Note**
Query string parameter values in an invocation URL cannot contain `%%%`.

**Topics**
- Obtain an API's Invoke URL in the API Gateway Console (p. 437)
- Use the API Gateway Console to Test a Method (p. 438)
- Use Postman to Call an API (p. 439)
- Call API through Generated SDKs (p. 439)
- Trace API Management and Invocation (p. 457)

You must have already deployed the API in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Deploying an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 350).

---

**Obtain an API's Invoke URL in the API Gateway Console**

2. In the box that contains the name of the API you want to call, choose **Stages**.
3. In the Stages pane, choose the name of the stage.
4. The URL displayed next to Invoke URL should look something like this, where my-api-id is the identifier API Gateway assigns to your API, region-id is the AWS region identifier (for example, us-east-1) where you deployed your API, and stage-name is the name of the stage for the API you want to call:

https://my-api-id.execute-api.region-id.amazonaws.com/stage-name/{resourcePath}

Depending on the method type you want to call and the tool you want to use, copy this URL to your clipboard, and then paste and modify it to call the API from a web browser, a web debugging proxy tool or the cURL command-line tool, or from your own API.

If you are not familiar with which method to call or the format you must use to call it, browse the list of available methods by following the instructions in View a Methods List in API Gateway (p. 232).

To call the method directly from the API Gateway console, see Use the Console to Test a Method (p. 438).

For more options, contact the API owner.

Use the API Gateway Console to Test a Method

Use the API Gateway console to test a method.

Topics

• Prerequisites (p. 438)
• Test a Method with the API Gateway Console (p. 438)

Prerequisites

• You must specify the settings for the methods you want to test. Follow the instructions in Set up API Methods in API Gateway (p. 104).

Test a Method with the API Gateway Console

Important
Testing methods with the API Gateway console may result in changes to resources that cannot be undone. Testing a method with the API Gateway console is the same as calling the method outside of the API Gateway console. For example, if you use the API Gateway console to call a method that deletes an API's resources, if the method call is successful, the API's resources will be deleted.

2. In the box that contains the name of the API for the method, choose Resources.
3. In the Resources pane, choose the method you want to test.
4. In the Method Execution pane, in the Client box, choose TEST. Type values in any of the displayed boxes (such as Query Strings, Headers, and Request Body).

For additional options you may need to specify, contact the API owner.
5. Choose Test. The following information will be displayed:
• **Request** is the resource's path that was called for the method.
• **Status** is the response's HTTP status code.
• **Latency** is the time between the receipt of the request from the caller and the returned response.
• **Response Body** is the HTTP response body.
• **Response Headers** are the HTTP response headers.

**Tip**
Depending on the mapping, the HTTP status code, response body, and response headers may be different from those sent from the Lambda function, HTTP proxy, or AWS service proxy.

• **Logs** are the simulated Amazon CloudWatch Logs entries that would have been written if this method were called outside of the API Gateway console.

**Note**
Although the CloudWatch Logs entries are simulated, the results of the method call are real.

In addition to using the API Gateway console, you can use AWS CLI or an AWS SDK for API Gateway to test invoking a method. To do so using AWS CLI, see `test-invoke-method`.

## Use Postman to Call an API

Use the Postman app is a convenient tool to test an API in API Gateway.

1. Launch Postman.
2. Enter the endpoint URL of a request in the address bar and choose the appropriate HTTP method from the drop-down list to the left of the address bar.
3. If required, choose the **Authorization** tab. Choose **AWS Signature** for the authorization **Type**. Enter your AWS IAM user's access key ID in the **AccessKey** input field. Enter your IAM user secret key in **SecretKey**. Specify an appropriate AWS region that matches the region specified in the invocation URL. Enter `execute-api` in **Service Name**.
4. Choose the **Headers** tab. Optionally, delete any existing headers. This can clear any stale settings that may cause errors. Add any required custom headers. For example, if API keys are enabled, you can set the `x-api-key:` **name/value pair** here.
5. Choose **Send** to submit the request and receive a response.

For an example of using Postman, see *Call an API with API Gateway Custom Authorizers* (p. 266).

## Call API through Generated SDKs

This section shows how to call an API through a generated SDK in a client app written in Java, Java for Android, JavaScript, Ruby, Objective-C and Swift.

**Topics**

• Use a Java SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 440)
• Use an Android SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 443)
• Use a JavaScript SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 444)
• Use a Ruby SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 446)
• Use iOS SDK Generated by API Gateway in Objective-C or Swift (p. 448)
Use a Java SDK Generated by API Gateway

In this section, we outline the steps to use a Java SDK generated by API Gateway, by using the Simple Calculator (p. 407) API as an example. Before proceeding, you must complete the steps in Generate SDKs for an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 396).

To install and use a Java SDK generated by API Gateway

1. Extract the contents of the API Gateway-generated .zip file that you downloaded earlier.
2. Download and install Apache Maven (must be version 3.5 or later).
3. Download and install the JDK (must be version 1.8 or later).
4. Set the JAVA_HOME environment variable.
5. Go to the unzipped SDK folder where the pom.xml file is located. This folder is generated-code by default. Run the mvn install command to install the compiled artifact files to your local Maven repository. This creates a target folder containing the compiled SDK library.
6. Type the following command to create a client project stub to call the API using the installed SDK library.

```
mvn -B archetype:generate \
-DarchetypeGroupId=org.apache.maven.archetypes \
-DgroupId=examples.aws.apig.simpleCalc.sdk.app \
-DartifactId=SimpleCalc-sdkClient
```

**Note**
The separator \ in the preceding command is included for readability. The whole command should be on a single line without the separator.

This command creates an application stub. The application stub contains a pom.xml file and an src folder under the project's root directory (SimpleCalc-sdkClient in the preceding command). Initially, there are two source files: src/main/java/{package-path}/App.java and src/test/java/{package-path}/AppTest.java. In this example, {package-path} is examples/aws/apig/simpleCalc/sdk/app. This package path is derived from the DarchetypeGroupId value. You can use the App.java file as a template for your client application, and you can add others in the same folder if needed. You can use the AppTest.java file as a unit test template for your application, and you can add other test code files to the same test folder as needed.

7. Update the package dependencies in the generated pom.xml file to the following, substituting your project's groupId, artifactId, version, and name properties, if necessary:

```
<project xmlns="http://maven.apache.org/POM/4.0.0" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:schemaLocation="http://maven.apache.org/POM/4.0.0 http://maven.apache.org/maven-v4_0_0.xsd">
  <modelVersion>4.0.0</modelVersion>
  <groupId>examples.aws.apig.simpleCalc.sdk.app</groupId>
  <artifactId>SimpleCalc-sdkClient</artifactId>
  <packaging>jar</packaging>
  <version>1.0-SNAPSHOT</version>
  <name>SimpleCalc-sdkClient</name>
  <url>http://maven.apache.org/url</url>

  <dependencies>
    <dependency>
      <groupId>com.amazonaws</groupId>
      <artifactId>aws-java-sdk-core</artifactId>
      <version>1.11.94</version>
    </dependency>
  </dependencies>
</project>
```
8. Next, we show how to call the API using the SDK by calling the `getABOp(GetABOpRequest req)`, `getApiRoot(GetApiRootRequest req)`, and `postApiRoot(PostApiRootRequest req)` methods of the SDK. These methods correspond to the GET /{a}/{b}/{op}, GET /?a={x}&b={y}&op={operator}, and POST / methods, with a payload of ("a": x, "b": y, "op": "operator") API requests, respectively.

Update the `App.java` file as follows:

```java
package examples.aws.apig.simpleCalc.sdk.app;

import java.io.IOException;

import com.amazonaws.opensdk.config.ConnectionConfiguration;
import com.amazonaws.opensdk.config.TimeoutConfiguration;

import examples.aws.apig.simpleCalc.sdk.*;
import examples.aws.apig.simpleCalc.sdk.model.*;
import examples.aws.apig.simpleCalc.sdk.SimpleCalcSdk.*;

public class App
{
    SimpleCalcSdk sdkClient;

    public App() {
        initSdk();
    }
}
```
private void initSdk() {
    sdkClient = SimpleCalcSdk.builder()
    .connectionConfiguration(
        new ConnectionConfiguration()
            .maxConnections(100)
            .connectionMaxIdleMillis(1000)
    )
    .timeoutConfiguration(
        new TimeoutConfiguration()
            .httpRequestTimeout(3000)
            .totalExecutionTimeout(10000)
            .socketTimeout(2000)
    )
    .build();
}

// Calling shutdown is not necessary unless you want to exert explicit control of this resource.
public void shutdown() {
    sdkClient.shutdown();
}

public GetABOpResult getABOp(GetABOpRequest getABOpRequest) { 
    operator = operator.equals("+") ? "add" : operator;
    operator = operator.equals("/"), "div" : operator;
    GetABOpRequest abopResult = sdkClient.getABOp(new
        GetABOpRequest().a(x).b(y).op(operator));
    return abopResult.getResult().getOutput();
}

public Output getResultWithPathParameters(String x, String y, String operator) {
    operator = operator.equals("+") ? "add" : operator;
    operator = operator.equals("/") ? "div" : operator;
    GetABOpResult abopResult = sdkClient.getABOp(new
        GetABOpRequest().a(x).b(y).op(operator));
    return abopResult.getResult().getOutput();
}

public Output getResultWithQueryParameters(String a, String b, String op) {
    GetApiRootResult rootResult = sdkClient.getApiRoot(new
        GetApiRootRequest().a(a).b(b).op(op));
    return rootResult.getResult().getOutput();
}

public Output geResultByPostInputBody(Double x, Double y, String o) {
    PostApiRootResult postResult = sdkClient.postApiRoot(
        new PostApiRootRequest().input(new Input().a(x).b(y).op(o)));
    return postResult.getResult().getOutput();
}

public static void main( String[] args )
{
    System.out.println( "Simple calc" );
    // to begin
    App calc = new App();
    // call the SimpleCalc API
    Output res = calc.getResultWithPathParameters("1", "2", "/");
    System.out.printf("GET /1/2/-: %s\n", res.getC());
    // Use the type query parameter
    res = calc.getResultWithQueryParameters("1", "2", "+");
    System.out.printf("GET ?a=1&b=2&op=+: %s\n", res.getC());
    // Call POST with an Input body.
    res = calc.geResultByPostInputBody(1.0, 2.0, "+");
    System.out.printf("PUT \n\n{"a":1, "b":2,"op":"+"}\n\n %s\n", res.getC());
}
In the preceding example, the configuration settings used to instantiate the SDK client are for illustration purposes and are not necessarily recommended best practice. Also, calling `sdkClient.shutdown()` is optional, especially if you need precise control on when to free up resources.

We have shown the essential patterns to call an API using a Java SDK. You can extend the instructions to calling other API methods.

**Use an Android SDK Generated by API Gateway**

In this section, we will outline the steps to use an Android SDK generated by API Gateway of an API. Before proceeding further, you must have already completed the steps in Generate SDKs for an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 396).

**Note**

The generated SDK is not compatible with Android 4.4 and earlier. For more information, see Known Issues (p. 562).

**To install and use an Android SDK Generated by API Gateway**

1. Extract the contents of the API Gateway-generated .zip file that you downloaded earlier.
2. Download and install Apache Maven (preferably version 3.x).
3. Download and install the JDK (preferably version 1.7 or later).
4. Set the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable.
5. Run the `mvn install` command to install the compiled artifact files to your local Maven repository. This creates a `target` folder containing the compiled SDK library.
6. Copy the SDK file (the name of which is derived from the **Artifact Id** and **Artifact Version** you specified when generating the SDK, e.g., `simple-calcsdk-1.0.0.jar`) from the `target` folder, along with all of the other libraries from the `target/lib` folder, into your project's `lib` folder.

   If you use Android Studio, create a `libs` folder under your client app module and copy the required .jar file into this folder. Verify that the dependencies section in the module's gradle file contains the following.

   ```groovy
   compile fileTree(include: ['*.jar'], dir: 'libs')
   compile fileTree(include: ['*.jar'], dir: 'app/libs')
   ```

   Make sure no duplicated .jar files are declared.

7. Use the `ApiClientFactory` class to initialize the API Gateway-generated SDK. For example:

   ```java
   ApiClientFactory factory = new ApiClientFactory();
   
   // Create an instance of your SDK.
   final MyApiClient client = factory.build(MyApiClient.class);
   
   // Invoke a method:
   // If the API exposes a 'GET /?a=1&b=2&op=+' method, you can call the following SDK method:
   // 
   Result output = client.rootGet("1", "2", "+");
   // 
   //     where Result is the SDK class of the like-named API model.
   ```
Use a JavaScript SDK Generated by API Gateway

Note
These instructions assume you have already completed the instructions in Generate SDKs for an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 396).
To install, initiate and call a JavaScript SDK generated by API Gateway

1. Extract the contents of the API Gateway-generated .zip file you downloaded earlier.

2. Enable cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) for all of the methods the SDK generated by API Gateway will call. For instructions, see Enable CORS for a Resource (p. 252).

3. In your web page, include references to the following scripts.

```html
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/axios/dist/axios.standalone.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/CryptoJS/rollups/hmac-sha256.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/CryptoJS/rollups/sha256.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/CryptoJS/components/hmac.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/CryptoJS/components/enc-base64.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/url-template/url-template.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/apiGatewayCore/sigV4Client.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/apiGatewayCore/apiGatewayClient.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/apiGatewayCore/simpleHttpClient.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="lib/apiGatewayCore/utils.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="apigClient.js"></script>
```

4. In your code, initialize the SDK generated by API Gateway by using code similar to the following.

```javascript
var apigClient = apigClientFactory.newClient();
```

To initialize the SDK generated by API Gateway with AWS credentials, use code similar to the following. If you use AWS credentials, all requests to the API will be signed.

```javascript
var apigClient = apigClientFactory.newClient({
    accessKey: 'ACCESS_KEY',
    secretKey: 'SECRET_KEY',
});
```

To use an API key with the SDK generated by API Gateway, pass the API key as a parameter to the Factory object by using code similar to the following. If you use an API key, it is specified as part of the x-api-key header and all requests to the API will be signed. This means you must set the appropriate CORS Accept headers for each request.

```javascript
var apigClient = apigClientFactory.newClient({
    apiKey: 'API_KEY'
});
```

5. Call the API methods in API Gateway by using code similar to the following. Each call returns a promise with a success and failure callbacks.

```javascript
var params = {
    // This is where any modeled request parameters should be added.
    // The key is the parameter name, as it is defined in the API in API Gateway.
    param0: '',
    param1: ''
};

var body = {
    // This is where you define the body of the request,
};

var additionalParams = {
    // If there are any unmodeled query parameters or headers that must be
    // sent with the request, add them here.
    headers: {
        param0: '',
```
Here, the `methodName` is constructed from the method request's resource path and the HTTP. For example, for the GET / request, the `methodName` is `rootGet`. For the GET /a/b/op request, the `methodName` will be `aBOpGet`.

**Use a Ruby SDK Generated by API Gateway**

**Note**
These instructions assume you already completed the instructions in Generate SDKs for an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 396).

**To install, instantiate, and call a Ruby SDK generated by API Gateway**

1. Unzip the downloaded Ruby SDK file. The generated SDK source is shown as follows.
2. Build a Ruby Gem from the generated SDK source, using the following shell commands in a terminal window:

```
# change to /simplecalc-sdk directory
cd simplecalc-sdk
# build the generated gem
gem build simplecalc-sdk.gemspec
```

After this, `simplecalc-sdk-1.0.0.gem` becomes available.

3. Install the gem:

```
gem install simplecalc-sdk-1.0.0.gem
```

4. Create a client application. Instantiate and initialize the Ruby SDK client in the app:

```
require 'simplecalc-sdk'
client = SimpleCalc::Client.new(
  http_wire_trace: true,
  retry_limit: 5,
  http_read_timeout: 50
)
```

If the API has authorization of the AWS_IAM type is configured, you can include the caller's AWS credentials by supplying `accessKey` and `secretKey` during the initialization:

```
require 'pet-sdk'
client = Pet::Client.new(
  http_wire_trace: true,
  retry_limit: 5,
  http_read_timeout: 50,
  access_key: 'ACCESS_KEY',
  secret_key: 'SECRET_KEY'
)
```

5. Make API calls through the SDK in the app.

**Tip**

If you are not familiar with the SDK method call conventions, you can review the `client.rb` file in the generated SDK `lib` folder. The folder contains documentation of each supported API method call.

To discover supported operations:

```
# to show supported operations:
puts client.operation_names
```

This results in the following display, corresponding to the API methods of `GET /?a={.}&b={.}&op={.}`, `GET /{a}/{b}/{op}`, and `POST /`, plus a payload of the `{a:"…", b:"…", op:"…"}` format, respectively:

```
[:get_api_root, :get_ab_op, :post_api_root]
```

To invoke the `GET /?a=1&b=2&op=+` API method, call the following the Ruby SDK method:

```
resp = client.get_api_root({a:"1", b:"2", op:"+"})
```
To invoke the POST / API method with a payload of \{a: "1", b: "2", "op": "+"\}, call the following Ruby SDK method:

```ruby
resp = client.post_api_root(input: {a: "1", b: "2", op: "+"})
```

To invoke the GET /1/2/+ API method, call the following Ruby SDK method:

```ruby
resp = client.get_ab_op({a: "1", b: "2", op: "+"})
```

The successful SDK method calls return the following response:

```ruby
resp : {  
  result: {   
    input: {   
      a: 1,  
      b: 2,  
      op: "+"  
    },  
    output: {  
      c: 3  
    }
  }
}
```

### Use iOS SDK Generated by API Gateway in Objective-C or Swift

In this tutorial, we will show how to use an iOS SDK generated by API Gateway in an Objective-C or Swift app to call the underlying API. We will use the SimpleCalc API (p. 402) as an example to illustrate the following topics:

- How to install the required AWS Mobile SDK components into your Xcode project
- How to create the API client object before calling the API's methods
- How to call the API methods through the corresponding SDK methods on the API client object
- How to prepare a method input and parse its result using the corresponding model classes of the SDK

**Topics**

- Use Generated iOS SDK (Objective-C) to Call API (p. 448)
- Use Generated iOS SDK (Swift) to Call API (p. 452)

### Use Generated iOS SDK (Objective-C) to Call API

Before beginning the following procedure, you must complete the steps in Generate SDKs for an API Using the API Gateway Console (p. 396) for iOS in Objective-C and download the .zip file of the generated SDK.

Install the AWS Mobile SDK and an iOS SDK generated by API Gateway in an Objective-C Project

The following procedure describes how to install the SDK.
To install and use an iOS SDK generated by API Gateway in Objective-C

1. Extract the contents of the API Gateway-generated .zip file you downloaded earlier. Using the `SimpleCalc API (p. 402)`, you may want to rename the unzipped SDK folder to something like `sdk_objc_simple_calc`. In this SDK folder there is a `README.md` file and a `Podfile` file. The `README.md` file contains the instructions to install and use the SDK. This tutorial provides details about these instructions. The installation leverages CocoaPods to import required API Gateway libraries and other dependent AWS Mobile SDK components. You must update the `Podfile` to import the SDKs into your app's Xcode project. The unarchived SDK folder also contains a `generated-src` folder that contains the source code of the generated SDK of your API.

2. Launch Xcode and create a new iOS Objective-C project. Make a note of the project's target. You will need to set it in the `Podfile`.

3. To import the AWS Mobile SDK for iOS into the Xcode project by using CocoaPods, do the following:
   1. Install CocoaPods by running the following command in a terminal window:
      ```bash
      sudo gem install cocoapods
      pod setup
      ```
   2. Copy the `Podfile` file from the extracted SDK folder into the same directory containing your Xcode project file. Replace the following block:
      ```ruby
      target '<YourXcodeTarget>' do
       pod 'AWSAPIGateway', '~> 2.4.7'
      end
      ```
      with your project's target name:
      ```ruby
      target 'app_objc_simple_calc' do
       pod 'AWSAPIGateway', '~> 2.4.7'
      end
      ```
      If your Xcode project already contains a file named `Podfile`, add the following line of code to it:
      ```ruby
      pod 'AWSAPIGateway', '~> 2.4.7'
      ```
   3. Open a terminal window and run the following command:
      ```bash
      pod install
      ```
      This installs the API Gateway component and other dependent AWS Mobile SDK components.
   4. Close the Xcode project and then open the `.xcworkspace` file to relaunch Xcode.
5. Add all of the `.h` and `.m` files from the extracted SDK’s `generated-src` directory into your Xcode project.

To import the AWS Mobile SDK for iOS Objective-C into your project by explicitly downloading AWS Mobile SDK or using Carthage, follow the instructions in the `README.md` file. Be sure to use only one of these options to import the AWS Mobile SDK.

Call API Methods Using the iOS SDK generated by API Gateway in an Objective-C Project

When you generated the SDK with the prefix of `SIMPLE_CALC` for this SimpleCalc API (p. 402) with two models for input (`Input`) and output (`Result`) of the methods, in the SDK, the resulting API client class becomes `SIMPLE_CALCClient` and the corresponding data classes are `SIMPLE_CALCInput` and `SIMPLE_CALCResult`, respectively. The API requests and responses are mapped to the SDK methods as follows:

- The API request of

  ```
  GET /?a=...&b=...&op=...
  ```

  becomes the SDK method of

  ```
  (AWSTask *)rootGet:(NSString *)op a:(NSString *)a b:(NSString *)b
  ```

  The `AWSTask.result` property is of the `SIMPLE_CALCResult` type if the `Result` model was added to the method response. Otherwise, the property is of the `NSDictionary` type.

- This API request of

  ```
  POST /
  ```
Use iOS SDK Generated by API Gateway in Objective-C or Swift

```json
{
  "a": "Number",
  "b": "Number",
  "op": "String"
}
```

becomes the SDK method of

```objective-c
(AWSTask *)rootPost:(SIMPLE_CALCInput *)body
```

- The API request of

```plaintext
GET /{a}/{b}/{op}
```

becomes the SDK method of

```objective-c
(AWSTask *)aBOpGet:(NSString *)a b:(NSString *)b op:(NSString *)op
```

The following procedure describes how to call the API methods in Objective-C app source code; for example, as part of the `viewDidLoad` delegate in a ViewController.m file.

**To call the API through the iOS SDK generated by API Gateway**

1. Import the API client class header file to make the API client class callable in the app:

   ```objective-c
   #import "SIMPLE_CALCSimpleCalc.h"
   ```

   The `#import` statement also imports `SIMPLE_CALCInput.h` and `SIMPLE_CALCRestult.h` for the two model classes.

2. Instantiate the API client class:

   ```objective-c
   SIMPLE_CALCSimpleCalcClient *apiInstance = [SIMPLE_CALCSimpleCalcClient defaultClient];
   ```

To use Amazon Cognito with the API, set the `defaultServiceConfiguration` property on the default `AWSServiceManager` object, as shown in the following, before calling the `defaultClient` method to create the API client object (shown in the preceding example):

```objective-c
AWSRegionUSEast1
AWSRegionUSEast1
```

3. Call the `GET /?a=1&b=2&op=+` method to perform 1+2:

   ```objective-c
   [apiInstance rootGet: @"+"] a: @"1" b: @"2"
   ```

   where the helper function `handleApiResponse:task` formats the result as a string to be displayed in a text field (_textField1).
Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide
Use iOS SDK Generated by API
Gateway in Objective-C or Swift
- (NSString *)handleApiResponse:(AWSTask *)task {
if (task.error != nil) {
return [NSString stringWithFormat: @"Error: %@", task.error.description];
} else if (task.result != nil && [task.result isKindOfClass:[SIMPLE_CALCResult
class]]) {
return [NSString stringWithFormat:@"%@ %@ %@ = %@\n",task.result.input.a,
task.result.input.op, task.result.input.b, task.result.output.c];
}
return nil;
}

The resulting display is 1 + 2 = 3.
4.

Call the POST / with a payload to perform 1-2:
SIMPLE_CALCInput *input = [[SIMPLE_CALCInput alloc] init];
input.a = [NSNumber numberWithInt:1];
input.b = [NSNumber numberWithInt:2];
input.op = @"-";
[[apiInstance rootPost:input] continueWithBlock:^id _Nullable(AWSTask * _Nonnull
task) {
_textField2.text = [self handleApiResponse:task];
return nil;
}];

The resulting display is 1 - 2 = -1.
5.

Call the GET /{a}/{b}/{op} to perform 1/2:
[[apiInstance aBOpGet:@"1" b:@"2" op:@"div"] continueWithBlock:^id _Nullable(AWSTask *
_Nonnull task) {
_textField3.text = [self handleApiResponse:task];
return nil;
}];

The resulting display is 1 div 2 = 0.5. Here, div is used in place of / because the simple Lambda
function (p. 400) in the backend does not handle URL encoded path variables.

Use Generated iOS SDK (Swift) to Call API
Before beginning the following procedure, you must complete the steps in Generate SDKs for an API
Using the API Gateway Console (p. 396) for iOS in Swift and download the .zip ﬁle of the generated SDK.
Topics
• Install AWS Mobile SDK and API Gateway-Generated SDK in a Swift Project (p. 452)
• Call API methods through the iOS SDK generated by API Gateway in a Swift Project (p. 455)

Install AWS Mobile SDK and API Gateway-Generated SDK in a Swift Project
The following procedure describes how to install the SDK.

To install and use an iOS SDK generated by API Gateway in Swift
1.

Extract the contents of the API Gateway-generated .zip ﬁle you downloaded earlier. Using the
SimpleCalc API (p. 402), you may want to rename the unzipped SDK folder to something like
sdk_swift_simple_calc. In this SDK folder there is a README.md ﬁle and a Podfile ﬁle. The

452


README.md file contains the instructions to install and use the SDK. This tutorial provides details about these instructions. The installation leverages CocoaPods to import required AWS Mobile SDK components. You must update the Podfile to import the SDKs into your Swift app’s Xcode project. The unarchived SDK folder also contains a generated-src folder that contains the source code of the generated SDK of your API.

2. Launch Xcode and create a new iOS Swift project. Make a note of the project's target. You will need to set it in the Podfile.

3. To import the required AWS Mobile SDK components into the Xcode project by using CocoaPods, do the following:

1. If it is not installed, install CocoaPods by running the following command in a terminal window:

```
sudo gem install cocoapods
pod setup
```

2. Copy the Podfile file from the extracted SDK folder into the same directory containing your Xcode project file. Replace the following block:

```
target 'YourXcodeTarget' do
    pod 'AWSAPIGateway', '~> 2.4.7'
end
```

with your project's target name as shown:

```
target 'app_swift_simple_calc' do
    pod 'AWSAPIGateway', '~> 2.4.7'
end
```

If your Xcode project already contains a Podfile with the correct target, you can simply add the following line of code to the do ... end loop:

```
pod 'AWSAPIGateway', '~> 2.4.7'
```

3. Open a terminal window and run the following command in the app directory:

```
pod install
```

This installs the API Gateway component and any dependent AWS Mobile SDK components into the app’s project.

4. Close the Xcode project and then open the *.xcworkspace file to relaunch Xcode.
5. Add all of the SDK's header files (.h) and Swift source code files (.swift) from the extracted generated-src directory to your Xcode project.

6. To enable calling the Objective-C libraries of the AWS Mobile SDK from your Swift code project, set the `Bridging_Header.h` file path on the Objective-C Bridging Header property under the Swift Compiler - General setting of your Xcode project configuration:

   Tip
   You can type `bridging` in the search box of Xcode to locate the Objective-C Bridging Header property.

7. Build the Xcode project to verify that it is properly configured before proceeding further. If your Xcode uses a more recent version of Swift than the one supported for the AWS Mobile SDK, you will get Swift compiler errors. In this case, set the Use Legacy Swift Language Version property to Yes under the Swift Compiler - Version setting:
To import the AWS Mobile SDK for iOS in Swift into your project by explicitly downloading the AWS Mobile SDK or using Carthage, follow the instructions in the README.md file that comes with the SDK package. Be sure to use only one of these options to import the AWS Mobile SDK.

**Call API methods through the iOS SDK generated by API Gateway in a Swift Project**

When you generated the SDK with the prefix of SIMPLE_CALC for this SimpleCalc API (p. 402) with two models to describe the input (Input) and output (Result) of the API's requests and responses, in the SDK, the resulting API client class becomes SIMPLE_CALCSimpleCalcClient and the corresponding data classes are SIMPLE_CALCInput and SIMPLE_CALCResult, respectively. The API requests and responses are mapped to the SDK methods as follows:

- **The API request of**

  ```
  GET /?a=...&b=...&op=...
  ```

  becomes the SDK method of

  ```
  public func rootGet(op: String?, a: String?, b: String?) -> AWSTask
  ```

  The AWSTask.result property is of the SIMPLE_CALCResult type if the Result model was added to the method response. Otherwise, it is of the NSDictionary type.

- **This API request of**

  ```
  POST /
  {
    "a": "Number",
    "b": "Number",
    "op": "String"
  }
  ```

  becomes the SDK method of

  ```
  public func rootPost(body: SIMPLE_CALCInput) -> AWSTask
  ```

- **The API request of**

  ```
  GET /{a}/{b}/{op}
  ```

  becomes the SDK method of

  ```
  public func aBOpGet(a: String, b: String, op: String) -> AWSTask
  ```

The following procedure describes how to call the API methods in Swift app source code; for example, as part of the viewDidLoad() delegate in a ViewController.m file.

**To call the API through the iOS SDK generated by API Gateway**

1. Instantiate the API client class:
Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide
Use iOS SDK Generated by API
Gateway in Objective-C or Swift
let client = SIMPLE_CALCSimpleCalcClient.defaultClient()

To use Amazon Cognito with the API, set a default AWS service conﬁguration (shown following)
before getting the defaultClient method (shown previously):
let credentialsProvider =
AWSCognitoCredentialsProvider(regionType: AWSRegionType.USEast1, identityPoolId:
"my_pool_id")
let configuration = AWSServiceConfiguration(region: AWSRegionType.USEast1,
credentialsProvider: credentialsProvider)
AWSServiceManager.defaultServiceManager().defaultServiceConfiguration = configuration

2.

Call the GET /?a=1&b=2&op=+ method to perform 1+2:
client.rootGet("+", a: "1", b:"2").continueWithBlock {(task: AWSTask) -> AnyObject? in
self.showResult(task)
return nil
}

where the helper function self.showResult(task) prints the result or error to the console; for
example:
func showResult(task: AWSTask) {
if let error = task.error {
print("Error: \(error)")
} else if let result = task.result {
if result is SIMPLE_CALCResult {
let res = result as! SIMPLE_CALCResult
print(String(format:"%@ %@ %@ = %@", res.input!.a!, res.input!.op!,
res.input!.b!, res.output!.c!))
} else if result is NSDictionary {
let res = result as! NSDictionary
print("NSDictionary: \(res)")
}
}
}

In a production app, you can display the result or error in a text ﬁeld. The resulting display is 1 + 2
= 3.
3.

Call the POST / with a payload to perform 1-2:
let body = SIMPLE_CALCInput()
body.a=1
body.b=2
body.op="-"
client.rootPost(body).continueWithBlock {(task: AWSTask) -> AnyObject? in
self.showResult(task)
return nil
}

The resultant display is 1 - 2 = -1.
4.

Call the GET /{a}/{b}/{op} to perform 1/2:
client.aBOpGet("1", b:"2", op:"div").continueWithBlock {(task: AWSTask) -> AnyObject?
in
self.showResult(task)
return nil

456


The resulting display is \( \frac{1}{2} = 0.5 \). Here, \( \div \) is used in place of \( / \) because the simple Lambda function (p. 400) in the backend does not handle URL encoded path variables.

## Trace API Management and Invocation

### Topics
- Log API management calls to Amazon API Gateway Using AWS CloudTrail (p. 457)
- Monitor API execution with Amazon CloudWatch (p. 459)

For API execution, API Gateway automatically reports to Amazon CloudWatch your API's execution metrics on the API- and stage-levels, provided that your account has an IAM role with permissions to write logs into CloudWatch configured.

You can also opt in for API Gateway to send to CloudWatch method-level metrics using the API Gateway console (p. 354) or calling the API Gateway REST API or one of its SDKs. Based on these metrics, you can set CloudWatch custom alarms for troubleshooting any performance issues of your APIs.

The CloudWatch metrics include statistics about caching, latency and detected errors. You can inspect the CloudWatch logs to troubleshoot your API implementation or execution using the API dashboard in the API Gateway console or using the CloudWatch console. For more information about CloudWatch, see the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

For API management operations, you can create AWS CloudTrail trails to log events involved in the API Gateway REST API calls. You can create the trails in the CloudTrail console.

You can use the logs to troubleshoot API creation, deployment and updates. You can also use Amazon CloudWatch to monitor the CloudTrail logs. To learn more about CloudTrail, see the AWS CloudTrail User Guide.

**Note**

CloudTrail logs API Gateway REST API calls an API developer or owner made against the `apigateway` component, whereas CloudWatch logs API calls an API customer or client made against the `execute-api` component of API Gateway.

### Log API management calls to Amazon API Gateway Using AWS CloudTrail

You can use AWS CloudTrail to capture API Gateway REST API calls in your AWS account and deliver the log files to an Amazon S3 bucket you specify. Examples of these API calls include creating a new API, resource, or method in API Gateway. CloudTrail captures such API calls from the API Gateway console or from the API Gateway APIs directly. Using the information collected by CloudTrail, you can determine which request was made to API Gateway, the source IP address from which the request was made, who made the request, when it was made, and so on. To learn more about CloudTrail, including how to configure and enable it, see the AWS CloudTrail User Guide.

### API Gateway Information in CloudTrail

When CloudTrail logging is enabled in your AWS account, API calls made to API Gateway actions are tracked in log files. API Gateway records are written together with other AWS service records in a log file. CloudTrail determines when to create and write to a new file based on a time period and file size.
All of the API Gateway actions are logged and documented in the API Gateway REST API (p. 558). For example, calls to create a new API, resource, or method in API Gateway generate entries in CloudTrail log files.

Every log entry contains information about who generated the request. The user identity information in the log helps you determine whether the request was made with root or IAM user credentials, with temporary security credentials for a role or federated user, or by another AWS service. For more information, see the `userIdentity` field in the CloudTrail Event Reference.

You can store your log files in your bucket for as long as you want, but you can also define Amazon S3 lifecycle rules to archive or delete log files automatically. By default, your log files are encrypted by using Amazon S3 server-side encryption (SSE).

You can choose to have CloudTrail publish Amazon SNS notifications when new log files are delivered so you can take action quickly. For more information, see Configuring Amazon SNS Notifications.

You can also aggregate API Gateway log files from multiple AWS regions and multiple AWS accounts into a single Amazon S3 bucket. For more information, see Aggregating CloudTrail Log Files to a Single Amazon S3 Bucket.

Understanding API Gateway Log File Entries

CloudTrail log files can contain one or more log entries where each entry is made up of multiple JSON-formatted events. A log entry represents a single request from any source and includes information about the requested action, any parameters, the date and time of the action, and so on. The log entries are not guaranteed to be in any particular order. That is, they are not an ordered stack trace of the public API calls.

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the API Gateway get resource action:

```json
{
  Records: [
    {
      eventVersion: "1.03",
      userIdentity: {
        type: "Root",
        principalId: "AKIAI44QH8DHBEXAMPLE",
        arn: "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root",
        accountId: "123456789012",
        accessKeyId: "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        sessionContext: {
          attributes: {
            mfaAuthenticated: "false",
            creationDate: "2015-06-16T23:37:58Z"
          }
        }
      },
      eventTime: "2015-06-17T00:47:28Z",
      eventSource: "apigateway.amazonaws.com",
      eventName: "GetResource",
      awsRegion: "us-east-1",
      sourceIPAddress: "203.0.113.11",
      userAgent: "example-user-agent-string",
      requestParameters: {
        restApiId: "3rbEXAMPLE",
        resourceId: "5tfEXAMPLE",
        template: false
      },
      responseElements: null,
      requestID: "6d9c4bfc-148a-11e5-81b6-7577cEXAMPLE",
      eventID: "4d293154-a15d-4c33-9e0a-ff5eeEXAMPLE",
      readOnly: true
    }
  ]
}
```
Monitor API execution with Amazon CloudWatch

You can monitor API execution using CloudWatch, which collects and processes raw data from API Gateway into readable, near real-time metrics. These statistics are recorded for a period of two weeks, so that you can access historical information and gain a better perspective on how your web application or service is performing. By default, API Gateway metric data is automatically sent to CloudWatch in one-minute periods. For more information, see What Are Amazon CloudWatch, Amazon CloudWatch Events, and Amazon CloudWatch Logs? in the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

The metrics reported by API Gateway provide information that you can analyze in different ways. The list below shows some common uses for the metrics. These are suggestions to get you started, not a comprehensive list.

- Monitor the IntegrationLatency metrics to measure the responsiveness of the backend.
- Monitor the Latency metrics to measure the overall responsiveness of your API calls.
- Monitor the CacheHitCount and CacheMissCount metrics to optimize cache capacities to achieve a desired performance.

### Topics
- Amazon API Gateway Dimensions and Metrics (p. 459)
- View CloudWatch Metrics with the API Dashboard in API Gateway (p. 461)
- View API Gateway Metrics in the CloudWatch Console (p. 461)
- View API Gateway Log Events in the CloudWatch Console (p. 462)
- Monitoring Tools in AWS (p. 462)

Amazon API Gateway Dimensions and Metrics

The metrics and dimensions that API Gateway sends to Amazon CloudWatch are listed below. For more information, see Monitor API execution with Amazon CloudWatch (p. 459).

### API Gateway Metrics

Amazon API Gateway sends metric data to CloudWatch every minute.

The AWS/ApiGateway namespace includes the following metrics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4XXError</td>
<td>The number of client-side errors captured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit: count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5XXError</td>
<td>The number of server-side errors captured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit: count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CacheHitCount</td>
<td>The number of requests served from the API cache.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

459
Monitor API execution with Amazon CloudWatch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CacheMissCount</td>
<td>The number of requests served from the back end when API caching is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>The number of calls to API methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IntegrationLatency</td>
<td>The time between when API Gateway relays a request to the back end and when it receives a response from the back end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latency</td>
<td>The time between when API Gateway receives a request from a client and when it returns a response to the client. The latency includes the integration latency and other API Gateway overhead.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dimensions for Metrics

You can use the dimensions in the following table to filter API Gateway metrics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ApiName</td>
<td>Filters API Gateway metrics for an API of the specified API name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApiName, Method, Resource, Stage</td>
<td>Filters API Gateway metrics for an API method of the specified API, stage, resource, and method.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

API Gateway will not send such metrics unless you have explicitly enabled detailed CloudWatch metrics. You can do this in the console by selecting **Enable CloudWatch Metrics** under a stage **Settings** tab. Alternatively, you can call the `stage:update` action of the API Gateway REST API to update the `metricsEnabled` property to `true`.

Enabling such metrics will incur additional charges to your account. For pricing information, see Amazon CloudWatch Pricing.

| ApiName, Stage | Filters API Gateway metrics for an API stage of the specified API and stage. |
View CloudWatch Metrics with the API Dashboard in API Gateway

You can use the API dashboard in the API Gateway Console to display the CloudWatch metrics of your deployed API in API Gateway. These are shown as a summary of API activity over time.

Topics

- Prerequisites (p. 461)
- Examine API activities in the Dashboard (p. 461)

Prerequisites

1. You must have an API created in API Gateway. Follow the instructions in Creating an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 79).
2. You must have the API deployed at least once. Follow the instructions in Deploying an API in Amazon API Gateway (p. 350).
3. To get CloudWatch metrics for individual methods, you must have CloudWatch Logs enabled for those methods in a given stage. The process is prescribed in Update Stage Settings (p. 354). Your account will be charged for accessing method-level logs, but not for accessing API- or stage-level logs.

Examine API activities in the Dashboard

2. Choose the name of the API.
3. Under the selected API, choose Dashboard.
4. To display a summary of API activity over time, for Stage, choose the desired stage.
5. Use From and To to enter the date range.
6. Refresh, if needed, and view individual metrics displayed in separate graphs titled API Calls, Integration Latency, Latency, 4xx Error and 5xx Error. The CacheHitCount and CacheMissCount graphs will be displayed only if API caching has been enabled.

Tip
To examine method-level CloudWatch metrics, make sure that you have enabled CloudWatch Logs on a method level. For more information about how to set up method-level logging, see Update Stage Settings Using the API Gateway Console (p. 354).

View API Gateway Metrics in the CloudWatch Console

Metrics are grouped first by the service namespace, and then by the various dimension combinations within each namespace.

To view API Gateway metrics using the CloudWatch console

2. If necessary, change the region. From the navigation bar, select the region where your AWS resources reside. For more information, see Regions and Endpoints.
3. In the navigation pane, choose Metrics.
4. In the All metrics tab, choose API Gateway.
5. To view metrics by stage, choose the By Stage panel. And then select desired APIs and metric names.
6. To view metrics by specific API, choose the **By API Name** panel. And then select desired APIs and metric names.

**To view metrics using the AWS CLI**

1. At a command prompt, use the following command to list metrics:

   ```bash
   aws cloudwatch list-metrics --namespace "AWS/ApiGateway"
   ```

2. To view a specific statistics (for example, *Average*) over a period of time of a 5 minutes intervals, call the following command:

   ```bash
   aws cloudwatch get-metric-statistics --namespace AWS/ApiGateway --metric-name Count --start-time 2011-10-03T23:00:00Z --end-time 2017-10-05T23:00:00Z --period 300 --statistics Average
   ```

**View API Gateway Log Events in the CloudWatch Console**

**To view logged API requests and responses using the CloudWatch console**

1. In the navigation pane, choose **Logs**.
2. Under the **Log Groups** table, choose a log group of the `API-Gateway-Execution-Logs_{rest-api-id}/ {stage-name}` name.
3. Under the **Log Streams** table, choose a log stream. You can use the timestamp to help locate the log stream of your interest.
4. Choose **Text** to view raw text or choose **Row** to view the event row by row.

**Note**

CloudWatch lets you delete log groups or streams. However, you should refrain from deleting API Gateway API log groups or streams and let API Gateway manage these resources. Manually deleting log groups or streams may cause API requests and responses not logged. If that happens, you can delete the entire log group for the API and redeploy the API. This is because API Gateway creates log groups or log streams for an API stage at the time when it is deployed. Also failed requests due to throttling (429) or access (403) errors are not logged and will not be included in the report.

**Monitoring Tools in AWS**

AWS provides various tools that you can use to monitor API Gateway. You can configure some of these tools to do the monitoring for you automatically, while other tools require manual intervention. We recommend that you automate monitoring tasks as much as possible.

**Automated Monitoring Tools in AWS**

You can use the following automated monitoring tools to watch API Gateway and report when something is wrong:

- **Amazon CloudWatch Alarms** – Watch a single metric over a time period that you specify, and perform one or more actions based on the value of the metric relative to a given threshold over a number of time periods. The action is a notification sent to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic or Auto Scaling policy. CloudWatch alarms do not invoke actions simply because they are in a particular state; the state must have changed and been maintained for a specified number of periods. For more information, see Monitor API execution with Amazon CloudWatch (p. 459).
Monitor API execution with Amazon CloudWatch

• **Amazon CloudWatch Logs** – Monitor, store, and access your log files from AWS CloudTrail or other sources. For more information, see Monitoring Log Files in the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

• **Amazon CloudWatch Events** – Match events and route them to one or more target functions or streams to make changes, capture state information, and take corrective action. For more information, see What is Amazon CloudWatch Events in the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

• **AWS CloudTrail Log Monitoring** – Share log files between accounts, monitor CloudTrail log files in real time by sending them to CloudWatch Logs, write log processing applications in Java, and validate that your log files have not changed after delivery by CloudTrail. For more information, see Working with CloudTrail Log Files in the AWS CloudTrail User Guide.

**Manual Monitoring Tools**

Another important part of monitoring API Gateway involves manually monitoring those items that the CloudWatch alarms don't cover. The API Gateway, CloudWatch, and other AWS console dashboards provide an at-a-glance view of the state of your AWS environment. We recommend that you also check the log files on API execution.

• API Gateway dashboard shows the following statistics for a given API stage during a specified period of time:
  - API Calls
  - Cache Hit, only when API caching is enabled.
  - Cache Miss, only when API caching is enabled.
  - Latency
  - Integration Latency
  - 4XX Error
  - 5XX Error

• The CloudWatch home page shows:
  - Current alarms and status
  - Graphs of alarms and resources
  - Service health status

In addition, you can use CloudWatch to do the following:

• Create customized dashboards to monitor the services you care about
• Graph metric data to troubleshoot issues and discover trends
• Search and browse all your AWS resource metrics
• Create and edit alarms to be notified of problems

**Creating CloudWatch Alarms to Monitor API Gateway**

You can create a CloudWatch alarm that sends an Amazon SNS message when the alarm changes state. An alarm watches a single metric over a time period you specify, and performs one or more actions based on the value of the metric relative to a given threshold over a number of time periods. The action is a notification sent to an Amazon SNS topic or Auto Scaling policy. Alarms invoke actions for sustained state changes only. CloudWatch alarms do not invoke actions simply because they are in a particular state; the state must have changed and been maintained for a specified number of periods.
API Gateway Extensions to Swagger

The API Gateway extensions support the AWS-specific authorization and API Gateway-specific API integrations. In this section, we will describe the API Gateway extensions to the Swagger specification.

Tip
To understand how the API Gateway extensions are used in an app, you can use the API Gateway console to create an API and export it to a Swagger definition file. For more information on how to export an API, see Export an API (p. 394).

Topics
- x-amazon-apigateway-any-method Object (p. 464)
- x-amazon-apigateway-api-key-source Property (p. 465)
- x-amazon-apigateway-authorizer Object (p. 466)
- x-amazon-apigateway-authtype Property (p. 469)
- x-amazon-apigateway-binary-media-types Property (p. 469)
- x-amazon-apigateway-documentation Object (p. 470)
- x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses Object (p. 470)
- x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.gatewayResponse Object (p. 471)
- x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.responseParameters Object (p. 472)
- x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.responseTemplates Object (p. 473)
- x-amazon-apigateway-integration Object (p. 473)
- x-amazon-apigateway-integration.requestTemplates Object (p. 476)
- x-amazon-apigateway-integration.requestParameters Object (p. 477)
- x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responses Object (p. 478)
- x-amazon-apigateway-integration.response Object (p. 479)
- x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responseTemplates Object (p. 480)
- x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responseParameters Object (p. 481)
- x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator Property (p. 481)
- x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators Object (p. 482)
- x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators.requestValidator Object (p. 483)

x-amazon-apigateway-any-method Object

Specifies the Swagger Operation Object for the API Gateway catch-all ANY method in a Swagger Path Item Object. This object can exist alongside other Operation objects and will catch any HTTP method that was not explicitly declared.

The following table lists the properties extended by API Gateway. For the other Swagger Operation properties, see the Swagger specification.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x-amazon-apigateway-integration</td>
<td>x-amazon-apigateway-integration Object (p. 473)</td>
<td>Specifies the integration of the method with the backend. This is an extended property of the Swagger Operation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
x-amazon-apigateway-any-method Example

The following example integrates the ANY method on a proxy resource, `{proxy+}`, with a Lambda function, TestSimpleProxy.

```
"/{proxy+}": {
    "x-amazon-apigateway-any-method": {
        "produces": [
            "application/json"
        ],
        "parameters": [
            {
                "name": "proxy",
                "in": "path",
                "required": true,
                "type": "string"
            }
        ],
        "responses": {},
        "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
            "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
            "httpMethod": "POST",
            "type": "aws_proxy"
        }
    }
}
```

x-amazon-apigateway-api-key-source Property

Specify the source to receive an API key to throttle API methods that request a key. This API-level property is a String type.

Specify the source of the API key for requests. Valid values are:

- HEADER for receiving the API key from the X-API-Key header of a request.
- AUTHORIZER for receiving the API key from the UsageIdentifierKey from a custom authorizer.

x-amazon-apigateway-api-key-source Example

The following example sets the X-API-Key header as the API key source.

```
{
    "swagger": "2.0",
    "info": {
        "title": "Test1"
    },
    "schemes": [ "https" ],
    "basePath": "/import",
    "x-amazon-apigateway-api-key-source": "HEADER",
    ...
```
**x-amazon-apigateway-authorizer Object**

Defines a custom authorizer to be applied for authorization of method invocations in API Gateway. This object is an extended property of the Swagger Security Definitions object.

**Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The type of the authorizer. This is a required property and the value must be &quot;token&quot;, for an authorizer with the caller identity embedded in an authorization token, or &quot;request&quot;, for an authorizer with the caller identity contained in request parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorizerUri</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) of the authorizer Lambda function. The syntax is as follows: &quot;arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1:lambda:path/2015-03-31/functions/arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:account-id:function:auth_function_name/invocations&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorizerCredentials</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Credentials required for invoking the authorizer, if any, in the form of an ARN of an IAM execution role. For example, &quot;arn:aws:iamp:account-id:IAM_role&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identitySource</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Comma-separated list of mapping expressions of the request parameters as the identity source. Applicable for the authorizer of the &quot;request&quot; type only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identityValidationExpression</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>A regular expression for validating the token as the incoming identity. For example, &quot;^x-[a-z]+$&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorizerResultTtlInSeconds</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The number of seconds during which the resulting IAM policy is cached.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
x-amazon-apigateway-authorizer Examples

The following Swagger security definitions example specifies a custom authorizer of the "token" type and named test-authorizer.

```
"securityDefinitions" : {
  "test-authorizer" : {
    "type" : "apiKey", // Required and the value must be "apiKey"
    "name" : "Authorization", // The name of the header containing the
    "in" : "header", // Required and the value must be "header"
    "x-amazon-apigateway-authtype" : "oauth2", // Specifies the authorization mechanism
    "x-amazon-apigateway-authorizer" : { // An API Gateway custom authorizer
da "type" : "token", // Required property and the value must be "token"
    arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:account-id:function:function-name/invocations",
    "authorizerCredentials" : "arn:aws:iam::account-id:role",
    "identityValidationExpression" : "^x-\[a-z]+",
    "authorizerResultTtlInSeconds" : 60
  }
}
```

The following Swagger operation object snippet sets the GET /http to use the custom authorizer specified above.

```
"/http" : {
  "get" : {
    "responses" : {},
    "security" : [ {
      "test-authorizer" : [ ]
    } ],
    "x-amazon-apigateway-integration" : {
      "type" : "http",
      "responses" : {
        "default" : {
          "statusCode" : "200"
        }
      },
      "httpMethod" : "GET",
      "uri" : "http://api.example.com"
    }
  }
}
```

The following Swagger security definitions example specifies a custom authorizer of the "request" type, with a single header parameter (auth) as the identity source. The securityDefinitions is named request_authorizer_single_header.

```
"securityDefinitions": {
  "request_authorizer_single_header" : {
    "type" : "apiKey",
    "name" : "auth", // The name of a single header or query parameter as
    "in" : "header" // The name of the header containing the
  }
```
The following Swagger security definitions example specifies a custom authorizer of the "request" type, with one header (HeaderAuth1) and one query string parameter QueryString1 as the identity sources.

```
"securityDefinitions": {
    "request_authorizer_header_query": {
        "type": "apiKey",
        "name": "Unused", // Must be "Unused" for multiple identity sources or non header or query type of request parameters.
        "in": "header",  // Must be "header" for multiple identity sources or non header or query type of request parameters.
        "x-amazon-apigateway-authtype": "custom",
        "x-amazon-apigateway-authorizer": {
            "type": "request",
            "authorizerCredentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/AWSepIntegTest-CS-LambdaRole",
            "authorizerResultTtlInSeconds": 300
        }
    }
}
```

The following Swagger security definitions example specifies an API Gateway custom authorizer of the "request" type, with a single stage variable (stage) as the identity source.

```
"securityDefinitions": {
    "request_authorizer_single_stagevar": {
        "type": "apiKey",
        "name": "Unused", // Must be "Unused", for multiple identity sources or non header or query type of request parameters.
        "in": "header",  // Must be "header", for multiple identity sources or non header or query type of request parameters.
        "x-amazon-apigateway-authtype": "custom",
        "x-amazon-apigateway-authorizer": {
            "type": "request",
            "identitySource": "stageVariables.stage", // Request parameter mapping expression of the identity source. In this example, it is the stage variable.
            "authorizerCredentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/AWSepIntegTest-CS-LambdaRole",
            "authorizerResultTtlInSeconds": 300
        }
    }
}
```
x-amazon-apigateway-authtype Property

Specify the type of a custom authorizer. It is parsed by the API Gateway API import and export features.

This property is an extended property of the Swagger Security Definitions Operation object.

x-amazon-apigateway-authtype Example

The following example sets the type of a custom authorizer using OAuth 2.

```
"cust-authorizer" : {
    "type" : "...", // required
    "name" : "...", // name of the identity source header
    "in" : "header", // must be header
    "x-amazon-apigateway-authtype" : "oauth2", // Specifies the authorization mechanism
    for the client.
    "x-amazon-apigateway-authorizer" : {
        ...
    }
}
```

The following security definition example specifies authorization using AWS Signature Version 4:

```
"sigv4" : {
    "type" : "apiKey",
    "name" : "Authorization",
    "in" : "header",
    "x-amazon-apigateway-authtype" : "awsSigv4"
}
```

x-amazon-apigateway-binary-media-types Property

Specifies the list of binary media types to be supported by API Gateway, such as application/octet-stream, image/jpeg, etc. This extension is a JSON Array.

x-amazon-apigateway-binary-media-types Example

The following example shows the encoding lookup order of an API.

```
"x-amazon-apigateway-binary-media-types: [ "application/octet", "image/jpeg" ]
```
x-amazon-apigateway-documentation Object

Defines the documentation parts to be imported into API Gateway. This object is a JSON object containing an array of the DocumentationPart instances.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>documentationParts</td>
<td>Array</td>
<td>An array of the exported or imported DocumentationPart instances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>The version identifier of the snapshot of the exported documentation parts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x-amazon-apigateway-documentation Example

The following example of the API Gateway extension to Swagger defines DocumentationParts instances to be imported to or exported from an API in API Gateway.

```
{ ...
  "x-amazon-apigateway-documentation": {
    "version": "1.0.3",
    "documentationParts": [
      {
        "location": {
          "type": "API"
        },
        "properties": {
          "description": "API description",
          "info": {
            "description": "API info description 4",
            "version": "API info version 3"
          }
        }
      },
      {  // Another DocumentationPart instance
        ...
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses Object

Defines the gateway responses for an API as a string-to-GatewayResponse map of key-value pairs.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>responseType</td>
<td>x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.gatewayResponse (p. 471)</td>
<td>A GatewayResponse for the specified responseType.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses Example

The following API Gateway extension to Swagger example defines a GatewayResponses map containing two GatewayResponse instances, one for the DEFAULT_4XX type and another for the INVALID_API_KEY type.

```json
{
    "x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses": {
        "DEFAULT_4XX": {
            "responseParameters": {
                "gatewayresponse.header.Access-Control-Allow-Origin": "domain.com"
            },
            "responseTemplates": {
                "application/json": "{"\"message\": test 4xx b}"
            }
        },
        "INVALID_API_KEY": {
            "statusCode": "429",
            "responseTemplates": {
                "application/json": "{"\"message\": test forbidden ""
            }
        }
    }
}
```

x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.gatewayResponse Object

Defines a gateway response of a given response type, including the status code, any applicable response parameters, or response templates.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>responseParameters</td>
<td>x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.responseParameters (p. 472)</td>
<td>Specifies the GatewayResponse parameters, namely the header parameters. The parameter values can take any incoming request parameter (p. 185) value or a static custom value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responseTemplates</td>
<td>x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.responseTemplates (p. 473)</td>
<td>Specifies the mapping templates of the gateway response. The templates are not processed by the VTL engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statusCode</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>An HTTP status code for the gateway response.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.gatewayResponse Example

The following example of the API Gateway extension to Swagger defines a GatewayResponse to customize the INVALID_API_KEY response to return the status code of 456, the incoming request's api-key header value, and "Bad api-key" message.

```
"INVALID_API_KEY": {
    "statusCode": "456",
    "responseParameters": {
        "gatewayresponse.header.api-key": "method.request.header.api-key"
    },
    "responseTemplates": {
        "application/json": "{\"message\": \"Bad api-key\" }"
    }
}
```

x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.responseParameters Object

Defines a string-to-string map of key-value pairs to generate gateway response parameters from the incoming request parameters or using literal strings.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gatewayresponse.param-position.param-name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td><code>param-position</code> can be header, path or querystring. For more information, see Map Method Request Data to Integration Request Parameters (p. 185).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.responseParameters Example

The following Swagger extensions example shows a GatewayResponse response parameter mapping expression to enable CORS support for resources on the *.example.domain domains.

```
"responseParameters": {
    "gatewayresponse.header.Access-Control-Allow-Origin": '*.example.domain',
    "gatewayresponse.header.from-request-header" : method.request.header.Accept,
    "gatewayresponse.header.from-request-path" : method.request.path.petId,
    "gatewayresponse.header.from-request-query" : method.request.querystring.qname
}
```
x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.responseTemplates Object

Defines GatewayResponse mapping templates, as a string-to-string map of key-value pairs, for a given gateway response. For each key-value pair, the key is the content type; for example, "application/json", and the value is a stringified mapping template for simple variable substitutions. A GatewayResponse mapping template is not processed by the Velocity Template Language (VTL) engine.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>content-type</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>A GatewayResponse body mapping template supporting only simple variable substitution to customize a gateway response body.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x-amazon-apigateway-gateway-responses.responseTemplates Example

The following Swagger extensions example shows a GatewayResponse mapping template to customize an API Gateway-generated error response into an app-specific format.

```
"responseTemplates": {
  "application/json": "{ "message": $context.error.messageString, "type": $context.error.responseType, "statusCode": '488' }" } 
```

The following Swagger extensions example shows a GatewayResponse mapping template to override an API Gateway-generated error response with a static error message.

```
"responseTemplates": {
  "application/json": "{ "message": 'API-specific errors' }" 
} 
```

x-amazon-apigateway-integration Object

Specifies details of the backend integration used for this method. This extension is an extended property of the Swagger Operation object. The result is an API Gateway Integration object.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cacheKeyParameters</td>
<td>An array of string</td>
<td>A list of request parameters whose values are to be cached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cacheNamespace</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>An API-specific tag group of related cached parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectionId</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The ID of a VpcLink for the private integration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectionType</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The integration connection type. The valid value is &quot;VPC_LINK&quot; for private integration or &quot;INTERNET&quot;, otherwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credentials</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>For AWS IAM role-based credentials, specify the ARN of an appropriate IAM role. If unspecified, credentials will default to resource-based permissions that must be added manually to allow the API to access the resource. For more information, see Granting Permissions Using a Resource Policy. Note: when using IAM credentials, please ensure that AWS STS regional endpoints are enabled for the region where this API is deployed for best performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contentHandling</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Request payload encoding conversion types. Valid values are 1) CONVERT_TO_TEXT, for converting a binary payload into a Base64-encoded string or converting a text payload into a utf-8-encoded string or passing through the text payload natively without modification, and 2) CONVERT_TO_BINARY, for converting a text payload into Base64-decoded blob or passing through a binary payload natively without modification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>httpMethod</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The HTTP method used in the integration request. For Lambda function invocations, the value must be POST.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passthroughBehavior</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Specifies how a request payload of unmapped content type is passed through the integration request without modification. Supported values are when_no_templates, when_no_match, and never. For more information, see Integration.passthroughBehavior.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property Name | Type | Description
---|---|---
requestParameters | x-amazon-apigateway-integration.requestParameters Object (p. 477) | Specifies mappings from method request parameters to integration request parameters. Supported request parameters are querystring, path, header, and body.
requestTemplates | x-amazon-apigateway-integration.requestTemplates Object (p. 476) | Mapping templates for a request payload of specified MIME types.
responses | x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responses Object (p. 478) | Defines the method's responses and specifies desired parameter mappings or payload mappings from integration responses to method responses.
timeoutInMillis | integer | Integration timeouts between 50 ms and 29,000 ms.
type | string | The type of integration with the specified backend. The valid value is http (for integration with an HTTP backend) or aws (for integration with AWS Lambda functions or other AWS services, such as Amazon DynamoDB, Amazon Simple Notification Service or Amazon Simple Queue Service).
uri | string | The endpoint URI of the backend. For integrations of the aws type, this is an ARN value. For the HTTP integration, this is the URL of the HTTP endpoint including the https or http scheme.

### x-amazon-apigateway-integration Example

The following example integrates an API's POST method with a Lambda function in the backend. For demonstration purposes, the sample mapping templates shown in requestTemplates and responseTemplates of the examples below are assumed to apply to the following JSON-formatted payload: `{ "name":"value_1", "key":"value_2", "redirect": { "url" :
ds..." } to generate a JSON output of `{ "stage":"value_1", "user-id":"value_2" } or an XML output of `<stage>value_1</stage>`.

```
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration" : {
    "type" : "aws",
    "httpMethod" : "POST",
    "credentials" : "arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/apigateway-invoker-lambda-exec-role",
```


"requestTemplates" : {  
"application/json" : "#set ($root=$input.path('')) { \"stage\":  
\"$root.name\", \"user-id\": \"$root.key\" }",
"application/xml" : "#set ($root=$input.path('')) <stage>$root.name</stage> "  
},  
"requestParameters" : {  
"integration.request.path.stage" : "method.request.querystring.version",
"integration.request.querystring.provider" : "method.request.querystring.vendor"  
},  
"cacheNamespace" : "cache namespace",
"cacheKeyParameters" : [],
"responses" : {  
"2\d{2}" : {  
"statusCode" : "200",
"responseParameters" : {  
"method.response.header.requestId" : "integration.response.header.cid"
},
"responseTemplates" : {  
"application/json" : "#set ($root=$input.path('')) { \"stage\":  
\"$root.name\", \"user-id\": \"$root.key\" }",
"application/xml" : "#set ($root=$input.path('')) <stage>$root.name</stage> "  
}  
},  
"302" : {  
"statusCode" : "302",
"responseParameters" : {  
"method.response.header.Location" : "integration.response.body.redirect.url"
},
"default" : {  
"statusCode" : "400",
"responseParameters" : {  
"method.response.header.test-method-response-header" : "'static value'"
}
}  
}  
}

Note that double quotes ("\") of the JSON string in the mapping templates must be string-escaped (\").

**x-amazon-apigateway-integration.requestTemplates Object**

Specifies mapping templates for a request payload of the specified MIME types.

**Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MIME type</strong></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>An example of the MIME type is application/json. For information about creating a mapping template, see Mapping Templates (p. 166).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
x-amazon-apigateway-integration.requestTemplates Example

The following example sets mapping templates for a request payload of the application/json and application/xml MIME types.

```
"requestTemplates" : {
  "application/json" : "#set ($root=$input.path('')) { "stage": "$root.name", "user-id": "$root.key" }",
  "application/xml" : "#set ($root=$input.path('')) <stage>$root.name</stage> "
}
```

x-amazon-apigateway-integration.requestParameters Object

Specifies mappings from named method request parameters to integration request parameters. The method request parameters must be defined before being referenced.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integration.request.&lt;param-type&gt;.&lt;param-name&gt;</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The value must be a predefined method request parameter of the method.request.&lt;param-type&gt;.&lt;param-name&gt; format, where &lt;param-type&gt; can be querystring, path, header, or body. For the body parameter, the &lt;param-name&gt; is a JSON path expression without the $. prefix.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x-amazon-apigateway-integration.requestParameters Example

The following request parameter mappings example translates a method request's query (version), header (x-user-id) and path (service) parameters to the integration request's query (stage), header (x-userid), and path parameters (op), respectively.

```
"requestParameters" : {
  "integration.request.querystring.stage" : "method.request.querystring.version",
  "integration.request.header.x-userid" : "method.request.header.x-user-id",
  "integration.request.path.op" : "method.request.path.service"
},
```
x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responses Object

Defines the method's responses and specifies parameter mappings or payload mappings from integration responses to method responses.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Response status pattern</td>
<td>x-amazon-apigateway-integration.response Object (p. 479)</td>
<td>Selection regular expression used to match the integration response to the method response. For HTTP integrations, this regex applies to the integration response status code. For Lambda invocations, the regex applies to the errorMessage field of the error information object returned by AWS Lambda as a failure response body when the Lambda function execution throws an exception. Note: The Response status pattern property name refers to a response status code or regular expression describing a group of response status codes. It does not correspond to any identifier of an IntegrationResponse resource in the API Gateway REST API.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responses Example

The following example shows a list of responses from 2xx and 302 responses. For the 2xx response, the method response is mapped from the integration response's payload of the application/json or application/xml MIME type. This response uses the supplied mapping templates. For the 302 response, the method response returns a Location header whose value is derived from the redirect.url property on the integration response's payload.

```
"responses" : {
    "2\d{2}" : {
        "statusCode" : "200",
        "responseTemplates" : {
```

478
x-amazon-apigateway-integration.response Object

Defines a response and specifies parameter mappings or payload mappings from the integration response to the method response.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statusCode</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>HTTP status code for the method response; for example, &quot;200&quot;. This must correspond to a matching response in the Swagger Operation responses field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responseParameters</td>
<td>x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responseParameters Object (p. 481)</td>
<td>Specifies parameter mappings for the response. Only the header and body parameters of the integration response can be mapped to the header parameters of the method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contentHandling</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Response payload encoding conversion types. Valid values are 1) CONVERT_TO_TEXT, for converting a binary payload into a Base64-encoded string or converting a text payload into a utf-8-encoded string or passing through the text payload natively without modification, and 2) CONVERT_TO_BINARY, for converting a text payload into Base64-decoded blob or passing through a binary payload natively without modification.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
x-amazon-apigateway-integration.response Example

The following example defines a 302 response for the method that derives a payload of the application/json or application/xml MIME type from the backend. The response uses the supplied mapping templates and returns the redirect URL from the integration response in the method's Location header.

```
{
    "statusCode" : "302",
    "responseTemplates" : {
        "application/json" : 
        "#set ($root=$input.path('$')) { "stage": "$root.name",
        "user-id": "$root.key" }",
        "application/xml" : 
        "#set ($root=$input.path('$')) <stage>$root.name</stage> "
    },
    "responseParameters" : {
        "method.response.header.Location": "integration.response.body.redirect.url"
    }
}
```

x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responseTemplates Object

Specifies mapping templates for a response payload of the specified MIME types.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MIME type</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Specifies a mapping template to transform the integration response body to the method response body for a given MIME type. For information about creating a mapping template, see Mapping Templates (p. 166). An example of the MIME type is application/json.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responseTemplate Example

The following example sets mapping templates for a request payload of the application/json and application/xml MIME types.

```
"responseTemplates" : {
```
x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responseParameters Object

Specifies mappings from integration method response parameters to method response parameters. Only the header and body types of the integration response parameters can be mapped to the header type of the method response.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>method.response.header.&lt;param-name&gt;</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>The named parameter value can be derived from the header and body types of the integration response parameters only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x-amazon-apigateway-integration.responseParameters Example

The following example maps body and header parameters of the integration response to two header parameters of the method response.

```
"responseParameters" : {
    "method.response.header.Location" : "integration.response.body.redirect.url",
    "method.response.header.x-user-id" : "integration.response.header.x-userid"
}
```

x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator Property

Specifies a request validator, by referencing a request_validator_name of the x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators Object (p. 482) map, to enable request validation on the containing API or a method. The value of this extension is a JSON string.

This extension can be specified at the API level or at the method level. The API-level validator applies to all of the methods unless it is overridden by the method-level validator.

x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator Example

The following example applies the basic request validator at the API level while applying the parameter-only request validator on the POST /validation request.
x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators Object

Defines the supported request validators for the containing API as a map between a validator name and the associated request validation rules. This extension applies to an API.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>request_validator_name</td>
<td>x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators.requestValidator Object (p. 483)</td>
<td>Specifies the validation rules consisting of the named validator. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;basic&quot; : {</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;validateRequestBody&quot; : true,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;validateRequestParameters&quot; : true }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>To apply this validator to a specific method, reference the validator name (basic) as the value of the x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator Property (p. 481) property.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators Example

The following example shows a set of request validators for an API as a map between a validator name and the associated request validation rules.
x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators.requestValidator Object

Specifies the validation rules of a request validator as part of the x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators Object (p. 482) map definition.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>validateRequestBody</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Specifies whether to validate the request body (true) or not (false).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>validateRequestParameters</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Specifies whether to validate the required request parameters (true) or not (false).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**x-amazon-apigateway-request-validators.requestValidator Example**

The following example shows a parameter-only request validator:

```
"params-only": {
    "validateRequestBody" : false,
    "validateRequestParameters" : true
}
```
Samples and Tutorials

The following tutorials provide hands-on exercises to help you learn about API Gateway.

Topics

- Create an API Gateway API for AWS Lambda Functions (p. 484)
- Create an API as an Amazon S3 Proxy (p. 502)
- Create an API Gateway API as an Amazon Kinesis Proxy (p. 528)

Create an API Gateway API for AWS Lambda Functions

**Note**

To integrate your API Gateway API with Lambda, you must choose a region where both the API Gateway and Lambda services are available. For region availability, see [Regions and Endpoints](#).

In the Getting Started (p. 17) section, you learned how to use the API Gateway console to build an API to expose a Lambda function. There, the console let you choose Lambda Function for Integration type, among other options of HTTP, Mock and AWS Service. The Lambda Function option is a special case of the AWS Service integration type and simplifies the integration set-up for you with default settings. For example, with the former, the console automatically adds the required resource-based permissions for invoking the Lambda function. With the latter, you have more control, but more responsibilities to set up the integration, including creating and specifying an IAM role containing appropriate permissions. For both options, the underlying Integration.type is AWS in the API Gateway REST API and its Swagger definition file.

In this section, we walk you through the steps to integrate an API with a Lambda function using the AWS Service and Lambda Function integration types. To support asynchronous invocation of the Lambda function, you must explicitly add the X-Amz-Invocation-Type: Event header to the integration request. For the synchronous invocation, you can add the X-Amz-Invocation-Type: RequestResponse header to the integration request or leave it unspecified. The following example shows the integration request of an asynchronous Lambda function invocation:

```
POST /2015-03-31/functions/FunctionArn/invocations?Qualifier=Qualifier HTTP/1.1
X-Amz-Invocation-Type: Event
...  
Authorization: ...
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: PayloadSize

Payload
```

In this example, FunctionArn is the ARN of the Lambda function to be invoked. The Authorization header is required by secure invocation of Lambda functions over HTTPS. For more information, see the Invoke action in the [AWS Lambda Developer Guide](#).

To illustrate how to create and configure an API as an AWS service proxy for Lambda, we will create a Lambda function (Calc) that performs addition (+), subtraction (-), multiplication (*), and division (/).
When a client submits a method request to perform any of these operations, API Gateway will post the corresponding integration request to call the specified Lambda function, passing the required input (two operands and one operator) as a JSON payload. A synchronous call will return the result, if any, as the JSON payload. An asynchronous call will return no data.

You can expose a GET or POST method on the /calc resource to invoke the Lambda function. With the GET method, a client supplies the input to the backend Lambda function through three query string parameters (operand1, operand2, and operator). You will set up a mapping template to map these to the JSON payload of the integration request. With the POST method, a client provides the input to the Lambda function as a JSON payload of the method request. You can pass the method request payload through to the integration request, if the client input conforms to the input model. Alternatively, you can expose a GET method on the /calc/{operand1}/{operand2}/{operator} resource. With this method, the client specifies the Lambda function input as the values of the path parameters. You will need to provide a mapping template to translate the path parameters of the method request into an integration request payload as the Lambda function input and to translate the output from the integration responses to the method response.

In this tutorial, we will cover the following topics:

- Create the Calc Lambda function to implement the arithmetic operations, accepting and returning JSON-formatted input and output.
- Expose GET on the /calc resource to invoke the Lambda function, supplying the input as query strings. We will enable a request validator to ensure that the client submit all the required query string parameters before API Gateway calling the Lambda function.
- Expose POST on the /calc resource to invoke the Lambda function, supplying the input in the payload. We will enable a request validator to ensure that the client submitted the valid request payload before API Gateway call the Lambda function.
- Expose GET on the /calc/{operand1}/{operand2}/{operator} resource to invoke the Lambda function, specifying the input in the path parameters. We also explain how to define a Result schema to model the method response body so that any strongly typed SDK of the API can access the method response data through properties defined in the Result schema.

You can inspect the sample API in its Swagger definition file (p. 498). You can also import the API Swagger definitions to API Gateway, following the instructions given in Import an API into API Gateway (p. 232).

To use the API Gateway console to create the API, you must first sign up for an AWS account.

If you do not have an AWS account, use the following procedure to create one.

**To sign up for AWS**

2. Follow the online instructions.

To allow the API to invoke Lambda functions, you must have an IAM role that has appropriate IAM policies attached to it. The next section describes how to verify and to create, if necessary, the required IAM role and policies.

**Topics**

- Set Up an IAM Role and Policy for an API to Invoke Lambda Functions (p. 486)
- Create a Lambda Function in the Backend (p. 486)
- Create API Resources for the Lambda Function (p. 488)
- Create a GET Method with Query Parameters to Call the Lambda Function (p. 488)
Set Up an IAM Role and Policy for an API to Invoke Lambda Functions

For API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function, the API must have a permission to call the Lambda's `InvokeFunction` action. This means that, at minimum, you must attach the following IAM policy to an IAM role for API Gateway to assume the policy.

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": "lambda:InvokeFunction",
         "Resource": "*"
      }
   ]
}
```

If you do not enact this policy, the API caller will receive a 500 Internal Server Error response. The response contains the "Invalid permissions on Lambda function" error message. For a complete list of error messages returned by Lambda, see the `Invoke` topic.

An API Gateway assumable role is an IAM role with the following trusted relationship:

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Sid": "",
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Principal": {
            "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
         },
         "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
      }
   ]
}
```

Create a Lambda Function in the Backend

The following procedure outlines the steps to create a Lambda function using the Lambda console.

1. Go to the Lambda console.
2. Choose Create a Lambda function.
3. Choose the Blank Function blueprint for the runtime of Node.js 4.3 or later.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to the Lambda function code editor.
5. Copy the following Lambda function and paste it into the code editor in the Lambda console.
console.log('Loading the Calc function');
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
    console.log('Received event:', JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    if (event.a === undefined || event.b === undefined || event.op === undefined) {
        callback("400 Invalid Input");
    }
    var res = {};
    res.a = Number(event.a);
    res.b = Number(event.b);
    res.op = event.op;
    if (isNaN(event.a) || isNaN(event.b)) {
        callback("400 Invalid Operand");
    }
    switch(event.op) {
    case "+":
        case "add":
            res.c = res.a + res.b;
            break;
        case "-":
        case "sub":
            res.c = res.a - res.b;
            break;
        case "/":
        case "mul":
            res.c = res.a * res.b;
            break;
        case "/":
        case "div":
            res.c = res.b === 0 ? NaN : Number(event.a) / Number(event.b);
            break;
    default:
        callback("400 Invalid Operator");
        break;
    }
    callback(null, res);
};

6. Choose an existing or create a new IAM role
7. Follow the on-screen instructions to finish creating the function.

This function requires two operands (a and b) and an operator (op) from the event input parameter. The input is a JSON object of the following format:

```
{
    "a": "Number" | "String",
    "b": "Number" | "String",
    "op": "String"
}
```

This function returns the calculated result (c) and the input. For an invalid input, the function returns either the null value or the "Invalid op" string as the result. The output is of the following JSON format:

```
{
}
```
Create API Resources for the Lambda Function

The following procedure describes how to create API resources for the Lambda function. As an illustration, we use multiple API resources and methods to enable different API behaviors for calling the same function.

**To create API resources for Lambda functions**

1. In the API Gateway console, create an API named LambdaGate.
2. Create the `/calc` resource off the API's root. We will expose the GET and POST methods on this resource for the client to invoke the backend Lambda function. The caller must supply the required input as query string parameters (to be declared as ?operand1=...&operand2=...&operator=...) in the GET request and as a JSON payload in the POST request, respectively.

   We will also create the `/calc/{operand1}/{operand2}/{operator}` resource subtree to expose the GET method to invoke the Lambda function. The caller must supply the required input by specifying the three path parameters (operand1, operand2, and operator).

Create a GET Method with Query Parameters to Call the Lambda Function

By creating a GET method with query parameters to call the Lambda function, we can let the API user to do the calculations via any browser. This can be useful especially if the API allows open access.

**To set up the GET method with query strings to invoke the Lambda function**

1. In the API Gateway console, choose the API's `/calc` resource under Resources.
2. Choose Create Method, from the Actions drop-down menu, to create the GET method.
3. In the ensuing Set up pane,
a. Choose AWS Service for **Integration type**.
b. Choose the region (e.g., us-west-2) where you created the Lambda function for **AWS Region**.
c. Choose Lambda for **AWS Service**.
d. Leave **AWS Subdomain** blank because our Lambda function is not hosted on any of AWS subdomain.
e. Choose **POST** for **HTTP method**. Lambda requires that the POST request be used to invoke any Lambda function. This examples shows that the HTTP method in a frontend method request can be different from the integration request in the backend.
f. Choose **Use path override** for **Action Type**. This option allows us to specify the ARN of the **Invoke** action to execute our Calc function.
g. Type `/2015-03-31/functions/arn:aws:lambda:region:account-id:function:Calc/invocations` in **Path override**.
h. Specify the ARN of an IAM role for **Execution role**. You can find the ARN of the role in the IAM console. The role must contain the necessary permissions for the caller to call the Calc function and for API Gateway to assume the role of the caller.
i. Leave the **Passthrough** as the default of **Content Handling**, because we will not deal with any binary data.
j. Choose the **Save** to finish setting up the GET `/calc` method.

After the setup succeeds, the configuration should look as follows:

---

You can also add, in **Integration Request**, the `X-Amz-Invocation-Type: Event | RequestReponse | DryRun` header to have the action invoked asynchronously, as request and response, or as a test run, respectively. If the header is not specified, the action will be invoked as request and response.

4. Go to **Method Request** to set up query parameters for the GET method on `/calc` to receive input to the backend Lambda function.
a. Choose the pencil icon next to **Request Validator** to select *Validate query string parameters and headers*. This setting will cause an error message to return to state the required parameters are missing if the client does not specify them. You will not get charged for the call to the backend.

b. Expand the **URL Query String Parameters** section. Choose **Add query string** to add the **operand1**, **operand2**, and **operator** query string parameters. Check the **Required** option for each parameter to ensure that they are validated.

The configuration now looks as follows:

5. Go back to **Integration Request** to set up the mapping template to translate the client-supplied query strings to the integration request payload as required by the `Calc` function.

   a. Expand the **Body Mapping Templates** section.

   b. Choose **When no template matches the request Content-Type header** for **Request body passthrough**.

   c. If `application/json` is not shown under **Content-Type**, choose **Add mapping template** to add it.

   d. And then type and save the following mapping script in the mapping template editor:

   ```
   {
   "a": "$input.params('operand1')",
   ```
This template maps the three query string parameters declared in Method Request into designated property values of the JSON object as the input to the backend Lambda function. The transformed JSON object will be included as the integration request payload.

The final settings of this step is shown as follows:

6. You can now choose Test to verify that the GET method on the `/calc` resource has been properly set up to invoke the Lambda function.
Create a POST Method with a JSON Payload to Call the Lambda Function

By creating a POST method with a JSON payload to call the Lambda function, we expect the client to submit the necessary input to the backend function in the request body. To ensure that the client uploads the correct input data, we will enable request validation on the payload.

To set up the POST method with a JSON payload to invoke a Lambda function

1. Go to the API Gateway console and choose the API created previously.
2. Highlight the `calc` resource from Resources pane.
3. Choose Create Method from the Actions menu to create the POST /calc method.
4. In the method’s Set Up panel, configure this POST method with the following integration settings. For more information, follow the discussions in Create a GET Method with Query Parameters to Call the Lambda Function (p. 488).

5. Choose Models under the API from the API Gateway console's primary navigation pane to create data models for the method's input and output:
   a. Choose Create in the Models pane. Type Input in Model name, type application/json in Content type, and type the following schema definition in Model schema:

```json
{
    "type":"object",
    "properties":{
        "a":{"type":"number"},
        "b":{"type":"number"},
        "op":{"type":"string"}
    },
    "title":"Input"
}
```
Create a POST Method with a JSON Payload to Call the Lambda Function

This model describes the input data structure and will be used to validate the incoming request body.

b. Choose Create in the Models pane. Type Output in Model name, type application/json in Content type, and type the following schema definition in Model schema:

```json
{
  "type":"object",
  "properties":{
    "c":{"type":"number"}
  },
  "title":"Output"
}
```

This model describes the data structure of the calculated output from the backend. It can be used to map the integration response data to a different model. This tutorial relies on the passthrough behavior and does not use this model.

c. Choose Create in the Models pane. Type Result in Model name, type application/json in Content type, and type the following schema definition in Model schema:

```json
{
  "type":"object",
  "properties":{
    "input":{
      "$ref":"https://apigateway.amazonaws.com/restapis/restapi-id/models/Input"
    },
    "output":{
      "$ref":"https://apigateway.amazonaws.com/restapis/restapi-id/models/Output"
    }
  },
  "title":"Output"
}
```

This model describes the data structure of the returned response data. It references both the Input and Output schemas defined in the specified API (restapi-id). Again, this model is not used in this tutorial because it leverages the passthrough behavior.

6. In the Method Request configuration settings, do the following to enable request validation on the incoming request body:

a. Choose the pencil icon next to Request Validator to choose Validate body.

b. Expand the Request Body section, choose Add model

c. Type application/json in the Content-Type input field and choose Input from the drop-down list in the Model name column.

7. You can now choose Test to verify the POST method works as expected. The following input:

```json
{
  "a": 1,
  "b": 2,
  "op": "*"
}
```

should produce the following output:
If you would like to implement this method as an asynchronous call, you can add an InvocationType header in the method request and map it to the X-Amz-Invocation-Type header in the integration request with either a static value of 'Event' or the header mapping expression of method.request.header.InvocationType. For the latter, the client must include the InvocationType:Event header in the method request. The asynchronous call will return an empty response, instead.

Create a GET Method with Path Parameters to Call the Lambda Function

In this section, we create a GET method on a resource specified by a sequence of path parameters to call the backend Lambda function. The path parameter values specify the input data to the Lambda function. We will define a mapping template to map the incoming path parameter values to the required integration request payload.

In addition, we will use the simple LAM integration feature provided by the ABP console to set up the method. As you can see, this console-provided feature provides much more streamlined user experiences.

To set up the GET method with URL path parameters to call the Lambda function

1. Go to the API Gateway console.
2. Highlight the /calc/{operand1}/{operand2}/{operator} resource on the Resources tree of the previously created API
3. Choose Create Method from the Actions drop-down menu, choose GET.
4. In the Setup pane, choose Lambda Function for Integration type, to use the streamlined setup process enabled by the console.
5. Choose a region (e.g., us-west-2) for Lambda Region. This is the region where the Lambda function is hosted.
6. Choose an existing Lambda function (e.g., Calc) for Lambda Function.
7. Choose Save and then choose OK to consent to Add Permissions to Lambda Function.
8. Choose Integration Request to set up body mapping template.
   a. Expand the Body Mapping Templates section.
   b. Choose Add mapping template.
   c. Type application/json for Content-Type and then choose the check mark icon to open the template editor.
   d. Choose Yes, secure this integration to proceed.
   e. Type the following mapping script to the template editor:

```
{
  "a": "\$input.params('operand1')",
  "b": "\$input.params('operand2')",
  "op": 
    \#if($input.params('operator')=='%2F')/"#{else}"#$input.params('operator')"\#end
```

```
This template maps the three URL path parameters, declared when the `/calc/{operand1}/\{operand2}/\{operator}` resource was created, into designated property values of the JSON object. Because URL paths must be URL-encoded, the division operator must be specified as `%2F` instead of `/`. This template translates the `%2F` into `/` before passing it to the Lambda function.

f. Save the mapping template.

When the method is set up correctly, the settings should look similar to the following:

```
9. Now, let us test the API using the TestInvoke feature of the console.
```
a. Choose **Test** from **Method Execution**.

b. Type 1, 2 and + in `{operand1}`, `{operand2}` and `{operator}` fields, respectively.

c. Choose **Test**.

d. The result will be shown similar to the following:

```
Request: /calc/1/1/+  
Status: 200  
Latency: 816 ms  
Response Body

{  
  "a": 1,  
  "b": 1,  
  "op": "+",  
  "c": 2
}
```

Response Headers

```
{"X-Azn-Trace-Id":"sampled=0;root=1-58f7f1f6-57c26581ed7073a711c1321b","Content-Type ":"application/json"}
```

Logs

```
Execution log for request test-request
Wed Apr 19 23:25:42 UTC 2017 : Method request path: {operand1=1, operand2=1, operator=+}
Wed Apr 19 23:25:42 UTC 2017 : Method request body before transformations:
Wed Apr 19 23:25:42 UTC 2017 : Endpoint request headers: {}  
```

This test result shows the original output from the backend Lambda function, as passed through the integration response without mapping, because we have not configured any mapping template.

Next, we model the data structure of the method response payload after the `Result` schema.

10. By default, the method response body is assigned an Empty model. This will cause the integration response body passed through without mapping. However, when you generate an SDK for one of the strongly-type languages, such as Java or Objective-C, your SDK users will receive an empty object as the result. To ensure both the REST client and SDK clients receive the desired result, you must model the response data using a predefined schema. Here, we demonstrate how to define a model for the method response body and to construct a mapping template to transform the integration response body to the method response body.

a. In `/calc/{operand1}/{operand2}/{operator} - GET - Method Execution`, choose **Method Response**.
b. Expand the **200** response,
c. Under **Response Body for 200** section. If no model has been assigned for the method response,
d. Choose the pencil icon next to the model for the application/json content type.
e. Choose a predefined model from the **Models** drop-down list. For this tutorial, this is **Result**.
f. Save the model choice.

**Note**
If no model is defined for the content type of application/json, choose **Add Response Model** and follow the on-screen instructions to add the model.

Setting the model for the method response body ensure that the response data will be cast into the **Result** object of a given SDK. For this, we also need to make sure that the integration response data is mapped accordingly, which we discuss next.

11. To return the backend result according to the specified schema,
   a. Choose **Integration Response** and expand the 200 method response entry.
   b. Expand the **Body Mapping Templates** section.
   c. Choose or add application/json to the **Content-Type** list.
   d. Choose **Result** from the **Generate template** drop-down list to bring up the **Result** template blueprint.
   e. Change the template blueprint as follows:

   ```
   #set($inputRoot = $input.path(''))
   { 
     "input" : { 
       "a" : $inputRoot.a, 
       "b" : $inputRoot.b, 
       "op" : "$inputRoot.op"
     }, 
     "output" : { 
       "c" : $inputRoot.c
     }
   }
   ```
   
f. Choose **Save**.

g. To test the mapping template, choose **Test** in **Method Execution** and type 1 2 and + in the **operand1**, **operand2** and **operator** input fields, respectively. The integration response from the Lambda function is now mapped to a **Result** object:

   ```
   { 
     "input": { 
       "a": 1, 
       "b": 2, 
       "op": "+
     }, 
     "output": { 
       "c": 3
     }
   }
   ```

12. To make the API accessible beyond TestInvoke in the API Gateway console, choose **Deploy API** from the **Actions** drop-down menu. Make sure to repeat deploying the API whenever you finish adding, modifying or deleting a resource or method, updating any data mapping, updating the stage settings. Otherwise, new features or updates will not be available.
Swagger Definitions of Sample API Integrated with a Lambda Function

```json
{
    "swagger": "2.0",
    "info": {
        "version": "2017-04-20T04:08:08Z",
        "title": "Lambda Gate"
    },
    "host": "uojnr9hd57.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
    "basePath": "/test",
    "schemes": [
        "https"
    ],
    "paths": {
        "/calc": {
            "get": {
                "consumes": [
                    "application/json"
                ],
                "produces": [
                    "application/json"
                ],
                "parameters": [
                    {
                        "name": "operand2",
                        "in": "query",
                        "required": true,
                        "type": "string"
                    },
                    {
                        "name": "operator",
                        "in": "query",
                        "required": true,
                        "type": "string"
                    },
                    {
                        "name": "operand1",
                        "in": "query",
                        "required": true,
                        "type": "string"
                    }
                ],
                "responses": {
                    "200": {
                        "description": "200 response",
                        "schema": {
                            "$ref": "#/definitions/Result"
                        },
                        "headers": {
                            "operand_1": {
                                "type": "string"
                            },
                            "operand_2": {
                                "type": "string"
                            },
                            "operator": {
                                "type": "string"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```
"x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator": "Validate query string parameters and headers",
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
  "responses": {
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200",
      "responseParameters": {
        "method.response.header.operator": "integration.response.body.op",
        "method.response.header.operand_2": "integration.response.body.b",
        "method.response.header.operand_1": "integration.response.body.a"
      },
      "responseTemplates": {
        "application/json": "\$set($res = $input.path('a'))\n\n \"result\": "$res.a, $res.b, $res.op => $res.c",
\n \"a\" : "$res.a",
\n \"b\" : "$res.b",
\n \"op\" : "$res.op",
\n \"c\" : "$res.c"
      }
    }
  },
  "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
  "httpMethod": "POST",
  "requestTemplates": {
    "application/json": "{\n    \"a\": $input.params('operand1')\n    \"b\": $input.params('operand2')\n    \"op\": $input.params('operator')\n    \n}\n",
    "type": "aws"
  }
},
"post": {
  "consumes": [
    "application/json"
  ],
  "produces": [
    "application/json"
  ],
  "parameters": [
    {
      "name": "InvocationType",
      "in": "header",
      "required": false,
      "type": "string"
    },
    {
      "in": "body",
      "name": "Input",
      "required": true,
      "schema": {
        "$ref": "#/definitions/Input"
      }
    }
  ],
  "responses": {
    "200": {
      "description": "200 response",
      "schema": {
        "$ref": "#/definitions/Result"
      }
    }
  },
  "x-amazon-apigateway-request-validator": "Validate body",
  "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
    "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
    "responses": {
      "default": {

"statusCode": "200",
"responseTemplates": {
  "application/json": "#set($inputRoot = $input.path('"'))\n{"a": $inputRoot.a,\n  "b": $inputRoot.b,\n  "op": $inputRoot.op,\n  "c": $inputRoot.c}\n}"
},
"passthroughBehavior": "when_no_templates",
"httpMethod": "POST",
"type": "aws"
},
"/calc/{operand1}/{operand2}/{operator}": {
  "get": {
    "consumes": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "produces": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "parameters": [
      {
        "name": "operand2",
        "in": "path",
        "required": true,
        "type": "string"
      },
      {
        "name": "operator",
        "in": "path",
        "required": true,
        "type": "string"
      },
      {
        "name": "operand1",
        "in": "path",
        "required": true,
        "type": "string"
      }
    ],
    "responses": {
      "200": {
        "description": "200 response",
        "schema": {
          "$ref": "#/definitions/Result"
        }
      }
    },
    "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
      "responses": {
        "default": {
          "statusCode": "200",
          "responseTemplates": {
            "application/json": "#set($inputRoot = $input.path('"'))\n{"input": \n{"a": $inputRoot.a,\n  "b": $inputRoot.b,\n  "op": $inputRoot.op,\n  "c": $inputRoot.c}\n}"
          }
        }
      },
      "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_templates",
      "httpMethod": "POST",
      "type": "aws"
    }
  }
}
"httpMethod": "POST",
"requestTemplates": {
"application/json": "{\n   "a": "$input.params('operand1')",
   "b": "$input.params('operand2')",
   "op": #if($input.params('operator')=='%2F')"/
   
   #{else}"$input.params('operator')"#end
   
   
}"
},
"contentHandling": "CONVERT_TO_TEXT",
"type": "aws"
}
Create an API as an Amazon S3 Proxy

As an example to showcase using an API in API Gateway to proxy Amazon S3, this section describes how to create and configure an API to expose the following Amazon S3 operations:

- Expose GET on the API's root resource to list all of the Amazon S3 buckets of a caller.
- Expose GET on a Folder resource to view a list of all of the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Expose PUT on a Folder resource to add a bucket to Amazon S3.
- Expose DELETE on a Folder resource to remove a bucket from Amazon S3.
- Expose GET on a Folder/Item resource to view or download an object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Expose PUT on a Folder/Item resource to upload an object to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Expose HEAD on a Folder/Item resource to get object metadata in an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Expose DELETE on a Folder/Item resource to remove an object from an Amazon S3 bucket.

Note
To integrate your API Gateway API with Amazon S3, you must choose a region where both the API Gateway and Amazon S3 services are available. For region availability, see Regions and Endpoints.

You may want to import the sample API as an Amazon S3 proxy, as shown in Swagger Definitions of the Sample API as an Amazon S3 Proxy (p. 519). For instructions on how to import an API using the Swagger definition, see Import an API into API Gateway (p. 232).

To use the API Gateway console to create the API, you must first sign up for an AWS account.

If you do not have an AWS account, use the following procedure to create one.

To sign up for AWS
2. Follow the online instructions.

Topics
- Set Up IAM Permissions for the API to Invoke Amazon S3 Actions (p. 503)
- Create API Resources to Represent Amazon S3 Resources (p. 504)
- Expose an API Method to List the Caller's Amazon S3 Buckets (p. 505)
- Expose API Methods to Access an Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 511)
- Expose API Methods to Access an Amazon S3 Object in a Bucket (p. 514)
- Call the API Using a REST API Client (p. 517)
- Swagger Definitions of the Sample API as an Amazon S3 Proxy (p. 519)
Set Up IAM Permissions for the API to Invoke Amazon S3 Actions

To allow the API to invoke required Amazon S3 actions, you must have appropriate IAM policies attached to an IAM role. The next section describes how to verify and to create, if necessary, the required IAM role and policies.

For your API to view or list Amazon S3 buckets and objects, you can use the IAM-provided AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess policy in the IAM role. The ARN of this policy is arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess, which is as shown as follows:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "s3:Get*",
        "s3:List*"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

This policy document states that any of the Amazon S3 Get* and List* actions can be invoked on any of the Amazon S3 resources.

For your API to update Amazon S3 buckets and objects, you can use a custom policy for any of the Amazon S3 Put* actions as shown as follows:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "s3:Put*",
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

For your API to work with Amazon S3 Get*, List* and Put* actions, you can add the above read-only and put-only policies to the IAM role.

For your API to invoke the Amazon S3 Post* actions, you must use an Allow policy for the s3:Post* actions in the IAM role. For a complete list of Amazon S3 actions, see Specifying Amazon S3 Permissions in a Policy.

For your API to create, view, update, and delete buckets and objects in Amazon S3, you can use the IAM-provided AmazonS3FullAccess policy in the IAM role. The ARN is arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3FullAccess.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "s3:*",
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```
Having chosen the desired IAM policies to use, create an IAM role and attach to it the policies. The resulting IAM role must contain the following trust policy for API Gateway to assume this role at runtime.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
```

When using the IAM console to create the role, choose the Amazon API Gateway role type to ensure that this trust policy is automatically included.

## Create API Resources to Represent Amazon S3 Resources

We will use the API's root (/ resource as the container of an authenticated caller's Amazon S3 buckets. We will also create a `Folder` and `Item` resources to represent a particular Amazon S3 bucket and a particular Amazon S3 object, respectively. The folder name and object key will be specified, in the form of path parameters as part of a request URL, by the caller.

**To create an API resource that exposes the Amazon S3 service features**

1. In the API Gateway console, create an API named **MyS3**. This API's root resource (/) represents the Amazon S3 service.
2. Under the API's root resource, create a child resource named **Folder** and set the required **Resource Path** as /{(folder)}.
3. For the API's **Folder** resource, create an **Item** child resource. Set the required **Resource Path** as /{(item)}.
Exposé un API Method to List the Caller's Amazon S3 Buckets

Getting the list of Amazon S3 buckets of the caller involves invoking the GET Service action on Amazon S3. On the API’s root resource, (/), create the GET method. Configure the GET method to integrate with the Amazon S3, as follows.

**To create and initialize the API’s GET / method**

1. Choose Create method on the root node (/) from the Actions drop-down menu at the top-right corner of the Resources panel.
2. Choose the GET from the drop-down list of HTTP verbs, and choose the check-mark icon to start creating the method.
3. In the / - GET - Setup pane, choose AWS Service for Integration type.
4. From the list, choose a region (e.g., us-west-2) for AWS Region.
5. From AWS Service, choose S3.
6. For AWS Subdomain, leave it blank.
7. From HTTP method, choose GET.
8. For **Action Type**, choose **Use path override**. With path override, API Gateway forwards the client request to Amazon S3 as the corresponding Amazon S3 REST API path-style request, in which a Amazon S3 resource is expressed by the resource path of the `s3-host-name/bucket/key` pattern. API Gateway sets the `s3-host-name` and passes the client specified `bucket` and `key` from the client to Amazon S3.

9. (Optional) In **Path override type** `/`.

10. Copy the previously created IAM role's ARN (from the IAM console) and paste it into **Execution role**.

11. Leave any other settings as default.

12. Choose **Save** to finish setting up this method.

   This setup integrates the frontend GET `https://your-api-host/stage/` request with the backend GET `https://your-s3-host/`.

   **Note**
   After the initial setup, you can modify these settings in the **Integration Request** page of the method.

To control who can call this method of our API, we turn on the method authorization flag and set it to **AWS_IAM**.

**To enable IAM to control access to the GET / method**

1. From the **Method Execution**, choose **Method Request**.
2. Choose the pencil icon next to **Authorization**
3. Choose **AWS_IAM** from the drop-down list.
4. Choose the check-mark icon to save the setting.

For our API to return successful responses and exceptions properly to the caller, let us declare the 200, 400 and 500 responses in **Method Response**. We use the default mapping for 200 responses so that backend responses of the status code not declared here will be returned to the caller as 200 ones.

**To declare response types for the GET / method**

1. From the **Method Execution** pane, choose the **Method Response** box. The API Gateway declares the 200 response by default.
2. Choose **Add response**, enter **400** in the input text box, and choose the check-mark to finish the declaration.

3. Repeat the above step to declare the 500 response type. The final setting is shown as follows:

Because the successful integration response from Amazon S3 returns the bucket list as an XML payload and the default method response from API Gateway returns a JSON payload, we must map the backend Content-Type header parameter value to the frontend counterpart. Otherwise, the client will receive application/json for the content type when the response body is actually an XML string. The following procedure shows how to set this up. In addition, we also want to display to the client other header parameters, such as Date and Content-Length.

**To set up response header mappings for the GET / method**

1. In the API Gateway console, choose **Method Response**. Add the **Content-Type** header for the 200 response type.
2. In Integration Response, for Content-Type, type `integration.response.header.Content-Type` for the method response.
With the above header mappings, API Gateway will translate the Date header from the backend to the Timestamp header for the client.

3. Still in **Integration Response**, choose **Add integration response**, type an appropriate regular expression in the **HTTP status regex** text box for a remaining method response status. Repeat until all the method response status are covered.
As a good practice, let us test our API we have configured so far.

**Test the GET method on the API root resource**

1. Go back to Method Execution, choose Test from the Client box.
2. Choose Test in the GET / - Method Test pane. An example result is shown as follows.
Exposé API Methods to Access an Amazon S3 Bucket

To work with an Amazon S3 bucket, we expose the GET, PUT, and DELETE methods on the /{folder} resource to list objects in a bucket, create a new bucket, and delete an existing bucket. The instructions are similar to those prescribed in Expose an API Method to List the Caller’s Amazon S3 Buckets (p. 505). In the following discussions, we outline the general tasks and highlight relevant differences.

To expose GET, PUT and DELETE methods on a folder resource

1. On the /{folder} node from the Resources tree, create the DELETE, GET and PUT methods, one at a time.
2. Set up the initial integration of each created method with its corresponding Amazon S3 endpoints. The following screen shot illustrates this setting for the PUT /{folder} method. For the
DELETE /{folder} and GET /{folder} method, replace the PUT value of HTTP method by DELETE and GET, respectively.

Notice that we used the {bucket} path parameter in the Amazon S3 endpoint URLs to specify the bucket. We will need to map the {folder} path parameter of the method requests to the {bucket} path parameter of the integration requests.

3. To map {folder} to {bucket}:
   a. Choose Method Execution and then Integration Request.
   b. Expand URL Path Parameters and choose Add path
   c. Type bucket in the Name column and method.request.path.folder in the Mapped from column. Choose the check-mark icon to save the mapping.

4. In Method Request, add the Content-Type to the HTTP Request Headers section.
This is mostly needed for testing, when using the API Gateway console, when you must specify `application/xml` for an XML payload.

5. In Integration Request, set up the following header mappings, following the instructions described in Expose an API Method to List the Caller's Amazon S3 Buckets (p. 505).

The `x-amz-acl` header is for specifying access control on the folder (or the corresponding Amazon S3 bucket). For more information, see Amazon S3 PUT Bucket Request.

6. To test the PUT method, choose Test in the Client box from Method Execution, and enter the following as input to the testing:

a. In folder, type a bucket name,

b. For the Content-Type header, type `application/xml`.

c. In Request Body, provide the bucket region as the location constraint, declared in an XML fragment as the request payload. For example,

```xml
<CreateBucketConfiguration xmlns="http://s3.amazonaws.com/doc/2006-03-01/">
  <LocationConstraint>{region}</LocationConstraint>
</CreateBucketConfiguration>
```
7. Repeat the preceding steps to create and configure the GET and DELETE method on the API's `/folder` resource.

The above examples illustrate how to create a new bucket in the specified region, to view the list of objects in the bucket, and to delete the bucket. Other Amazon S3 bucket operations allow you work with the metadata or properties of the bucket. For example, you can set up your API to call the Amazon S3's PUT /notification action to set up notifications on the bucket, to call PUT /acl to set an access control list on the bucket, etc. The API set up is similar, except for that you must append appropriate query parameters to the Amazon S3 endpoint URLs. At run time, you must provide the appropriate XML payload to the method request. The same can be said about supporting the other GET and DELETE operations on a Amazon S3 bucket. For more information on possible S3; actions on a bucket, see Amazon S3 Operations on Buckets.

**Expose API Methods to Access an Amazon S3 Object in a Bucket**

Amazon S3 supports GET, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS, POST and PUT actions to access and manage objects in a given bucket. For the complete list of supported actions, see Amazon S3 Operations on Objects.

In this tutorial, we expose the PUT Object operation, the GET Object operation, HEAD Object operation, and the DELETE Object operation through the API methods of PUT `/folder/{item}`, GET `/folder/{item}`, HEAD `/folder/{item}` and DELETE `/folder/{item}`, respectively.

The API setups for the PUT, GET and DELETE methods on `/folder/{item}` are the similar to those on `/folder`, as prescribed in Expose API Methods to Access an Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 511). One major difference is that the object-related request path has an additional path parameter of `{item}` and this path parameter must be mapped to the integration request path parameter of `{object}`.
The same is true for the GET and DELETE methods.

As an illustration, the following screen shot shows the output when testing the GET method on a {folder}/{item} resource using the API Gateway console. The request correctly returns the plain text of ("Welcome to README.txt") as the content of the specified file (README.txt) in the given Amazon S3 bucket (apig-demo).
To download or upload binary files, which in API Gateway is considered any thing other than utf-8 encoded JSON content, additional API settings are necessary. This is outlined as follows:

**To download or upload binary files from S3**

1. Register the media types of the affected file to the API's binaryMediaTypes. You can do this in the console:
   a. Choose **Binary Support** for the API (from the API Gateway primary navigation panel),
   b. Choose **Edit**.
   c. Type the required media type (e.g., `image/png` for **Binary media types**).
   d. Choose **Add binary media type** to save the setting.
2. Add the **Content-Type** (for upload) and/or **Accept** (for download) header to the method request to require the client to specify the required binary media type and map them to the integration request.
3. Set **Content Handling** to **Passthrough** in the integration request (for upload) and in a integration response (for download). Make sure that no mapping template is defined for the affected content type. For more information, see **Integration Passthrough Behaviors (p. 188)** and **Select VTL Mapping Templates (p. 187)**.
Make sure that files on Amazon S3 have the correct content types added as the files' metadata. For streamable media content, `Content-Disposition:inline` may also need to be added to the metadata.

For more information about the binary support in API Gateway, see Content Type Conversions in API Gateway (p. 197).

**Call the API Using a REST API Client**

To provide an end-to-end tutorial, we now show how to call the API using Postman, which supports the AWS IAM authorization.

**To call our Amazon S3 proxy API using Postman**

1. Deploy or redeploy the API. Make a note of the base URL of the API that is displayed next to **Invoke URL** at the top of the **Stage Editor**.
2. Launch Postman.
3. Choose **Authorization** and then choose **AWS Signature**. Type your IAM user's Access Key ID and Secret Access Key into the **AccessKey** and **SecretKey** input fields, respectively. Type the AWS region to which your API is deployed in the **AWS Region** text box. Type **execute-api** in the **Service Name** input field.

   You can create a pair of the keys from the **Security Credentials** tab from your IAM user account in the IAM Management Console.
4. To add a bucket named **apig-demo-5** to your Amazon S3 account in the `{region}` region:
   - **Note**
     Be sure that the bucket name must be globally unique.
   - a. Choose **PUT** from the drop-down method list and type the method URL (https://api-id.execute-api.aws-region.amazonaws.com/stage/folder-name)
   - b. Set the **Content-Type** header value as application/xml. You may need to delete any existing headers before setting the content type.
   - c. Choose **Body** menu item and type the following XML fragment as the request body:

     ```xml
     <CreateBucketConfiguration>
     <LocationConstraint>{region}</LocationConstraint>
     </CreateBucketConfiguration>
     ```
   - d. Choose **Send** to submit the request. If successful, you should receive a 200 OK response with an empty payload.
5. To add a text file to a bucket, follow the instructions above. If you specify a bucket name of **apig-demo-5** for `{folder}` and a file name of **Readme.txt** for `{item}` in the URL and provide a text string of **Hello, World!** as the request payload, the request becomes

   ```
   PUT /S3/apig-demo-5/Readme.txt HTTP/1.1
   Host: 9gn28ca086.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com
   Content-Type: application/xml
   X-Amz-Date: 20161015T062647Z
   Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access-key-id/20161015/{region}/execute-api/aws4_request,SignedHeaders=content-length;content-type;host;x-amz-date,
   Signature=ccadb877bd0d395ca38cc47e18a0d76656e17007d11e40bf6f63d28c705b
   Cache-Control: no-cache
   Postman-Token: 6135d315-9cc4-8af8-1757-90871d00847e
   
   Hello, World!
   ```
If everything goes well, you should receive a **200 OK** response with an empty payload.

6. To get the content of the *Readme.txt* file we just added to the *apig-demo-5* bucket, do a GET request like the following one:

```plaintext
GET /S3/apig-demo-5/Readme.txt HTTP/1.1
Host: 9gn28ca086.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/xml
X-Amz-Date: 20161015T063759Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access-key-id/20161015/{region}/execute-api/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=ba09b72b5855cf0e578e86a02555c00e24b420b59025bc7bb8d3f7aed1471339
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: d60fcb59-d335-52f7-0025-5bd96928098a
```

If successful, you should receive a **200 OK** response with the *Hello, World!* text string as the payload.

7. To list items in the *apig-demo-5* bucket, submit the following request:

```plaintext
GET /S3/apig-demo-5 HTTP/1.1
Host: 9gn28ca086.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/xml
X-Amz-Date: 20161015T064324Z
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=access-key-id/20161015/{region}/execute-api/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date, Signature=4ac9bd4574a14e01568134fd16814534d9951649d3a22b3b0d9bf1f5cd4dd0ac
Cache-Control: no-cache
Postman-Token: 9c43020a-966f-61e1-81af-4c49ad8d1392
```

If successful, you should receive a **200 OK** response with an XML payload showing a single item in the specified bucket, unless you added more files to the bucket before submitting this request.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
  <Name>apig-demo-5</Name>
  <Prefix></Prefix>
  <Marker></Marker>
  <MaxKeys>1000</MaxKeys>
  <IsTruncated>false</IsTruncated>
  <Contents>
    <Key>Readme.txt</Key>
    <LastModified>2016-10-15T06:26:48.000Z</LastModified>
    <ETag>"65a8e27d8879283831b664bd8b7f0ad4"</ETag>
    <Size>13</Size>
    <Owner>
      <ID>06e4b09e9d...603add12ee</ID>
      <DisplayName>user-name</DisplayName>
    </Owner>
    <StorageClass>STANDARD</StorageClass>
  </Contents>
</ListBucketResult>
```

**Note**

To upload or download an image, you need to set content handling to **CONVERT_TO_BINARY**.
Swagger Definitions of the Sample API as an Amazon S3 Proxy

The following Swagger definitions describe the sample API, referenced in this tutorial, as an Amazon S3 proxy.

```json
{
  "swagger": "2.0",
  "info": {
    "version": "2016-10-13T23:04:43Z",
    "title": "MyS3"
  },
  "host": "9gn28ca086.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com",
  "basePath": "/S3",
  "schemes": ["https"],
  "paths": {
    ":": {
      "get": {
        "produces": [
          "application/json"
        ],
        "responses": {
          "200": {
            "description": "200 response",
            "schema": {
              "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
            },
            "headers": {
              "Content-Length": {
                "type": "string"
              },
              "Timestamp": {
                "type": "string"
              },
              "Content-Type": {
                "type": "string"
              }
            }
          },
          "400": {
            "description": "400 response"
          },
          "500": {
            "description": "500 response"
          }
        },
        "security": [
          {
            "sigv4": []
          }
        ],
        "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
          "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::<replaceable>123456789012</replaceable>:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
          "responses": {
            "4\d{2}" : {
              "statusCode": "400"
            },
            "default": {
              "statusCode": "200",
              "responseParameters": {
```
"method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type",
"method.response.header.Timestamp": "integration.response.header.Date"
}
"5\d{2}": {"statusCode": "500"
}
"uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/**",
"passsthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
"httpMethod": "GET",
"type": "aws"
}
"/{folder}": {
"get": {
"produces": ["application/json"
],
"parameters": [ {
"name": "folder",
"in": "path",
"required": true,
"type": "string"
}
],
"responses": {
"200": { 
"description": "200 response",
"schema": {
"$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
},
"headers": { 
"Content-Length": {
"type": "string"
},
"Date": {
"type": "string"
},
"Content-Type": {
"type": "string"
}
}
"400": { 
"description": "400 response"
},
"500": { 
"description": "500 response"
}
},
"security": [ {
"sigv4": []
} ],
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": { 
"credentials": "arn:aws:iam::<replaceable>123456789012</replaceable>:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
"responses": {
"4\d{2}": {
"method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type",
"method.response.header.Timestamp": "integration.response.header.Date"
}
"5\d{2}": {"statusCode": "500"
}}
"statusCode": "400"
},
"default": {
  "statusCode": "200",
  "responseParameters": {
  "method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type",
  "method.response.header.Date": "integration.response.header.Date",
  "method.response.header.Content-Length": "integration.response.header.content-length"
}
"statusCode": "500"
},
"requestParameters": {
  "integration.request.path.bucket": "method.request.path.folder"
},
"uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/{bucket}",
"passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
"httpMethod": "GET",
"type": "aws"
},
"put": {
  "produces": [
    "application/json"
  ],
  "parameters": [
    {
      "name": "Content-Type",
      "in": "header",
      "required": false,
      "type": "string"
    },
    {
      "name": "folder",
      "in": "path",
      "required": true,
      "type": "string"
    }
  ],
  "responses": {
    "200": {
      "description": "200 response",
      "schema": {
        "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
      },
      "headers": {
        "Content-Length": {
          "type": "string"
        },
        "Content-Type": {
          "type": "string"
        }
      }
    },
    "400": {
      "description": "400 response"
    },
    "500": {
      "description": "500 response"
    }
  }
},
"security": [
Swagger Definitions of a Sample
API as an Amazon S3 Proxy

```json
{
    "sigv4": [
    ],
    "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
        "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::<replaceable>123456789012</replaceable>:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
        "responses": {
            "4\d{2}": {
                "statusCode": "400"
            },
            "default": {
                "statusCode": "200",
                "responseParameters": {
                    "method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type",
                    "method.response.header.Content-Length": "integration.response.header.Content-Length"
                }
            },
            "5\d{2}": {
                "statusCode": "500"
            }
        },
        "requestParameters": {
            "integration.request.header.x-amz-acl": "'authenticated-read'",
            "integration.request.path.bucket": "method.request.path.folder",
            "integration.request.header.Content-Type": "method.request.header.Content-Type"
        },
        "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/{bucket}",
        "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
        "httpMethod": "PUT",
        "type": "aws"
    }
},
"delete": {
    "produces": [
        "application/json"
    ],
    "parameters": [
        {
            "name": "folder",
            "in": "path",
            "required": true,
            "type": "string"
        }
    ],
    "responses": {
        "200": {
            "description": "200 response",
            "schema": {
                "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
            },
            "headers": {
                "Date": {
                    "type": "string"
                },
                "Content-Type": {
                    "type": "string"
                }
            }
        },
        "400": {
            "description": "400 response"
        },
        "500": {
```
"description": "500 response"
},
"security": [
  {
    "sigv4": []
  }
],
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::<replaceable>123456789012</replaceable>:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
  "responses": {
    "4\d{2}": {
      "statusCode": "400"
    },
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200",
      "responseParameters": {
        "method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type",
        "method.response.header.Date": "integration.response.header.Date"
      }
    },
    "5\d{2}": {
      "statusCode": "500"
    }
  },
  "requestParameters": {
    "integration.request.path.bucket": "method.request.path.folder"
  },
  "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/{bucket}/",
  "passsthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
  "httpMethod": "DELETE",
  "type": "aws"
},
"/{folder}/{item}": {
  "get": {
    "produces": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "parameters": [
      {
        "name": "item",
        "in": "path",
        "required": true,
        "type": "string"
      },
      {
        "name": "folder",
        "in": "path",
        "required": true,
        "type": "string"
      }
    ],
    "responses": {
      "200": {
        "description": "200 response",
        "schema": {
          "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
        },
        "headers": {
          "content-type": {
            "type": "string"
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
"Content-Type": {
    "type": "string"
}

"400": {
    "description": "400 response"
},
"500": {
    "description": "500 response"
}

"security": [
    {
        "sigv4": []
    }
],
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
    "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::<replaceable>123456789012</replaceable>:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
    "responses": {
        "4\d{2}": {
            "statusCode": "400"
        },
        "default": {
            "statusCode": "200",
            "responseParameters": {
                "method.response.header.content-type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type",
                "method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type"
            }
        },
        "5\d{2}": {
            "statusCode": "500"
        }
    },
    "requestParameters": {
        "integration.request.path.object": "method.request.path.item",
        "integration.request.path.bucket": "method.request.path.folder"
    },
    "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/{bucket}/{object}",
    "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
    "httpMethod": "GET",
    "type": "aws"
}

"head": {
    "produces": [
        "application/json"
    ],
    "parameters": [
        {
            "name": "item",
            "in": "path",
            "required": true,
            "type": "string"
        },
        {
            "name": "folder",
            "in": "path",
            "required": true,
            "type": "string"
        }
    ],
    "responses": {
"200": {
  "description": "200 response",
  "schema": {
    "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
  },
  "headers": {
    "Content-Length": {
      "type": "string"
    },
    "Content-Type": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "400": {
    "description": "400 response"
  },
  "500": {
    "description": "500 response"
  }
},
"security": [
  {
    "sigv4": []
  }
],
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::<replaceable>123456789012</replaceable>:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
  "responses": {
    "4\d{2}": {
      "statusCode": "400"
    },
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200",
      "responseParameters": {
        "method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type",
        "method.response.header.Content-Length": "integration.response.header.Content-Length"
      }
    },
    "5\d{2}": {
      "statusCode": "500"
    }
  },
  "requestParameters": {
    "integration.request.path.object": "method.request.path.item",
    "integration.request.path.bucket": "method.request.path.folder"
  },
  "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/{bucket}/{object}",
  "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
  "httpMethod": "HEAD",
  "type": "aws"
},
"put": {
  "produces": [
    "application/json"
  ],
  "parameters": [
    {
      "name": "Content-Type",
      "in": "header",
      "required": false,
      "type": "string"
{  
  "name": "item",
  "in": "path",
  "required": true,
  "type": "string"
},
{  
  "name": "folder",
  "in": "path",
  "required": true,
  "type": "string"
}
],
"responses": {
  "200": {
    "description": "200 response",
    "schema": {
      "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
    },
    "headers": {
      "Content-Length": {
        "type": "string"
      },
      "Content-Type": {
        "type": "string"
      }
    }
  },
  "400": {
    "description": "400 response"
  },
  "500": {
    "description": "500 response"
  }
},
"security": [
  {
    "sigv4": []
  }
],
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::<replaceable>123456789012</replaceable>:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
  "responses": {
    "4\d{2}": {
      "statusCode": "400"
    },
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200",
      "responseParameters": {
        "method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type",
        "method.response.header.Content-Length": "integration.response.header.Content-Length"
      }
    },
    "5\d{2}": {
      "statusCode": "500"
    }
  },
  "requestParameters": {
    "integration.request.path.object": "method.request.path.item",
    "integration.request.header.x-amz-acl": "'authenticated-read'",
    "integration.request.path.bucket": "method.request.path.folder",
    "integration.request.header.Content-Type": "method.request.header.Content-Type"}

```
{
  "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:s3:path/{bucket}/{object}",
  "passthroughBehavior": "when_no_match",
  "httpMethod": "PUT",
  "type": "aws"
}
}
"delete": {
  "produces": ["application/json"],
  "parameters": [
    {
      "name": "item",
      "in": "path",
      "required": true,
      "type": "string"
    },
    {
      "name": "folder",
      "in": "path",
      "required": true,
      "type": "string"
    }
  ],
  "responses": {
    "200": {
      "description": "200 response",
      "schema": {},
      "headers": {
        "Content-Length": {},
        "Content-Type": {}
      }
    },
    "400": {
      "description": "400 response"
    },
    "500": {
      "description": "500 response"
    }
  },
  "security": [{"sigv4": []}],
  "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
    "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::<replaceable>123456789012</replaceable>:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
    "responses": {
      "4\d{2}": {
        "statusCode": "400"
      },
      "default": {
        "statusCode": "200"
      },
      "5\d{2}": {
        "statusCode": "500"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Create an API Gateway API as an Amazon Kinesis Proxy

This section describes how to create and configure an API Gateway API with an integration of the AWS type to access Kinesis.

**Note**
To integrate your API Gateway API with Kinesis, you must choose a region where both the API Gateway and Kinesis services are available. For region availability, see [Regions and Endpoints](#).

For the purpose of illustration, we create an example API to enable a client to do the following:

1. List the user's available streams in Kinesis
2. Create, describe, or delete a specified stream
3. Read data records from or write data records into the specified stream

To accomplish the preceding tasks, the API exposes methods on various resources to invoke the following, respectively:

1. The `ListStreams` action in Kinesis
2. The `CreateStream`, `DescribeStream`, or `DeleteStream` action
3. The `GetRecords` or `PutRecords` (including `PutRecord`) action in Kinesis

Specifically, we build the API as follows:

- Expose an HTTP GET method on the API's `/streams` resource and integrate the method with the `ListStreams` action in Kinesis to list the streams in the caller's account.
Create an IAM Role and Policy for the API to Access Kinesis

To allow the API to invoke Kinesis actions, you must have appropriate IAM policies attached to an IAM role. This section explains how to verify and to create, if necessary, the required IAM role and policies.

To enable read-only access to Kinesis, you can use the AmazonKinesisReadOnlyAccess policy that allows the Get*, List*, and Describe* actions in Kinesis to be invoked.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "kinesis:Get*",
                "kinesis:List*",
                "kinesis:Describe*"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```
This policy is available as an IAM-provisioned managed policy and its ARN is `arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonKinesisReadOnlyAccess`.

To enable read-write actions in Kinesis, you can use the `AmazonKinesisFullAccess` policy.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "kinesis:*",
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

This policy is also available as an IAM-provisioned managed policy. Its ARN is `arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonKinesisFullAccess`.

After you decide which IAM policy to use, attach it to a new or existing IAM role. Make sure that the API Gateway control service (`apigateway.amazonaws.com`) is a trusted entity of the role and is allowed to assume the execution role (`sts:AssumeRole`).

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
}
```

If you create the execution role in the IAM console and choose the `Amazon API Gateway` role type, this trust policy is automatically attached.

Note the ARN of the execution role. You will need it when creating an API method and setting up its integration request.

**Start to Create an API as a Kinesis Proxy**

Use the following steps to create the API in the API Gateway console.

**To create an API as an AWS service proxy for Kinesis**

1. In the API Gateway console, choose Create API.
2. Choose **New API**.
3. In **API name**, type **KinesisProxy**. Leave the default values in the other fields.
4. Type a description in **Description**, if you like.
5. Choose **Create API**.

After the API is created, the API Gateway console displays the **Resources** page, which contains only the API's root (/) resource.

### List Streams in Kinesis

Kinesis supports the **ListStreams** action with the following REST API call:

```plaintext
POST /?Action=ListStreams HTTP/1.1
Host: kinesis.<region>.<domain>
Content-Length: <PayloadSizeBytes>
User-Agent: <UserAgentString>
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Authorization: <AuthParams>
X-Amz-Date: <Date>
{
...
}
```

In the above REST API request, the action is specified in the **Action** query parameter. Alternatively, you can specify the action in a **X-Amz-Target** header, instead:

```plaintext
POST / HTTP/1.1
Host: kinesis.<region>.<domain>
Content-Length: <PayloadSizeBytes>
User-Agent: <UserAgentString>
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Authorization: <AuthParams>
X-Amz-Date: <Date>
X-Amz-Target: Kinesis_20131202.ListStreams
{
...
}
```

In this tutorial, we use the query parameter to specify action.

To expose a Kinesis action in the API, add a **/streams** resource to the API’s root. Then set a **GET** method on the resource and integrate the method with the **ListStreams** action of Kinesis.

The following procedure describes how to list Kinesis streams by using the API Gateway console.

**To list Kinesis streams by using the API Gateway console**

1. Select the API root resource. In **Actions**, choose **Create Resource**.
   - In **Resource Name**, type **Streams**, leave **Resource Path** and other fields as the default, and choose **Create Resource**.
2. Choose the **/Streams** resource. From **Actions**, choose **Create Method**, choose **GET** from the list, and then choose the check mark icon to finish creating the method.
   
   **Note**
   The HTTP verb for a method invoked by a client may differ from the HTTP verb for an integration required by the backend. We chose **GET** here, because listing streams is intuitively a READ operation.
3. In the method's **Setup** pane, choose **AWS Service**.
   a. For **AWS Region**, choose a region (e.g., **us-east-1**).
   b. For **AWS Service**, choose **Kinesis**.
   c. Leave **AWS Subdomain** blank.
   d. For **HTTP method**, choose **POST**.
      
      **Note**
      
      We chose **POST** here because Kinesis requires that the **ListStreams** action be invoked with it.
   e. For **Action Type**, choose **Use action name**.
   f. For **Action**, type **ListStreams**.
   g. For **Execution role**, type the ARN for your execution role.
   h. Leave the default of **Passthrough** for **Content Handling**.
   i. Choose **Save** to finish the initial setup of the method.

4. Still in the **Integration Request** pane, expand the **HTTP Headers** section:
a. Choose **Add header**.

b. In the **Name** column, type **Content-Type**.

c. In the **Mapped from** column, type `'application/x-amz-json-1.1'`.

d. Choose the check mark icon to save the setting.

We used a request parameter mapping to set the **Content-Type** header to the static value of `'application/x-amz-json-1.1'` to inform Kinesis that the input is of a specific version of JSON.

5. Expand the **Body Mapping Templates** section:

   a. Choose **Add mapping template**.

   b. For **Content-Type**, type `application/json`.

   c. Choose the check mark icon to save the **Content-Type** setting. Choose **Yes, secure this integration in Change passthrough behavior**.

   d. Type `{}` in the template editor.

   e. Choose the **Save** button to save the mapping template.

The **ListStreams** request takes a payload of the following JSON format:

```json
{
   "ExclusiveStartStreamName": "string",
   "Limit": number
}
```

However, the properties are optional. To use the default values, we opted for an empty JSON payload here.
6. Test the GET method on the Streams resource to invoke the `ListStreams` action in Kinesis:

   From the API Gateway console, select the `/streams/GET` entry from the `Resources` pane, choose the `Test` invocation option, and then choose `Test`.
If you already created two streams named "myStream" and "yourStream" in Kinesis, the successful test returns a 200 OK response containing the following payload:

```json
{
  "HasMoreStreams": false,
  "StreamNames": [
    "myStream",
    "yourStream"
  ]
}
```

### Create, Describe, and Delete a Stream in Kinesis

Creating, describing, and deleting a stream in Kinesis involves making the following Kinesis REST API requests, respectively:

**Create Stream**

```
POST /?Action=CreateStream HTTP/1.1
Host: kinesis.region.domain

Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Content-Length: PayloadSizeBytes

{
  "ShardCount": number,
  "StreamName": "string"
}
```

**Describe Stream**

```
POST /?Action=DescribeStream HTTP/1.1
Host: kinesis.region.domain

Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Content-Length: PayloadSizeBytes

{
  "ExclusiveStartShardId": "string",
  "Limit": number,
  "StreamName": "string"
}
```

**Delete Stream**

```
POST /?Action=DeleteStream HTTP/1.1
Host: kinesis.region.domain

Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Content-Length: PayloadSizeBytes

{
  "StreamName": "string"
}
```
We can build the API to accept the required input as a JSON payload of the method request and pass the payload through to the integration request. However, to provide more examples of data mapping between method and integration requests, and method and integration responses, we create our API somewhat differently.

We expose the GET, POST, and Delete HTTP methods on a to-be-named Stream resource. We use the \{stream-name\} path variable as the placeholder of the stream resource and integrate these API methods with the Kinesis' DescribeStream, CreateStream, and DeleteStream actions, respectively. We require that the client pass other input data as headers, query parameters, or the payload of a method request. We provide mapping templates to transform the data to the required integration request payload.

**To configure and test the GET method on a stream resource**

1. Create a child resource with the \{stream-name\} path variable under the previously created / streams resource.

   ![New Child Resource](image)

   * Required

   2. Add the POST, GET, and DELETE HTTP verbs to this resource.

      After the methods are created on the resource, the structure of the API looks like the following:
3. Set up the GET /streams/{stream-name} method to call the POST /?
Action=DescribeStream action in Kinesis, as shown in the following.

4. Add the following Content-Type header mapping to the integration request:
The task follows the same procedure to set up the request parameter mapping for the GET /streams method.

5. Add the following body mapping template to map data from the GET /streams/{stream-name} method request to the POST /?Action=DescribeStream integration request:

```json
{
    "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')"
}
```

This mapping template generates the required integration request payload for the DescribeStream action of Kinesis from the method request’s stream-name path parameter value.

6. Test the GET /stream/{stream-name} method to invoke the DescribeStream action in Kinesis:

From the API Gateway console, select /streams/{stream-name}/GET in the Resources pane, choose Test to start testing, type the name of an existing Kinesis stream in the Path field for stream-name, and choose Test. If the test is successful, a 200 OK response is returned with a payload similar to the following:

```json
{
    "StreamDescription": {
        "HasMoreShards": false,
        "RetentionPeriodHours": 24,
        "Shards": [
            {
                "HashKeyRange": {
                    "EndingHashKey": "68056473384187692692674921486353642290",
                    "StartingHashKey": "0"
                },
                "SequenceNumberRange": {
                    "StartingSequenceNumber": "49559266461454070523309915164834022007924120923395850242"
                },
                "ShardId": "shardId-000000000000"
            },
            ...
            {
                "HashKeyRange": {
                    "EndingHashKey": "34028236692093846346374607431768211455",
                    "StartingHashKey": "27222589353675077070699685945414569164"
                },
                "SequenceNumberRange": {
                    "StartingSequenceNumber": "4955926646154327350410437657400164881014714369419771970"
                },
                "ShardId": "shardId-000000000004"
            }
        ],
        "StreamName": "myStream",
        "StreamStatus": "ACTIVE"
    }
}
```

After you deploy the API, you can make a REST request against this API method:
To configure and test the POST method on a stream resource

1. Set up the POST /streams/{stream-name} method to call POST /?Action=CreateStream action in Kinesis. The task follows the same procedure to set up the GET /streams/{stream-name} method provided that you replace the DescribeStream action by CreateStream.

2. Add the following Content-Type header mapping to the integration request:

   Content-Type: 'x-amz-json-1.1'

   The task follows the same procedure to set up the request parameter mapping for the GET / streams method.

3. Add the following body mapping template to map data from the POST /streams/{stream-name} method request to the POST /?Action=CreateStream integration request:

   ```
   {
   "ShardCount": #if($input.path('$.ShardCount') == '') 5 #else $input.path('$.ShardCount') #end,
   "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')"
   }
   ```

   In the preceding mapping template, we set ShardCount to a fixed value of 5 if the client does not specify a value in the method request payload.

4. Test the POST /streams/{stream-name} method to create a named stream in Kinesis:

   From the API Gateway console, select /streams/{stream-name}/POST in the Resources pane, choose Test to start testing, type the name of an existing Kinesis stream in Path for stream-name, and choose Test. If the test is successful, a 200 OK response is returned with no data.

   After you deploy the API, you can also make a REST API request against the POST method on a Stream resource to invoke the CreateStream action in Kinesis:
Configure and test the DELETE method on a stream resource

1. Set up the DELETE /streams/{stream-name} method to integrate with the POST /? Action=DeleteStream action in Kinesis. The task follows the same procedure to set up the GET /streams/{stream-name} method provided that you replace the DescribeStream action by DeleteStream.

2. Add the following Content-Type header mapping to the integration request:

   ```
   Content-Type: 'x-amz-json-1.1'
   ```

   The task follows the same procedure to set up the request parameter mapping for the GET /streams method.

3. Add the following body mapping template to map data from the DELETE /streams/{stream-name} method request to the corresponding integration request of POST /? Action=DeleteStream:

   ```
   {
     "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')"
   }
   ```

   This mapping template generates the required input for the DELETE /streams/{stream-name} action from the client-supplied URL path name of stream-name.

4. Test the DELETE method to delete a named stream in Kinesis:

   From the API Gateway console, select the /streams/{stream-name}/DELETE method node in the Resources pane, choose Test to start testing, type the name of an existing Kinesis stream in Path for stream-name, and choose Test. If the test is successful, a 200 OK response is returned with no data.

   After you deploy the API, you can also make the following REST API request against the DELETE method on the Stream resource to call the DeleteStream action in Kinesis:

   ```
   DELETE https://your-api-id.execute-api.region.amazonaws.com/stage/streams/yourStream
   HTTP/1.1
   Host: your-api-id.execute-api.region.amazonaws.com
   Content-Type: application/json
   Authorization: ...
   X-Amz-Date: 20160323T194451Z
   ```

Get Records from and Add Records to a Stream in Kinesis

After you create a stream in Kinesis, you can add data records to the stream and read the data from the stream. Adding data records involves calling the PutRecords or PutRecord action in Kinesis. The former adds multiple records whereas the latter adds a single record to the stream.

```
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Content-Length: PayloadSizeBytes
{
    "Records": [
    {
        "Data": blob,
        "ExplicitHashKey": "string",
        "PartitionKey": "string"
    }
    ],
    "StreamName": "string"
}

or

POST /?Action=PutRecord HTTP/1.1
Host: kinesis.region.domain
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=..., ...
...
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Content-Length: PayloadSizeBytes
{
    "Data": blob,
    "ExplicitHashKey": "string",
    "PartitionKey": "string",
    "SequenceNumberForOrdering": "string",
    "StreamName": "string"
}

Here, StreamName identifies the target stream to add records. StreamName, Data, and PartitionKey are required input data. In our example, we use the default values for all of the optional input data and will not explicitly specify values for them in the input to the method request.

Reading data in Kinesis amounts to calling the GetRecords action:

POST /?Action=GetRecords HTTP/1.1
Host: kinesis.region.domain
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=..., ...
...
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Content-Length: PayloadSizeBytes
{
    "ShardIterator": "string",
    "Limit": number
}

Here, the source stream from which we are getting records is specified in the required ShardIterator value, as is shown in the following Kinesis action to obtain a shard iterator:

POST /?Action=GetShardIterator HTTP/1.1
Host: kinesis.region.domain
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=..., ...
...
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
For the GetRecords and PutRecords actions, we expose the GET and PUT methods, respectively, on a /records resource that is appended to a named stream resource (/{stream-name}). Similarly, we expose the PutRecord action as a PUT method on a /record resource.

Because the GetRecords action takes as input a ShardIterator value, which is obtained by calling the GetShardIterator helper action, we expose a GET helper method on a ShardIterator resource (/sharditerator).

The following figure shows the API structure of resources after the methods are created:

The following four procedures describe how to set up each of the methods, how to map data from the method requests to the integration requests, and how to test the methods.

To set up and test the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/record method to invoke PutRecord in Kinesis:

1. Set up the PUT method, as shown in the following:
2. Add the following request parameter mapping to set the Content-Type header to an AWS-compliant version of JSON in the integration request:

```
Content-Type: 'x-amz-json-1.1'
```

The task follows the same procedure to set up the request parameter mapping for the GET /streams method.

3. Add the following body mapping template to map data from the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/record method request to the corresponding integration request of POST /?Action=PutRecord:

```
{
    "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')",
    "Data": "$util.base64Encode($input.json('$.Data'))",
    "PartitionKey": "$input.path('$.PartitionKey')"
}
```

This mapping template assumes that the method request payload is of the following format:

```
{
    "Data": "some data",
    "PartitionKey": "some key"
}
```
This data can be modeled by the following JSON schema:

```json
{
   "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
   "title": "PutRecord proxy single-record payload",
   "type": "object",
   "properties": {
      "Data": { "type": "string" },
      "PartitionKey": { "type": "string" }
   }
}
```

You can create a model to include this schema and use the model to facilitate generating the mapping template. However, you can generate a mapping template without using any model.

4. To test the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/record method, set the stream-name path variable to the name of an existing stream, supply a payload of the required format, and then submit the method request. The successful result is a 200 OK response with a payload of the following format:

```json
{
   "SequenceNumber": "49559409944537880850133345460169886593573102115167928386",
   "ShardId": "shardId-000000000004"
}
```

To set up and test the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/records method to invoke PutRecords in Kinesis

1. Set up the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/records method, as shown in the following:
2. Add the following request parameter mapping to set the Content-Type header to an AWS-compliant version of JSON in the integration request:

```
Content-Type: 'x-amz-json-1.1'
```

The task follows the same procedure to set up the request parameter mapping for the GET / streams method.

3. Add the following body mapping template to map data from the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/records method request to the corresponding integration request of POST /? Action=PutRecords:

```
{
    "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')",
    "Records": [
        #foreach($elem in $input.path('$.records'))
          {
            "Data": "$util.base64Encode($elem.data)",
            "PartitionKey": "$elem.partition-key"
          }
        #if($foreach.hasNext),
        #end
    ]
}
```
This mapping template assumes that the method request payload can be modeled by the following JSON schema:

```json
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema#",
  "title": "PutRecords proxy payload data",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "records": {
      "type": "array",
      "items": {
        "type": "object",
        "properties": {
          "data": { "type": "string" },
          "partition-key": { "type": "string" }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

You can create a model to include this schema and use the model to facilitate generating the mapping template. However, you can generate a mapping template without using any model.

In this tutorial, we used two slightly different payload formats to illustrate that an API developer can choose to expose the backend data format to the client or hide it from the client. One format is for the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/records method (above). Another format is used for the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/record method (in the previous procedure). In production environment, you should keep both formats consistent.

4. To test the PUT /streams/{stream-name}/records method, set the stream-name path variable to an existing stream, supply the following payload, and submit the method request.

```json
{
  "records": [
    {
      "data": "some data",
      "partition-key": "some key"
    },
    {
      "data": "some other data",
      "partition-key": "some key"
    }
  ]
}
```

The successful result is a 200 OK response with a payload similar to the following output:

```json
{
  "FailedRecordCount": 0,
  "Records": [
    {
      "SequenceNumber": "49559409944537880850133345460167468741933742152373764162",
      "ShardId": "shardId-000000000004"
    },
    {
      "SequenceNumber": "4955940994453788085013334546016867676753356781548470338",
      "ShardId": "shardId-000000000004"
    }
  ]
}
```
To set up and test the GET /streams/{stream-name}/sharditerator method invoke GetShardIterator in Kinesis

The GET /streams/{stream-name}/sharditerator method is a helper method to acquire a required shard iterator before calling the GET /streams/{stream-name}/records method.

1. Set up integration for the GET /streams/{stream-name}/sharditerator method, as shown in the following:

2. The GetShardIterator action requires an input of a ShardId value. To pass a client-supplied ShardId value, we add a shard-id query parameter to the method request, as shown in the following:
In the following body-mapping template, we set the shard-id query parameter value to the ShardId property value of the JSON payload as the input to the GetShardIterator action in Kinesis.

3. Configure the body mapping template to generate the required input (ShardId and StreamName) to the GetShardIterator action from the shard-id and stream-name parameters of the method request. In addition, the mapping template also sets ShardIteratorType to TRIM_HORIZON as a default.

```json
{
    "ShardId": "$input.params('shard-id')",
    "ShardIteratorType": "TRIM_HORIZON",
    "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')"
}
```

4. Using the Test option in the API Gateway console, enter an existing stream name as the stream-name Path variable value, set the shard-id Query string to an existing ShardId value (e.g., shard-000000000004), and choose Test.

The successful response payload is similar to the following output:
Make note of the ShardIterator value. You need it to get records from a stream.

To configure and test the GET /streams/{stream-name}/records method to invoke the GetRecords action in Kinesis

1. Set up the GET /streams/{stream-name}/records method, as shown in the following:

2. The GetRecords action requires an input of a ShardIterator value. To pass a client-supplied ShardIterator value, we add a Shard-Iterator header parameter to the method request, as shown in the following:
3. Set up the following mapping template to map the Shard-Iterator header parameter value to the ShardIterator property value of the JSON payload for the GetRecords action in Kinesis.

```json
{
    "ShardIterator": "$input.params('Shard-Iterator')"
}
```

4. Using the Test option in the API Gateway console, type an existing stream name as the stream-name Path variable value, set the Shard-Iterator Header to the ShardIterator value obtained from the test run of the GET /streams/{stream-name}/sharditerator method (above), and choose Test.

The successful response payload is similar to the following output:

```json
{
    "MillisBehindLatest": 0,
    "NextShardIterator": "AAAAAAAAAAAF...",
    "Records": [ ... ]
}
```
The following shows the Swagger Definitions of the sample API as a Kinesis proxy used for this tutorial.

```json
{
  "swagger": "2.0",
  "info": {
    "version": "2016-03-31T18:25:32Z",
    "title": "KinesisProxy"
  },
  "host": "wd4zclrobb.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
  "basePath": "/test",
  "schemes": [
    "https"
  ],
  "paths": {
    "/streams": {
      "get": {
        "consumes": ["application/json"],
        "produces": ["application/json"],
        "responses": {
          "200": {
            "description": "200 response",
            "schema": {
              "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
            }
          }
        },
        "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
          "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
          "responses": {
            "default": {
              "statusCode": "200"
            }
          },
          "requestTemplates": {
            "application/json": "\n"
          },
          "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1:kinesis:action/ListStreams",
          "httpMethod": "POST",
          "requestParameters": {
            "integration.request.header.Content-Type": "application/x-amz-json-1.1"
          },
          "type": "aws"
        }
      }
    },
    "/streams/{stream-name}": {
      "get": {
        "consumes": ["application/json"],
        "produces": ["application/json"],
        "parameters": [
          {
            "name": "stream-name",
            "in": "path",
            "required": true
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  }
}
```
Swagger Definitions of a Sample API as a Kinesis Proxy

```
"in": "path",
"required": true,
"type": "string"
},
"responses": {
  "200": {
    "description": "200 response",
    "schema": {
      "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
    }
  }
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
  "responses": {
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200"
    }
  },
  "requestTemplates": {
    "application/json": "{\n        \"StreamName\": \"$input.params('stream-name')\"\n    }"
  },
  "httpMethod": "POST",
  "type": "aws"
},
"post": {
  "consumes": [
    "application/json"
  ],
  "produces": [
    "application/json"
  ],
  "parameters": [
    {
      "name": "stream-name",
      "in": "path",
      "required": true,
      "type": "string"
    }
  ],
  "responses": {
    "200": {
      "description": "200 response",
      "schema": {
        "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
      }
    }
  },
  "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
    "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
    "responses": {
      "default": {
        "statusCode": "200"
      }
    },
    "requestTemplates": {
      "application/json": "{\n        \"ShardCount\": 5,\n        \"StreamName\": \"$input.params('stream-name')\"\n    }
  },
  "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1:kinesis:action/CreateStream",
  "httpMethod": "POST",
  "requestParameters": {
```
"integration.request.header.Content-Type": "application/x-amz-json-1.1"
},
"type": "aws"
},
"delete": {
"consumes": [
"application/json"
],
"produces": [
"application/json"
],
"parameters": [
{
"name": "stream-name",
"in": "path",
"required": true,
"type": "string"
}
],
"responses": {
"200": {
"description": "200 response",
"schema": {}
},
"headers": {
"Content-Type": {
"type": "string"
}
},
"400": {
"description": "400 response",
"headers": {
"Content-Type": {
"type": "string"
}
},
"500": {
"description": "500 response",
"headers": {
"Content-Type": {
"type": "string"
}
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
"credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
"responses": {
"4\d{2}": {
"statusCode": "400",
"responseParameters": {
"method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type"
}
},
"default": {
"statusCode": "200",
"responseParameters": {
"method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type"
}
}
}}
"5\d{2}": {
    "statusCode": "500",
    "responseParameters": {
        "method.response.header.Content-Type": "integration.response.header.Content-Type"
    }
},
"requestTemplates": {
    "application/json": "{\n        "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')"\n    }\n"},
"httpMethod": "POST",
"requestParameters": {
    "integration.request.header.Content-Type": "application/x-amz-json-1.1"
},
"type": "aws"
},
"/streams/{stream-name}/record": {
    "put": {
        "consumes": [
            "application/json"
        ],
        "produces": [
            "application/json"
        ],
        "parameters": [
            {
                "name": "stream-name",
                "in": "path",
                "required": true,
                "type": "string"
            }
        ],
        "responses": {
            "200": {
                "description": "200 response",
                "schema": {
                    "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
                }
            }
        },
        "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
            "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
            "responses": {
                "default": {
                    "statusCode": "200"
                }
            },
            "requestTemplates": {
                "application/json": "{\n                    "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')",
                    "Data": "$util.base64Encode($input.json('$.Data'))",
                    "PartitionKey": "$input.path('$.PartitionKey')"\n                }\n            },
            "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1:kinesis:action/PutRecord",
            "httpMethod": "POST",
            "requestParameters": {
                "integration.request.header.Content-Type": "application/x-amz-json-1.1"
            },
            "type": "aws"
        }
    }
}
"/streams/{stream-name}/records": {
  "get": {
    "consumes": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "produces": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "parameters": [
      {
        "name": "stream-name",
        "in": "path",
        "required": true,
        "type": "string"
      },
      {
        "name": "Shard-Iterator",
        "in": "header",
        "required": false,
        "type": "string"
      }
    ],
    "responses": {
      "200": {
        "description": "200 response",
        "schema": {
          "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
        }
      }
    },
    "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
      "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
      "responses": {
        "default": {
          "statusCode": "200"
        }
      },
      "requestTemplates": {
        "application/json": "{\n            "ShardIterator": "\"$input.params('Shard-Iterator')\""
        }"
      },
      "httpMethod": "POST",
      "requestParameters": {
        "integration.request.header.Content-Type": "application/x-amz-json-1.1"
      },
      "type": "aws"
    }
  },
  "put": {
    "consumes": [
      "application/json",
      "application/x-amz-json-1.1"
    ],
    "produces": [
      "application/json"
    ],
    "parameters": [
      {
        "name": "Content-Type",
        "in": "header",
        "required": false,
        "type": "string"
      },
      {
        "name": "stream-name",
        "in": "path",
        "required": true,
        "type": "string"
      }
    ],
    "responses": {
      "200": {
        "description": "200 response",
        "schema": {
          "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
        }
      }
    },
    "x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
      "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
      "responses": {
        "default": {
          "statusCode": "200"
        }
      },
      "requestTemplates": {
        "application/json": "{\n            "stream-name": "\"$input.params('stream-name')\""
        }"
      },
      "uri": "arn:aws:apigateway:us-east-1:kinesis:action/PutRecords",
      "httpMethod": "POST",
      "requestParameters": {
        "integration.request.header.Content-Type": "application/x-amz-json-1.1"
      },
      "type": "aws"
    }
  }
}
"in": "path",
"required": true,
"type": "string"
},
{
"in": "body",
"name": "PutRecordsMethodRequestPayload",
"required": true,
"schema": {
  "#ref": "#/definitions/PutRecordsMethodRequestPayload"
}
}
],
"responses": {
  "200": {
    "description": "200 response",
    "schema": {
      "#ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
    }
  }
}
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
  "responses": {
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200"
    }
  }
},
"requestTemplates": {
  "application/json": "{\n    "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')",
    "Records": [\n      {\n        "$elem.partition-key": "$util.base64Encode($elem.data)"
      }\n    ]\n  }\n  "application/x-amz-json-1.1": "#set($inputRoot = $input.path('$.'))\n\n  "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')",
  "records": [\n    {\n      "$elem.partition-key": "$elem.partition-key"
    }
  ]\n  "application/json": "{\n    "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')",
    "Records": [\n      {\n        "$elem.partition-key": "$elem.partition-key"
      }\n    ]\n  }"
}
},
"/streams/{stream-name}/sharditerator": {
  "get": {
    "consumes": ["application/json"],
    "produces": ["application/json"],
    "parameters": {
      "name": "stream-name",
      "in": "path",
      "required": true,
      "type": "string"
    },
    "name": "shard-id",
    "in": "query",
    "required": false,
"type": "string"
},
"responses": {
  "200": {
    "description": "200 response",
    "schema": {
      "$ref": "#/definitions/Empty"
    }
  }
},
"x-amazon-apigateway-integration": {
  "credentials": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/apigAwsProxyRole",
  "responses": {
    "default": {
      "statusCode": "200"
    }
  },
  "requestTemplates": {
    "application/json": "{\n    "ShardId": "$input.params('shard-id')",\n    "ShardIteratorType": "TRIM_HORIZON",\n    "StreamName": "$input.params('stream-name')"\n}\n",
    "httpMethod": "POST",
    "requestParameters": {
      "integration.request.header.Content-Type": "application/x-amz-json-1.1"
    },
    "type": "aws"
  }
},
"definitions": {
  "PutRecordsMethodRequestPayload": {
    "type": "object",
    "properties": {
      "records": {
        "type": "array",
        "items": {
          "type": "object",
          "properties": {
            "data": {
              "type": "string"
            },
            "partition-key": {
              "type": "string"
            }
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
},
"Empty": {
  "type": "object"
}
Amazon API Gateway REST API

When you use the Amazon API Gateway console to create, configure, update, and deploy an API, the console calls the API Gateway REST API behind the scenes to make things happen.

When you use AWS Command Line Interface to create, configure, update, and deploy an API, the AWS CLI tool calls the API Gateway REST API as well. For an example, see Create an API using API Gateway and Test It in the AWS Lambda Developer Guide. For more information, see AWS Command Line Interface User Guide.

When you use an AWS SDK to create, configure, update, and deploy an API, the SDK calls the API Gateway REST API behind the scenes.

Instead, you can call the API Gateway REST API directly to create, configure, update, and deploy an API in API Gateway.

For more information on how to use the API Gateway REST API, see Amazon API Gateway REST API Reference.
Amazon API Gateway Limits, Pricing and Known Issues

Topics
- API Gateway Limits (p. 559)
- API Gateway Pricing (p. 561)
- Known Issues (p. 562)

API Gateway Limits

Unless noted otherwise, the limits can be increased upon request. To request a limit increase, contact the AWS Support Center.

When authorization is enabled on a method, the maximum length of the method's ARN (e.g., arn:aws:execute-api:{region-id}:{account-id}:{api-id}/{stage-id}/{method}/{resource}/{path}) is 1600 bytes. The path parameter values, the size of which are determined at run time, can cause the ARN length to exceed the limit. When this happens, the API client will receive a 414 Request URI too long response.

Header values are limited to 10240 bytes.

API Gateway Limits for Configuring and Running an API

The following limits apply to configuring and running an API in Amazon API Gateway.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource or Operation</th>
<th>Default Limit</th>
<th>Can Be Increased</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Throttle limits per account per region</td>
<td>10000 request per second (rps) with an additional burst capacity provided by the token bucket algorithm, using a maximum bucket capacity of 5000 requests.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIs (or RestApis) per account per region</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API keys per account per region</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client certificates per account per region</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom authorizers per API</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentation parts per API</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resources per API</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### API Gateway Limits for Creating, Deploying and Managing an API

The following fixed limits apply to creating, deploying, and managing an API in API Gateway, using the AWS CLI, the API Gateway console, or the API Gateway REST API and its SDKs. These limits cannot be increased.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource or Operation</th>
<th>Default Limit</th>
<th>Can Be Increased</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stages per API</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage plans per account per region</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage plans per API key</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPC links per account per region</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API caching TTL</td>
<td>300 seconds by default and configurable between 0 and 3600 by an API owner.</td>
<td>Not for the upper bound (3600)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integration timeout</td>
<td>50 milliseconds - 29 seconds for all integration types, including Lambda, Lambda proxy, HTTP, HTTP proxy, and AWS integrations.</td>
<td>Not for the lower or upper bounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header value size</td>
<td>10240 Bytes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payload size</td>
<td>10 MB</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tags per stage</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of iterations in a #foreach ... #end loop in mapping templates</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARN length of a method with authorization</td>
<td>1600 bytes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For `restapi:import` or `restapi:put`, the maximum size of the API definition file is 2MB.

All of the per API limits can only be increased on specific APIs.

### API Gateway Limits for Creating, Deploying and Managing an API

The following fixed limits apply to creating, deploying, and managing an API in API Gateway, using the AWS CLI, the API Gateway console, or the API Gateway REST API and its SDKs. These limits cannot be increased.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Default Limit</th>
<th>Can Be Increased</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CreateRestApi</td>
<td>2 requests per minute (rpm) per account.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Default Limit</td>
<td>Can Be Increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportRestApi</td>
<td>2 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PutRestApi</td>
<td>60 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeleteRestApi</td>
<td>2 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateDeployment</td>
<td>3 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpdateAccount</td>
<td>3 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetResources</td>
<td>150 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateResource</td>
<td>300 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeleteResource</td>
<td>300 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateDomainName</td>
<td>2 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpdateUsagePlan</td>
<td>3 requests per minute per account</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other operations</td>
<td>No limit up to the total account limit.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total operations</td>
<td>10 request per second (rps) with a burst limit of 40 requests.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### API Gateway Pricing

For general API Gateway region-specific pricing information, see Amazon API Gateway Pricing.

The following lists the exceptions of the general pricing scheme:

- API caching in Amazon API Gateway is not eligible for the AWS Free Tier.
- Calling methods with the authorization type of AWS_IAM, CUSTOM, and COGNITO_USER_POOLS are not charged for authorization and authentication failures.
- Calling methods requiring API keys are not charged when API keys are missing or invalid.
- API Gateway-throttled requests are not charged when the request rate or burst exceed the pre-configured limits.
- Usage plan-throttled requests are not charged when rate limits or quota exceed the pre-configured limits.
Known Issues

- For an API Resource or Method entity with a private integration, you should delete it after removing any hard-coded reference of a VpcLink. Otherwise, you have a dangling integration and receive an error stating that the VPC link is still in use even when the Resource or Method entity is deleted. This behavior does not apply when the private integration references VpcLink through a stage variable.
- The plain text pipe character (|) is not supported for any request URL query string and must be URL-encoded.
- Paths of /ping and /sping are reserved for the service health check. Use of these for API root-level resources with custom domains will fail to produce the expected result.
- API Gateway does not currently support cross-account authentication in the sense that when IAM is used to authorize calling an API integrated with another AWS service, the deployed API and the integrated AWS service must be of the same AWS account. An API caller must be an IAM user of the API owner's AWS account or in an IAM role trusted by the API owner.
- When using the API Gateway console to test an API, you may get an "unknown endpoint errors" response if a self-signed certificate is presented to the backend, the intermediate certificate is missing from the certificate chain, or any other unrecognizable certificate-related exceptions thrown by the backend.
- API Gateway currently limits log events to 1024 bytes. Log events larger than 1024 bytes, such as request and response bodies, will be truncated by API Gateway before submission to CloudWatch Logs.
- The following backends may not support SSL client authentication in a compatible way with API Gateway:
  - NGINX
- API Gateway supports most of the Swagger specification, with the following exceptions:
  - API Gateway models are defined using JSON Schema, instead of the JSON schema used by Swagger.
  - The additionalProperties field is not supported in Models.
  - The allOf field is not supported in Models.
  - The discriminator parameter is not supported in any schema object.
  - The example tag is not supported.
  - exclusiveMinimum is not supported by API Gateway
  - The maxItems and minItems tags are not included in simple request validation. To work around this, update the model after import before doing validation.
  - oneOf is not supported by API Gateway
  - pattern is not supported by API Gateway
  - The readOnly field is not supported.
  - Response definitions of the "$500": {"$ref": "/responses/UnexpectedError"} form is not supported in the Swagger document root. To work around this, replace the reference by the inline schema.
  - Numbers of the Int32 or Int64 type is not supported. An example is shown as follows:

```json
"elementId": {
  "description": "Working Element Id",
  "format": "int32",
  "type": "number"
}
```

- Decimal number format type ("format": "decimal") is not supported in a schema definition.
- In method responses, schema definition must be of an object type and cannot be of primitive types. For example, "schema": { "type": "string"} is not supported. However, you can work around this using the following object type:
• API Gateway enacts the following restrictions and limitations when handling methods with either Lambda integration or HTTP integration.
  • Duplicated query string parameters are not supported.
  • Duplicated headers are not supported.
  • The Host header will not be forwarded to HTTP endpoints.
  • The following headers may be remapped to x-amzn-Remapped-HEADER when sent to your integration endpoint or sent back by your integration endpoint:
    • Accept
    • Accept-Charset
    • Accept-Encoding
    • Age
    • Authorization
    • Connection
    • Content-Encoding
    • Content-Length
    • Content-MD5
    • Content-Type
    • Date
    • Expect
    • Host
    • Max-Forwards
    • Pragma
    • Proxy-Authenticate
    • Range
    • Referer
    • Server
    • TE
    • Trailer
    • Transfer-Encoding
    • Upgrade
    • User-Agent
    • Via
    • Warn
    • WWW-Authenticate
  • The Android SDK of an API generated by API Gateway uses the java.net.HttpURLConnection class. This class will throw an unhandled exception, on devices running Android 4.4 and earlier, for a 401 response resulted from remapping of the WWW-Authenticate header to X-Amzn-Remapped-WWW-Authenticate.
• Unlike API Gateway-generated Java, Android and iOS SDKs of an API, the JavaScript SDK of an API generated by API Gateway does not support retries for 500-level errors.
• The test invocation of a method uses the default content type of application/json and ignores specifications of any other content types.
Document History

The following table describes the important changes to the documentation since the last release of the API Gateway Developer Guide.

- **Latest documentation update:** December 19, 2017

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tagging for API Gateway resources</td>
<td>Tag an API stage with up to 50 tags for cost allocation of API requests and caching in API Gateway. For more information see the section called “Set Up Tags for an API Stage” (p. 375).</td>
<td>December 19, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payload compression and decompression</td>
<td>Enable calling your API with compressed payloads using one of the supported content codings. The compressed payloads are subject to mapping if a body-mapping template is specified. For more information, see the section called “Enable Payload Compression” (p. 213).</td>
<td>December 19, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API key sourced from a custom authorizer</td>
<td>Return an API key from a custom authorizer to API Gateway to apply a usage plan for API methods that require the key. For more information, see the section called “Expose API Key Source” (p. 297).</td>
<td>December 19, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorization with OAuth 2 scopes</td>
<td>Enable authorization of method invocation by using OAuth 2 scopes with the COGNITO_USER_POOLS authorizer. For more information, see the section called “Use Amazon Cognito User Pools” (p. 269).</td>
<td>December 14, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Integration and VPC Link</td>
<td>Create an API with the API Gateway private integration to provide clients with access to HTTP/HTTPS resources in an Amazon VPC from outside of the VPC through a VpcLink resource. For more information, see the section called “Build an API with Private Integration” (p. 72) and the section called “Set up Private Integrations” (p. 144).</td>
<td>November 30, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deploy a Canary for API testing</td>
<td>Add a canary release to an existing API deployment to test a newer version of the API while keeping the current version in operation on the same stage. You can set a percentage of stage traffic for the canary release and enable canary-specific execution and access logged in separate CloudWatch Logs logs. For more information, see the section called “Set up a Canary Release Deployment” (p. 377).</td>
<td>November 28, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access Logging</td>
<td>Log client access to your API with data derived from $context variables (p. 189) in a format of your choosing. For more information, see the section called “Set up API Logging” (p. 362).</td>
<td>November 21, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruby SDK of an API</td>
<td>Generate a Ruby SDK for your API and use it to invoke your API methods. For more information, see the section called “Generate the Ruby SDK of an API” (p. 399) and the section called “Use a Ruby SDK Generated by API Gateway” (p. 446).</td>
<td>November 20, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional API endpoint</td>
<td>Specify a regional API endpoint to create an API for non-mobile clients. A non-mobile client, such as an EC2 instance, runs in the same AWS Region where the API is deployed. As with an edge-optimized API, you can create a custom domain name for a regional API. For more information, see the section called “Set up a Regional API” (p. 101) and the section called “Set up a Regional Custom Domain Name” (p. 422).</td>
<td>November 2, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom request authorizer</td>
<td>Use custom request authorizer to supply user-authenticating information in request parameters to authorize API method calls. The request parameters include headers and query string parameters as well as stage and context variables. For more information, see Use API Gateway Custom Authorizers (p. 257).</td>
<td>September 15, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing gateway responses</td>
<td>Customize API Gateway-generated gateway responses to API requests that failed to reach the integration backend. A customized gateway message can provide the caller with API-specific custom error messages, including returning needed CORS headers, or can transform the gateway response data to a format of an external exchange. For more information, see Set up Gateway Responses to Customize Error Responses (p. 153).</td>
<td>June 6, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapping Lambda custom error properties to method response headers</td>
<td>Map individual custom error properties returned from Lambda to the method response header parameters using the integration.response.body parameter, relying API Gateway to deserialize the stringified custom error object at run time. For more information, see Handle Custom Lambda Errors in API Gateway (p. 139).</td>
<td>June 6, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throttling limits increase</td>
<td>Increase the account-level steady-state request rate limit to 10,000 requests per second (rps) and the bust limit to 5000 concurrent requests. For more information, see Throttle API Requests for Better Throughput (p. 356).</td>
<td>June 6, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validating method requests</td>
<td>Configure basic request validators on the API level or method levels so that API Gateway can validate incoming requests. API Gateway verifies that required parameters are set and not blank, and verifies that the format of applicable payloads conforms to the configured model. For more information, see Enable Request Validation in API Gateway (p. 217).</td>
<td>April 11, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrating with ACM</td>
<td>Use ACM Certificates for your API's custom domain names. You can create a certificate in AWS Certificate Manager or import an existing PEM-formatted certificate into ACM. You then refer to the certificate's ARN when setting a custom domain name for your APIs. For more information, see Set up Custom Domain Name for an API in API Gateway (p. 412).</td>
<td>March 9, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generating and calling a Java SDK of an API</td>
<td>Let API Gateway generate the Java SDK for your API and use the SDK to call the API in your Java client. For more information, see Use a Java SDK Generated by API Gateway (p. 440).</td>
<td>January 13, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrating with AWS Marketplace</td>
<td>Sell your API in a usage plan as a SaaS product through AWS Marketplace. Use AWS Marketplace to extend the reach of your API. Rely on AWS Marketplace for customer billing on your behalf. Let API Gateway handle user authorization and usage metering. For more information, see Sell Your API as SaaS (p. 433).</td>
<td>December 1, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling Documentation Support for your API</td>
<td>Add documentation for API entities in DocumentationPart resources in API Gateway. Associate a snapshot of the collection DocumentationPart instances with an API stage to create a DocumentationVersion. Publish API documentation by exporting a documentation version to an external file, such as a Swagger file. For more information, see Documenting an API Gateway API (p. 309).</td>
<td>December 1, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updated custom authorizer</td>
<td>A customer authorizer Lambda function now returns the caller's principal identifier. The function also can return other information as key-value pairs of the context map and an IAM policy. For more information, see Output from an Amazon API Gateway Custom Authorizer (p. 263).</td>
<td>December 1, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supporting binary payloads</td>
<td>Set binaryMediaTypes on your API to support binary payloads of a request or response. Set the contentHandling property on an Integration or IntegrationResponse to specify whether to handle a binary payload as the native binary blob, as a Base64-encoded string, or as a passthrough without modifications. For more information, see Support Binary Payloads in API Gateway (p. 196).</td>
<td>November 17, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling a proxy integration with an HTTP or Lambda backend through a proxy resource of an API.</td>
<td>Create a proxy resource with a greedy path parameter of the form {proxy+} and the catch-all ANY method. The proxy resource is integrated with an HTTP or Lambda backend using the HTTP or Lambda proxy integration, respectively. For more information, see Set up a Proxy Integration with a Proxy Resource (p. 120).</td>
<td>September 20, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extending selected APIs in API Gateway as product offerings for your customers by providing one or more usage plans.</td>
<td>Create a usage plan in API Gateway to enable selected API clients to access specified API stages at agreed-upon request rates and quotas. For more information, see Create and Use API Gateway Usage Plans (p. 296).</td>
<td>August 11, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling method-level authorization with a user pool in Amazon Cognito</td>
<td>Create a user pool in Amazon Cognito and use it as your own identity provider. You can configure the user pool as a method-level authorizer to grant access for users who are registered with the user pool. For more information, see Use Amazon Cognito User Pools (p. 269).</td>
<td>July 28, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling Amazon CloudWatch metrics and dimensions under the AWS/APIGateway namespace.</td>
<td>The API Gateway metrics are now standardized under the CloudWatch namespace of AWS/APIGateway. You can view them in both the API Gateway console and the Amazon CloudWatch console. For more information, see Amazon API Gateway Dimensions and Metrics (p. 459).</td>
<td>July 28, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling certificate rotation for a custom domain name</td>
<td>Certificate rotation allows you to upload and renew an expiring certificate for a custom domain name. For more information, see Rotate a Certificate Imported into ACM (p. 421).</td>
<td>April 27, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documenting changes for the updated Amazon API Gateway console.</td>
<td>Learn how to create and set up an API using the updated API Gateway console. For more information, see Build an API Gateway API from an Example (p. 9) and Build an API with HTTP Custom Integration (p. 42).</td>
<td>April 5, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling the Import API feature to create a new or update an existing API from external API definitions.</td>
<td>With the Import API features, you can create a new API or update an existing one by uploading an external API definition expressed in Swagger 2.0 with the API Gateway extensions. For more information about the Import API, see Import an API into API Gateway (p. 232).</td>
<td>April 5, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposing the $input.body variable to access the raw payload as string and the $util.parseJson() function to turn a JSON string into a JSON object in a mapping template.</td>
<td>For more information about $input.body and $util.parseJson(), see API Gateway Mapping Template Reference (p. 189).</td>
<td>April 5, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling client requests with method-level cache invalidation, and improving request throttling management.</td>
<td>Flush API stage-level cache and invalidate individual cache entry. For more information, see Flush the API Stage Cache in API Gateway (p. 360) and Invalidate an API Gateway Cache Entry (p. 360). Improve the console experience for managing API request throttling. For more information, see Throttle API Requests for Better Throughput (p. 356).</td>
<td>March 25, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling and calling API Gateway API using custom authorization</td>
<td>Create and configure an AWS Lambda function to implement custom authorization. The function returns an IAM policy document that grants the Allow or Deny permissions to client requests of an API Gateway API. For more information, see Use API Gateway Custom Authorizers (p. 257).</td>
<td>February 11, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Importing and exporting API Gateway API using a Swagger definition file and extensions</td>
<td>Create and update your API Gateway API using the Swagger specification with the API Gateway extensions. Import the Swagger definitions using the API Gateway Importer. Export an API Gateway API to a Swagger definition file using the API Gateway console or API Gateway Export API. For more information, see Import an API into API Gateway (p. 232) and Export an API (p. 394).</td>
<td>December 18, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapping request or response body or body's JSON fields to request or response parameters.</td>
<td>Map method request body or its JSON fields into integration request's path, query string, or headers. Map integration response body or its JSON fields into request response's headers. For more information, see Amazon API Gateway API Request and Response Data Mapping Reference (p. 185).</td>
<td>December 18, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Stage Variables in Amazon API Gateway</td>
<td>Learn how to associate configuration attributes with a deployment stage of an API in Amazon API Gateway. For more information, see [Set up Stage Variable for API Deployment](p. 365).</td>
<td>November 5, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to: Enable CORS for a Method</td>
<td>It is now easier to enable cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) for methods in Amazon API Gateway. For more information, see [Enable CORS for a Resource](p. 252).</td>
<td>November 3, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to: Use Client Side SSL Authentication</td>
<td>Use Amazon API Gateway to generate SSL certificates that you can use to authenticate calls to your HTTP backend. For more information, see [Use Client-Side SSL Certificates for Authentication by the Backend](p. 276).</td>
<td>September 22, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mock integration of methods</td>
<td>Learn how to [mock-integrate an API with Amazon API Gateway](p. 150). This feature enables developers to generate API responses from API Gateway directly without the need for a final integration backend beforehand.</td>
<td>September 1, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon Cognito Identity support</td>
<td>Amazon API Gateway has expanded the scope of the $context variable so that it now returns information about Amazon Cognito Identity when requests are signed with Amazon Cognito credentials. In addition, we have added a $util variable for escaping characters in JavaScript and encoding URLs and strings. For more information, see [API Gateway Mapping Template Reference](p. 189).</td>
<td>August 28, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swagger integration</td>
<td>Use the <a href="https://github.com/swagger-api/swagger-docs">Swagger import tool on GitHub</a> to import Swagger API definitions into Amazon API Gateway. Learn more about [API Gateway Extensions to Swagger](p. 464) to create and deploy APIs and methods using the import tool. With the Swagger importer tool you can also update existing APIs.</td>
<td>July 21, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapping Template Reference</td>
<td>Read about the $input parameter and its functions in the [API Gateway Mapping Template Reference](p. 189).</td>
<td>July 18, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial public release</td>
<td>This is the initial public release of the <a href="https://docs.aws.amazon.com/apigateway/latest/developerguide/apigateway-developerguide-intro.html">API Gateway Developer Guide</a>.</td>
<td>July 9, 2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AWS Glossary

For the latest AWS terminology, see the AWS Glossary in the AWS General Reference.